



# USMARC Format for Authority Data

## SUMMARY STATEMENT OF CONTENT DESIGNATORS

### LEADER

<i>Character</i>	
<u>Position</u>	<u>Name</u>
00-04	Logical record length
05	Record status
06	Type of record
07-09	Undefined character positions
10	Indicator count
11	Subfield code count
12-16	Base address of data
17	Encoding level
18-19	Undefined character positions
20-23	<i>Entry map</i>
20	Length of the length-of-field portion
21	Length of the starting-character-position portion
22	Length of the implementation-defined portion
23	Undefined Entry map character position

### DIRECTORY

#### VARIABLE CONTROL FIELDS

001	Control Number
005	Date and Time of Latest Transaction
008	Fixed-Length Data Elements

<i>Character</i>	
<u>Position</u>	<u>Name</u>
00-05	Date entered on file
06	Direct/indirect geographic subdivision
07	Romanization scheme
08	Undefined character position
09	Kind of record
10	Descriptive cataloging rules
11	Subject heading system/thesaurus
12	Type of series
13	Numbered/unnumbered series
14	Heading use—main or added entry
15	Heading use—subject added entry
16	Heading use—series added entry
17	Type of subject subdivision
18-27	Undefined character positions
28	Type of government agency
29	Reference evaluation
30	Undefined character position
31	Record update in process
32	Undifferentiated personal name
33	Level of establishment
34-37	Undefined character positions
38	Modified record
39	Cataloging source

# Format Summary

## VARIABLE DATA FIELDS

### *Control Information, Numbers, and Codes*

010	Library of Congress Control Number
014	Link to Bibliographic Record for Serial or Multipart Item
020	International Standard Book Number
022	International Standard Serial Number
035	System Control Number
040	Cataloging Source
042	Authentication Code
043	Geographic Area Code
045	Time Period of Heading
050	Library of Congress Call Number
052	Geographic Classification Code
053	LC Classification Number
060	National Library of Medicine Call Number
066	Character Sets Present
070	National Agricultural Library Call Number
072	Subject Category Code
073	Subdivision Usage
082	Dewey Decimal Call Number
083	Dewey Decimal Classification Number
09X	Local Call Numbers

### *Established Headings*

100	Heading--Personal Name
110	Heading--Corporate Name
111	Heading--Meeting Name
130	Heading--Uniform Title
150	Heading--Topical Term
151	Heading--Geographic Name

### *Tracings and References*

260	Complex See Reference--Subject
360	Complex See Also Reference--Subject
400	See From Tracing--Personal Name
410	See From Tracing--Corporate Name
411	See From Tracing--Meeting Name
430	See From Tracing--Uniform Title
450	See From Tracing--Topical Term
451	See From Tracing--Geographic Name
500	See Also From Tracing--Personal Name
510	See Also From Tracing--Corporate Name
511	See Also From Tracing--Meeting Name
530	See Also From Tracing--Uniform Title
550	See Also From Tracing--Topical Term
551	See Also From Tracing--Geographic Name
663	Complex See Also Reference--Name
664	Complex See Reference--Name
665	History Reference
666	General Explanatory Reference--Name

### *Series Treatment Information*

640	Series Dates of Publication and/or Volume Designation
641	Series Numbering Peculiarities
642	Series Numbering Example
643	Series Place and Publisher/Issuing Body

## Format Summary

644	Series Analysis Practice
645	Series Tracing Practice
646	Series Classification Practice
<i>Notes</i>	
667	Nonpublic General Note
670	Source Data Found
675	Source Data Not Found
678	Epitome
680	Public General Note
681	Subject Example Tracing Note
682	Deleted Heading Information
688	Application History Note
880	Alternate Graphic Representation









## Leader

*National Level  
Requirement*

## Leader

*M*

### Indicators and Subfield Codes

The Leader has no indicators or subfield codes; the data elements are positionally defined.

### Character Positions

00-04	Logical record length	<i>M</i>
05	Record status	<i>M</i>
	n New	<i>A</i>
	c Corrected or revised	<i>A</i>
	a Increase in encoding level	<i>A</i>
	d Deleted (other)	<i>A</i>
	s Deleted; heading split into two or more headings	<i>A</i>
	x Deleted; heading replaced by another heading	<i>A</i>
06	Type of record	<i>M</i>
	z Authority data	<i>M</i>
07-09	Undefined character positions	<i>M</i>
10	Indicator count	<i>M</i>
11	Subfield code count	<i>M</i>
12-16	Base address of data	<i>M</i>
17	Encoding level	<i>M</i>
	n Complete authority record	<i>A</i>
	o Incomplete authority record	<i>A</i>
18-19	Undefined character positions	<i>M</i>
<i>20-23 Entry map</i>		
20	Length of the length-of-field portion	<i>M</i>
21	Length of the starting-character-position portion	<i>M</i>
22	Length of the implementation-defined portion	<i>M</i>
23	Undefined Entry map character position	<i>M</i>

---

## FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

The Leader is the first field of an authority record. It is fixed in length at 24 character positions (00-23). The Leader consists of data elements that contain numbers or coded values that define the parameters for the processing of the record.

## Leader

Character positions 20-23 comprise the Entry map for the Directory. They contain four single-character numbers that specify the structure of the entries in the Directory. More detailed information about the structure of the Leader is contained in *USMARC Specifications for Record Structure, Character Sets, Tapes*.

---

### GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

#### /00-04 LOGICAL RECORD LENGTH

---

The Logical record length character positions contain a five-character number equal to the length of the entire record, including itself and the record terminator. The number is right justified and unused positions contain zeros.

#### /05 RECORD STATUS

---

The Record status character position contains a one-character alphabetic code that indicates the relationship of the record to a file for file maintenance purposes.

##### a - Increase in encoding level

Code a indicates that the Encoding level (Leader/17) of the record has been changed from o (Incomplete authority record) to n (Complete authority record).

##### c - Corrected or revised

Code c indicates that an addition/change has been made to the record. The change, however, does not constitute an increase in the Encoding level (Leader/17) of the record.

##### d - Deleted (other)

Code d indicates that the record has been deleted. This code is used for those situations when neither code s nor code x is appropriate, or when an organization chooses not to use code s or x. Some level of manual intervention may be needed to effect the change in bibliographic records because the deleted heading may or may not be carried as a 4XX See From Tracing field in other authority records and a 682 field explaining the delete may be present in the record marked for deletion.

Leader/05 d  
150        Ø0#*a*Fruit processing  
682        ØØ#*i*This heading has been replaced by the heading#*a*Fruit—  
             Processing,#*a* heading not distributed because it uses a  
             freefloating subdivision controlled by a pattern heading.

Leader/05 d  
150        Ø0#*a*History

##### n - New

Code n indicates that the record is a newly input record.

**s - Deleted; heading split into two or more headings**

Code s indicates that the record has been deleted from a file because the heading has been split into two or more headings, requiring a new authority record for each. The heading from the deleted record is included in each of the new authority records as a tracing in a 4XX See From Tracing field.

An automated authority control system can scan other authority records until it locates two records which contain the deleted heading used as a 4XX See From Tracing. At that time, the system can display the deleted heading and the two replacement headings for review or take other automatic actions. (When a heading is split, a computer cannot automatically replace the old heading in bibliographic records. Manual intervention is required to determine which of the new headings is appropriate in each bibliographic record containing the old heading.)

Leader/05 s  
150        Ø0#aBuddha and Buddhism

Leader/05 n  
100        00#aGautama Buddha  
450        Ø0#aBuddha and Buddhism

Leader/05 n  
150        Ø0#aBuddhism  
450        Ø0#aBuddha and Buddhism

**x - Deleted; heading replaced by another heading**

Code x indicates that the record has been deleted from a file and that a new authority record in which the heading from the deleted record appears as a 4XX See From Tracing field has been added to the file. (In a system where authority control is linked to the bibliographic file, a computer can effect the one-to-one replacement indicated by code x without manual intervention.)

Leader/05 x  
150        Ø0#aOleomargarine

Leader/05 n  
150        Ø0#aMargarine  
450        Ø0#aOleomargarine

**/06 TYPE OF RECORD**

The Type of record character position contains a one-character alphabetic code that indicates the characteristics of and defines the components of the record.

**z - Authority data**

Code z indicates that the content of the record constitutes an authority record. The specific kind of authority record is identified by the code in 008/09.

## Leader

### /07-09 UNDEFINED CHARACTER POSITIONS

---

These three character positions are undefined; each contains a blank (␣).

␣␣␣ - Undefined character positions

### /10 INDICATOR COUNT

---

The Indicator count character position contains a one-character number equal to the number of indicators occurring in each variable data field. (An indicator character position contains a code which conveys information that interprets or supplements the data found in the field.) In USMARC, two character positions at the beginning of each variable data field are reserved for indicators; therefore, the Indicator count is always 2.

2 - Number of character positions used for indicators

### /11 SUBFIELD CODE COUNT

---

The Subfield code count character position contains a one-character number equal to the number of character positions used for a subfield code in variable data fields. (Each data element in a variable data field is identified by a subfield code.) In USMARC, a subfield code consists of a delimiter (\$) and a lowercase alphabetic or numeric data element identifier; therefore, the Subfield code count is always 2.

2 - Number of character positions used for a subfield code

### /12-16 BASE ADDRESS OF DATA

---

The Base address of data character positions contain a five-character number that indicates the first character position of the first variable control field in the record. The number is the base from which the starting character position of all the other fields in the record is addressed in the Directory. (The starting character position in the Directory entry for each field of the record is relative to the first character of the first variable control field rather than the beginning of the record.) The Base address of data is equal to the sum of the lengths of the Leader and the Directory, including the field terminator character at the end of the Directory. The number is right justified and unused positions contain zeros.

<number> - Length of Leader and Directory (including the Directory field terminator character)

### /17 ENCODING LEVEL

---

The Encoding level character position contains a one-character alphabetic code that indicates whether the authority record is complete.

n - Complete authority record

Code n indicates that the authority record is complete. The record meets the national level record requirements for content and content designation.

**o - Incomplete authority record**

Code o indicates that the authority record is incomplete because the record is in process. The record may or may not meet the national level record requirements.

**/18-19 UNDEFINED CHARACTER POSITIONS**

These two character positions are undefined; each contains a blank (ø).

**øø - Undefined character positions**

**/20 LENGTH OF THE LENGTH-OF-FIELD PORTION**

In USMARC, the length-of-field portion of each Directory entry is always 4 character positions in length.

**4 - Number of characters in the length-of-field portion of a Directory entry**

**/21 LENGTH OF THE STARTING-CHARACTER-POSITION PORTION**

In USMARC, the starting-character-position portion of each Directory entry is always 5 character positions in length.

**5 - Number of characters in the starting-character-position portion of a Directory entry**

**/22 LENGTH OF THE IMPLEMENTATION-DEFINED PORTION**

In USMARC, a Directory entry does not contain an implementation-defined portion; this character position always contains a 0.

**0 - Number of characters in the implementation-defined portion of a Directory entry**

**/23 UNDEFINED ENTRY MAP CHARACTER POSITION**

In USMARC, this character position is undefined; it always contains a 0.

**0 - Undefined entry map character position**

**INPUT CONVENTIONS**

**System-Generated Elements**

The following Leader elements are usually system generated:

- 00-04 Logical record length
- 07-09 Undefined character positions
- 10 Indicator count
- 11 Subfield code count
- 12-16 Base address of data



## Leader

- 18-19 Undefined character positions
- 20-23 Entry map

Other Leader elements may also be system generated depending upon the capabilities of an individual system:

- 05 Record status
- 06 Type of record
- 17 Encoding level

## Capitalization

Alphabetic codes are input in lowercase.

---

## RELATED USMARC DOCUMENT/FIELD

*USMARC Specifications for Record Structure, Character Sets, Tapes*

---

## | CONTENT DESIGNATOR HISTORY

- /05 Record status
  - d - Deleted (other)
  - x - Deleted; heading replaced by another heading

In 1983, the definitions of codes d (Record deleted because heading is replaced by another heading) and x (Record deleted for reason not covered by other codes) were reversed to maintain consistency with the definition of code d in the *USMARC Format for Bibliographic Data*.

## Directory

M

### Indicators and Subfield Codes

The Directory has no indicators or subfield codes; the data elements are positionally defined.

### Character Positions

00-02	Tag	M
03-06	Field length	M
07-11	Starting character position	M

## CHARACTER POSITION DEFINITION AND SCOPE

The Directory consists of a series of fixed length entries, with one entry for each variable field (control or data) present in a record. Each Directory entry is 12 character positions in length and contains three portions: the field tag, the field length, and the starting character position. The Directory immediately follows the Leader at the beginning of the record and is located at character position 24. The Field length and Starting character position portions of the Directory are defined by Leader/20-23 (Entry map) as being 4 and 5 characters in length, respectively. Because a field tag is always 3 characters, the length of the Tag portion of the Directory is not specified in the Entry map.

More detailed information about the structure of the Directory entries is contained in *USMARC Specifications for Record Structure, Character Sets, Tapes*.

## DESCRIPTION OF A DIRECTORY ENTRY

### /00-02 Tag

The Tag portion of each Directory entry consists of three ASCII numeric or lowercase alphabetic characters that identify an associated variable field.

### /03-06 Field length

The Field length portion of each Directory entry consists of four ASCII numeric characters that indicate the length of the variable field to which the entry corresponds. This length includes the indicators, subfield codes, data, and the field terminator associated with the field. A Field length number of less than four digits is right justified and unused positions contain zeros.

## Directory

### /07-11 Starting character position

The Starting character position of each Directory entry contains five ASCII numeric characters that indicate the starting character position of the variable field to which the entry corresponds relative to the Base address of data (Leader/12-16) of the record. A Starting character position number of less than five digits is right justified and unused positions contain zeros.

#### ■ EXAMPLE:

	<u>Tag</u>	<u>Field length</u>	<u>Starting character position</u>
Entry 1	001	0013	00000
Entry 2	008	0041	00013
Entry 3	100	0040	00054

---

## INPUT CONVENTIONS

Each Directory entry is system generated.

---

## RELATED USMARC DOCUMENT/FIELD

Leader/20-23 Entry Map

*USMARC Specifications for Record Structure, Character Sets, Tapes*





**00X Control Fields—General Information***National Level  
Requirement*

001 Control Number (NR)	<i>M</i>
005 Date and Time of Latest Transaction (NR)	<i>M</i>
008 Fixed-Length Data Elements (NR)	<i>M</i>

---

**DEFINITION AND SCOPE**

The control fields contain the record control number and other kinds of control and coded information that are used in the processing of USMARC authority records. These fields have no indicators or subfield codes.

Each data element in the fixed-length field 008 is positionally defined. A more detailed explanation of positionally defined data elements can be found in the section describing field 008.



**001 Control Number (NR)**Indicators and Subfield Codes

This field has no indicators or subfield codes.

---

**FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE**

This field contains the control number assigned by the organization creating, using, or distributing the record. For interchange purposes, documentation of the structure of the control number and input conventions must be provided to exchange partners by the organization initiating the interchange. An organization receiving a record may move the control number of the distributing system from field 001 to field 035 (System Control Number) and place its own control number in field 001.

The structure of the Library of Congress control number is described in field 010 (Library of Congress Control Number). The control number in records distributed by LC is contained in field 001. An organization using an LC record may move the LC control number from field 001 to field 010 and place its own control number in field 001.

**■ EXAMPLES**

001 n#86742756#  
001 sh#85008277#  
001 nr#86000001#  
001 no#86000001#  
001 nw#86000001#

---

**INPUT CONVENTIONS**

Field 001 may be system generated.

---

**RELATED USMARC DOCUMENT/FIELD**

010 Library of Congress Control Number  
035 System Control Number





**005 Date and Time of Latest Transaction (NR)**Indicators and Subfield Codes

This field has no indicators or subfield codes.

---

**FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE**

This field contains 16 characters that specify the date and time of the latest record transaction. The date and time serve as a version identifier for the record.

The date is recorded according to *Representation for Calendar Date and Ordinal Date for Information Interchange* (ANSI X3.30). The date requires 8 numeric characters in the pattern *yyyymmdd* (4 for the year, 2 for the month, and 2 for the day).

The time is recorded according to *Representations of Local Time of the Day for Information Interchange* (ANSI X3.43). The time requires 8 numeric characters in the pattern *hhmmss.f* (2 for the hour, 2 for the minute, 2 for the second, and 2 for a decimal fraction of the second, including the decimal point). The 24-hour clock (00-23) is used.

The date on which a record is first entered into machine-readable form is contained in field 008/00-05. The Date entered on file never changes.

**■ EXAMPLE**

005 19860901141236.0  
[Sept. 1, 1986, 2:12:36 P.M.]

---

**INPUT CONVENTIONS**

Field 005 should be system generated at date and time of latest transaction on a record.

---

**RELATED USMARC FIELD/DOCUMENT**

008/00-05 Date entered on file

**OTHER RELATED DOCUMENTS**

*Representation for Calendar Date and Ordinal Date for Information Interchange* (ANSI X3.30)

*Representations of Local Time of the Day for Information Interchange* (ANSI X3.43)



**008 Fixed-Length Data Elements—General Information** (NR) MIndicators and Subfield Codes

This field has no indicators or subfield codes; the data elements are positionally defined.

Character Positions

00-05	Date entered on file	
06	Direct/indirect geographic subdivision	M
07	Romanization scheme	O
08	Undefined character position	O
09	Kind of record	O
10	Descriptive cataloging rules	M
11	Subject heading system/thesaurus	M
12	Type of series	M
13	Numbered/unnumbered series	M
14	Heading use—main or added entry	M
15	Heading use—subject added entry	M
16	Heading use—series added entry	M
17	Type of subject subdivision	O
18-27	Undefined character positions	O
28	Type of government agency	O
29	Reference evaluation	O
30	Undefined character position	M
31	Record update in process	O
32	Undifferentiated personal name	M
33	Level of establishment	M
34-37	Undefined character positions	O
38	Modified record	O
39	Cataloging source	M

**FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE**

This field contains 40 character positions (00-39) that provide coded information about the record as a whole or about special aspects of the 1XX heading or 4XX/5XX tracing fields. These coded data elements are potentially useful for retrieval and data management purposes.

The data elements are positionally defined. Character positions that are not defined contain a blank (Ø) or a fill character (|). All defined character positions must contain either a defined code or a fill character. The fill character is used in a defined character position when the National Level Requirement code is O (Optional) and the cataloging organization makes no attempt to code the character position. Code n (Not applicable), when it is defined for a data element, indicates that the character position definition does not apply to the record.

## 008

### INPUT CONVENTIONS

#### System-Generated Data Elements

008/00-05 (Date entered on file) is usually system generated. System generation of other 008 data elements depends upon the capabilities of an individual system.

#### Capitalization

Alphabetic codes are input in lowercase.

---

### | CONTENT DESIGNATOR HISTORY

*008/35-37 Language of heading code [OBSOLETE]*

This definition of these character positions was made obsolete in 1986. Records created prior to 1986 may contain a language code taken from the *USMARC Code List for Languages* or a Ø (blank) or a fill character (|) in each of these three character positions.

**008/00-05 Date entered on file***M*

---

**CHARACTER POSITION DEFINITION AND SCOPE**

Six numeric characters specify the date the record was first entered into machine-readable form. The date is given in the pattern *yymmdd* (*yy* for the year, *mm* for the month, and *dd* for the day).

The date entered on file in 008/00-05 is never changed. The date and time of latest transaction information in field 005 changes each time a transaction is made to the record. The latest transaction information enables an organization handling more than one version of a record to identify the most current version.

**■ EXAMPLE**

008/00-05 860304

*[The record was entered into a system on March 4, 1986.]*

---

**INPUT CONVENTIONS**

This data element is usually system generated.

---

**RELATED USMARC FIELD/DOCUMENT**

005 Date and Time of Latest Transaction



**008/06 Direct/indirect geographic subdivision code**

O

Codes

Ø	Not subdivided geographically	O
d	Subdivided geographically—direct	O
i	Subdivided geographically—indirect	O
n	Not applicable	O

**CHARACTER POSITION DEFINITION AND SCOPE**

A one-character code indicates whether the 1XX heading can be subdivided geographically by the name of a country or other jurisdiction, region or geographic feature. If the heading can be subdivided geographically, the code identifies the method of subdivision that is used. In extended subject heading records, 008/06 coding is based on the entire heading, including the subject subdivisions.

Code Ø, d or i is used only in an established heading record (008/09, Kind of record, code a or f) that also is appropriate for use as a subject added entry in bibliographic records (008/15, code a). Code n is used in an established heading record that is not appropriate for use as a subject added entry in bibliographic records (008/15, code b) and in a reference, subdivision, or node label record (008/09, code other than a or f).

**GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS****■ CODES****Ø - Not subdivided geographically**

Code Ø indicates that the 1XX heading cannot be subdivided geographically.

008/06 Ø  
100 10#aHorowitz, Mordekhai

008/06 Ø  
150 Ø0#aAir defenses

008/06 Ø  
151 Ø0#aAustria



**d - Subdivided geographically—direct**

Code d indicates that the LXX heading can be subdivided geographically using the direct subdivision method. In this subdivision method, the heading is followed immediately by the name of the specific place to which the heading is limited without the interposition of a subdivision for the name of the larger geographic entity.

008/06 d

150    Ø0#aArt

*[Subject heading can be subdivided directly, e.g., Art—Paris.]*

**i - Subdivided geographically—indirect**

Code i indicates that the LXX heading can be subdivided geographically using the indirect subdivision method. In this subdivision method, a subdivision for the name of the larger geographic entity is interposed between the heading and the subdivision for the specific place to which the heading is limited.

008/06 i

150    Ø0#aArt

*[Subject heading can be subdivided indirectly, e.g., Art—Italy—Rome.]*

008/06 i

110    20#aUnited Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organization

*[Subject heading can be subdivided indirectly, e.g., United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organization—France—Paris.]*

008/06 i

100    10#aShakespeare, William, #d1564-1616#xHomes and haunts

*[Subject heading may be subdivided indirectly, e.g., Shakespeare, William, 1564-1616—Homes and haunts—England—London.]*

**n - Not applicable**

Code n indicates that the LXX heading is an unestablished heading or is an established heading that is not appropriate for use as a subject added entry in bibliographic records.

008/06 n

008/09 b    *[reference record (untraced reference)]*008/15 b    *[code indicating heading may not be used as subject added entry]*

150    Ø0#aPronunciation

260    ØØ#isubdivision#aPronunciation#iunder names of languages and subjects,  
e.g. #aItalian language—Pronunciation; Names—Pronunciation

008/06 n

008/09 a    *[established heading record]*008/15 b    *[code indicating heading may not be used as subject added entry]*

151    Ø0#aCeylon

**RELATED USMARC DOCUMENT/FIELD**

008/15 Heading use—subject added entry



**008/07 Romanization scheme code**

O

Codes

a	International standard	O
b	National standard	O
c	National library association standard	O
d	National library or bibliographic agency standard	O
e	Local standard	O
f	Standard of unknown origin	O
g	Conventional romanization or conventional form of name in language of cataloging agency	O
n	Not applicable	O

**CHARACTER POSITION DEFINITION AND SCOPE**

A one-character alphabetic code indicates that the 1XX heading field contains the romanized form of a name or uniform title and identifies the romanization scheme used. If the 1XX heading is not a romanized form, code n is used.

**GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS****■ CODES****a - International standard**

Code a indicates that the romanization scheme used is an international standard, e.g., one of the tables published by the International Organization for Standardization (ISO).

008/07 a

100 10#aŠalnm, Mošeh

*[Heading romanized following the ISO 259-1984 table for Hebrew.]***b - National standard**

Code b indicates that the romanization scheme used is a national standard, e.g., one published by the American National Standards Institute (ANSI).

**c - National library association standard**

Code c indicates that the romanization scheme used is a national library association standard, e.g., the American Library Association (ALA)/Library of Congress (LC) romanization tables published in the Library of Congress *Cataloging Service Bulletin*.

008/07 c

100 10‡Shṭernbukh, Moseheh

*[Heading romanized following the ALA/LC romanization table for Hebrew.]*

**d - National library or bibliographic agency standard**

Code d indicates that the romanization scheme used is a national library or bibliographic agency standard.

**e - Local standard**

Code e indicates that the romanization scheme used is a local standard.

**f - Standard of unknown origin**

Code f indicates that the romanization scheme used is a standard of unknown origin.

**g - Conventional romanization or conventional form of name in language of cataloging agency**

Code g indicates that the romanization scheme used is a conventional romanization or that the 1XX heading is a conventional form of name in the language of the cataloging agency.

008/07 g

100 10‡aSternbuch, Moses

*[A pre-AACR 2 form of heading used by the Library of Congress.*

*Biblical forenames were romanized following the King James version of the name.]*

**n - Not applicable**

Code n indicates that the 1XX heading is not romanized.

---

**008/08 Undefined character position**

---

*O***CHARACTER POSITION DEFINITION AND SCOPE**

This character position is undefined; it may contain a blank (ø) or a fill character (|)



## 008/09 Kind of record

M

Codes

a	Established heading record	A
f	Established heading and subdivision record	A
b	Reference record (untraced reference)	A
c	Reference record (traced reference)	A
g	Reference and subdivision record	A
d	Subdivision record	A
e	Node label record	A

## CHARACTER POSITION DEFINITION AND SCOPE

A one-character alphabetic code indicates whether the authority record represents an established or unestablished 1XX heading. The 1XX field in an established heading record or an established heading and subdivision record contains an established heading. Reference, subdivision, and node label records contain an unestablished heading in field 1XX. If the record is a reference record, codes b and c indicate whether the 1XX heading is traced as a 4XX See From Tracing field in authority records for each heading referred to in the reference record. Definitions of the terms used in the description of this data element are in the *Introduction* to this document. An explanation of the use of tracings and references in the authority format is provided in the *Tracing and Reference Fields—General Information* section.

## GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

## ■ CODES

## a - Established heading record

Code a indicates that the 1XX field contains an established heading. An established heading record may also contain 4XX/5XX tracing fields for variant and related headings, and notes recording information such as the source used to establish the heading and information explaining scope and usage. Subject subdivision subfields #x, #y, and/or #z may be present in the 1XX field in an extended subject heading.

If an established heading may also be used as a subject subdivision, code f is used if an organization uses a single authority record to convey this dual function. If separate records are used, code a is used in the main (established) term record and code d is used in the subdivision (unestablished) record.

008/09 a

100 10#aMattern, Hermann,#d1902-1971



008/09 a  
130      00#aBulletin (Ahmadu Bello University. Dept. of Geology)

008/09 a  
150      00#aOptical disks

008/09 a  
151      00#aYellowstone National Park

008/09 a  
151      00#aIowa#xDescription and travel#y1981-

#### b - Reference record (untraced reference)

Code b indicates that the 1XX field contains an **unestablished** heading and that the 1XX heading is not traced as a 4XX See From Tracing field in any established heading record. The reference record contains a Complex See Reference (260) or a General Explanatory Reference (260 or 666) field to guide the user to an established heading.

If the 1XX heading in a reference record (untraced reference) may also be used as a subject subdivision, code g is used if an organization uses a single authority record to convey this dual function. If separate records are used, code b is used in the reference record and code d is used in the subdivision record.

008/09 b  
150      00#aDenominative  
260      00#isubdivision#aDenominative#iunder names of languages and groups of languages

008/09 b  
100      00#aDe la  
666      00#aNames beginning with this prefix are also entered under La (e.g., La Bretèque, Pierre de) or under the name following the prefix (e.g., Torre, Marie de la)

#### c - Reference record (traced reference)

Code c indicates that the 1XX field contains an **unestablished** heading and that the 1XX heading is traced as a 4XX See From Tracing field in the established heading record for each heading referred to in the reference record. The reference record contains a Complex See Reference (260 or 664) field to guide the user to an established heading.

008/09 c  
100      10#aReger, Max,#d1873-1916.#tDies irae  
664      00#aFor this movement included in the composer's unfinished Requiem search under#bReger, Max, 1873-1916.#tRequiem (Mass)

008/09 c  
150      00#aAdministration  
260      00#isubdivision#aAdministration#iunder types of institutions e.g. #aHospital—Administration [...]

**d - Subdivision record**

Code d indicates that the IXX field contains an **unestablished** heading that may be used as a subject subdivision with an established heading.

If a subdivision term may also be used as an established main term, code f is used if an organization uses a single authority record to convey this dual function. If a subdivision term may also be used as an unestablished reference term, code g is used if an organization uses a single authority record to convey this dual function.

008/09 d  
150      Ø0#adrug effects

**e - Node label record**

Code e indicates that the IXX field contains an **unestablished** term that may be used in the systematic section of a thesaurus to indicate the logical basis on which a category has been divided. This type of heading is also known as a *facet indicator*. The term is not used as an indexing term.

008/09 e  
150      Ø0#acatalogs by source

**f - Established heading and subdivision record**

Code f indicates that the IXX field contains an established heading that may be used as a main term and as a subject subdivision. A single authority record is used to describe this dual function.

008/09 f  
150      Ø0#aChronology  
360      ØØ#isubdivision#aChronology#iunder appropriate subject terms

008/09 f  
151      Ø0#aGreat Lakes  
680      ØØ#iThis term is to be used only as a geographic descriptor and may not be subdivided. It may, however, be used to subdivide topical indexing terms.

**g - Reference and subdivision record**

Code g indicates that the IXX field in a reference record (untraced reference) contains an **unestablished** heading that may be used as a reference term and as a subject subdivision. A single authority record is used to describe this dual function.

008/09 g  
150      Ø0#aDictionaries  
260      ØØ#isubdivision#aDictionaries#iunder specific subject terms



**008/10 Descriptive cataloging rules code**

M

Codes

c	AACR 2	A
d	AACR 2 compatible heading	A
b	AACR 1	A
a	Earlier rules	A
z	Other	A
n	Not applicable	A

**CHARACTER POSITION DEFINITION AND SCOPE**

A one-character alphabetic code identifies the descriptive cataloging rules used to formulate the 1XX name, name/title, or uniform title heading in established heading (008/09, code a) or reference records (008/09, code b or c). A 1XX heading formulated according to descriptive cataloging rules that is used as a subject added entry in bibliographic records (008/15, code a) may also be coded for a particular set of subject heading system/thesaurus rules in 008/11. If the 1XX heading is not formulated using descriptive cataloging rules, code n is used.

**GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS****■ CODES****a - Earlier rules**

Code a indicates that the formulation of the 1XX heading conforms to descriptive cataloging rules used prior to the 1967 publication of *Anglo-American Cataloging Rules* (AACR 1). *Code a is not used in current AACR authority records.*

008/10 a

100 10#aSmith, John, #dAug. 5, 1882-

008/10 a

110 10#aBirmingham, Eng. #bKing Edward's School  
[Headings established using the *A.L.A. Cataloging Rules for Author and Title Entries* (1949)]

**b - AACR 1**

Code b indicates that the formulation of the 1XX heading conforms to *Anglo-American Cataloging Rules* (AACR 1). *Code b is not used in current AACR authority records.*

008/10 b

100 10#aSmith, John, #d1882 (Aug. 5)-

## 008/10

008/10 b

110 10#aUnited States.#b87th Congress, 2d session,#d1962

### c - AACR 2

Code c indicates that the formulation of the 1XX heading conforms to the second edition of *Anglo-American Cataloguing Rules* (AACR 2).

008/10 c

100 10#aSmith, John,#d1882 Aug. 5-

008/10 c

100 10#aFrancis, D.#q(Dennis)

008/10 c

008/09 c [reference record (traced reference)]

008/14 b [code indicating heading may not be used as a main or added entry]

100 10#aReger, Max,#d1873-1916.#tDies irae

664 ¶0#aFor this movement included in the composer's unfinished Requiem  
search under#bReger, Max, 1873-1916.#tRequiem (Mass)

### d - AACR 2 compatible heading

Code d indicates that the formulation of the 1XX heading does not follow AACR 2 but the heading is considered compatible with AACR 2. Library of Congress guidelines for AACR 2 compatible personal and corporate name headings are contained in *Cataloging Service Bulletin*, no. 18 (Fall 1982), p. 49-51, and no. 30 (Fall 1985), p. 16-17, respectively.

008/10 d

100 10#aPiton, Phillip,#cMrs.

### z - Other

Code z indicates that the formulation of the 1XX heading conforms to a set of descriptive cataloging rules other than is specified by one of the other defined codes.

### n - Not applicable

Code n indicates that the 1XX heading is not a name, name/title, or uniform title formulated according to descriptive cataloging rules. The 1XX heading is not appropriate for use as a main or added entry in bibliographic records (008/14, code b).

008/10 n

008/09 a [established heading record]

008/11 a [code indicating LCSH]

008/14 b [code indicating heading may not be used as a main or added entry]

151 ¶0#aRed River Valley (Minn. and N.D.-Man.)

008/10 n  
 008/09 a *[established heading record]*  
 008/11 c *[code indicating MeSH]*  
 008/14 b *[code indicating heading may not be used as a main or added entry]*  
 150    ~~0~~†aCommunicative Disorders

008/10 n  
 008/09 b *[reference record (untraced reference)]*  
 008/11 a *[code indicating LCSH]*  
 008/14 b *[code indicating heading may not be used as a main or added entry]*  
 150    ~~0~~†aSecurity measures  
 260    ~~0~~†isubdivision†aSecurity measures†iunder particular subjects, e.g.  
       †aIndustry—Security measures; United States. Atomic Energy  
       Commission—Security measures

---

#### RELATED USMARC DOCUMENT/FIELD

008/11 Subject heading system/thesaurus

#### OTHER RELATED DOCUMENT

*Cataloging Service Bulletin*, no. 18 (Fall 1982) and no. 30 (Fall 1985)



**008/11 Subject heading system/thesaurus***M*Codes

a	Library of Congress Subject Headings	<i>A</i>
b	LC subject headings for children's literature	<i>A</i>
c	Medical Subject Headings	<i>A</i>
d	National Agricultural Library subject authority file	<i>A</i>
k	Canadian Subject Headings	<i>A</i>
v	Répertoire des vedettes-matière	<i>A</i>
r	Art and Architecture Thesaurus	<i>A</i>
z	Other	<i>A</i>
n	Not applicable	<i>A</i>

**CHARACTER POSITION DEFINITION AND SCOPE**

A one-character alphabetic code identifies the subject heading system/thesaurus conventions used to formulate the subject name or term 1XX heading in established heading (008/09, code a or f), reference, subdivision, or node label records (008/09, code b, d, g, or e). A 1XX heading formulated according to descriptive cataloging rules (008/10) that is used as a subject added entry in bibliographic records may also be coded for a particular set of conventions 008/11. If the 1XX heading does not conform to subject heading/thesaurus conventions, code n is used.

**GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS****■ CODES****a - Library of Congress Subject Headings**

Code a indicates that the formulation of the 1XX heading conforms to *Library of Congress Subject Headings* (LCSH). (Code a is an authoritative-agency data element. Its use requires that the 1XX heading is appropriate for use in *LCSH*.)

008/11 a

100 10#aWagner, Richard, #d1813-1883#xPictorial works

008/11 a

150 #0#aPASCAL (Computer program language)

008/11 a

151 #0#aUnited States#xHistory#yCivil War, 1861-1865#xArt and the war



008/11 a  
 008/10 c [code indicating AACR 2]  
 008/15 a [code indicating heading may be used as a subject added entry]  
 100 10#aShai, Mordekhai

008/11 a  
 008/09 b [reference record (untraced reference)]  
 008/15 b [code indicating heading may not be used as a subject added entry]  
 150 00#aFatigue of metals  
 260 00#isubdivision#aFatigue#iunder particular metals, e.g.#aSteel—Fatigue

**b - LC subject headings for children's literature**

Code b indicates that the formulation of the 1XX heading conforms to the "AC Subject Headings" section of *Library of Congress Subject Headings*. (Code b is an authoritative-agency data element. Its use requires that the heading is appropriate for the LC Annotated Card Program.)

008/11 b  
 100 10#aColumbus, Christopher

**c - Medical Subject Headings**

Code c indicates that the formulation of the 1XX heading conforms to *Medical Subject Headings* (MeSH), which is maintained by the National Library of Medicine. (Code c is an authoritative-agency data element. Its use requires that the heading is appropriate for use in *MeSH*.)

008/11 c  
 150 00#aHospitals, General

008/11 c  
 008/10 c [code indicating AACR 2]  
 008/15 a [code indicating heading may be used as a subject added entry]  
 110 20#aPan American Health Organization

008/11 c  
 008/09 d [subdivision record]  
 150 00#apharmacodynamics

008/11 c  
 008/09 e [node label record]  
 150 00#abiographies by subject

**d - National Agricultural Library subject authority file**

Code d indicates that the formulation of the 1XX heading conforms to the National Agricultural Library subject authority file. (Code d is an authoritative-agency data element. Its use requires that the heading is appropriate for National Agricultural Library subject heading purposes.)

008/11 d  
150    00#aCosmochemistry

008/11 d  
008/10 c    [code indicating AACR 2]  
008/15 a    [code indicating heading may be used as a subject added entry]  
110       20#aFarm Credit System (U.S.)

#### k - Canadian Subject Headings

Code k indicates that the formulation of the 1XX heading conforms to *Canadian Subject Headings*, which is maintained by the National Library of Canada. (Code k is an authoritative-agency data element. Its use requires that the heading is appropriate for use in *Canadian Subject Headings*.)

008/11 k  
150    00#aPostage stamps#zCanada

008/11 k  
008/10 c    [code indicating AACR 2]  
008/15 a    [code indicating heading may be used as a subject added entry]  
110       20#aEskimo Point Residents Association

#### r - Art and Architecture Thesaurus

Code r indicates that the formulation of the 1XX heading conforms to the *Art and Architecture Thesaurus*, which is maintained by the Art and Architecture Thesaurus Program. (Code r is an authoritative-agency data element. Its use requires that the 1XX heading is appropriate for use in the *Art and Architecture Thesaurus*.)

#### v - Répertoire des vedettes-matière

Code v indicates that the formulation of the 1XX heading conforms to the *Répertoire des vedettes-matière*, which is maintained by the Bibliothèque de l'Université Laval. (Code v is an authoritative-agency data element. Its use requires that the heading is appropriate for use in *Répertoire des vedettes-matière*.)

008/11 v  
150    00#aHumour canadien par l'image

008/11 v  
008/10 c    [code indicating AACR 2]  
008/15 a    [code indicating heading may be used as a subject added entry]  
130       00#aSérie d'études de la réglementation gouvernementales

#### z - Other

Code z indicates that the formulation of the 1XX heading conforms to subject heading system/thesaurus conventions other than that specified by one of the other defined codes. A USMARC code for the conventions used to formulate the heading may be contained in subfield #f (Subject heading/thesaurus conventions) in field 040 (Cataloging Source).

## 008/11

### n - Not applicable

Code n indicates that the 1XX heading does not conform to subject heading system/thesaurus conventions. The heading is not appropriate for use as a subject added entry in bibliographic records (008/15, code b).

008/11 n

008/09 a *[established heading record]*

008/10 c *[code indicating AACR 2]*

008/15 b *[code indicating heading may not be used as a subject added entry]*

008/39 ¶ *[code indicating Library of Congress cataloging]*

151 ¶0¶aCeylon

*[In the Library of Congress authority file, Sri Lanka is the only term used for subject added entries; Ceylon may still be appropriate for main or added entries.]*

008/11 n

008/09 c *[reference record (traced reference)]*

008/10 c *[code indicating AACR 2]*

008/15 b *[code indicating heading may not be used as a subject added entry]*

100 10¶aReger, Max,¶d1873-1916.¶tDies irae

664 ¶¶¶aFor this movement included in the composer's unfinished Requiem search under¶bReger, Max, 1873-1916.¶tRequiem (Mass)

---

### RELATED USMARC DOCUMENT/FIELD

008/10 Descriptive cataloging rules

**008/12 Type of series***M*Codes

a	Monographic series	
b	Multipart item	<i>A</i>
c	Series-like phrase	<i>A</i>
z	Other	<i>A</i>
n	Not applicable	<i>A</i>

**CHARACTER POSITION DEFINITION AND SCOPE**

A one-character alphabetic code indicates the type of series contained in the 1XX heading field in an established heading record (008/09, code a). The record may also contain series treatment information in fields 640-646. The codes distinguish between monographic series and multipart items and identify special instances of series treatment. Code a, b, c, or z is used if the 1XX heading is appropriate for use as a series added entry (008/16, code a), regardless of whether the series is actually traced in bibliographic records.

**GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS****■ CODES****a - Monographic series**

Code a indicates that the 1XX field contains a collective series heading that applies to a group of separate publications and/or subseries.

008/12 a

008/16 a *[code indicating heading may be used as a series added entry]*130    ~~0~~01aBulletin (International Institute for Land Reclamation and Improvement)**b - Multipart item**

Code b indicates that the 1XX field contains a collective heading that applies to a multipart monographic publication.

008/12 b

008/16 a *[code indicating heading may be used as a series added entry]*

100    101aGreaves, Margaret.†tLittle box of ballet stories

## 008/12

### c - Series-like phrase

| Code c indicates that the 1XX heading is a series-like phrase that may or may not be  
| used as a series added entry. This type of series is coded as being appropriate for use  
| as a series added entry in bibliographic records (008/16, code a).

008/12 c

008/16 a *[code indicating heading may be used as a series added entry]*

130     00#aDawn books

### n - Not applicable

Code n indicates that the 1XX heading does not represent a series or a series-like phrase. The heading is not appropriate for use as a series added entry in bibliographic records (008/16, code b).

008/12 n

008/16 b *[code indicating heading may not be used as a series added entry]*

130     00#aDead Sea scrolls

008/12 n

008/16 b *[code indicating heading may not be used as a series added entry]*

100     10#aShore, Kenneth

### z - Other

Code z indicates that the 1XX field contains a heading for a publication that does not fit any of the other defined types of series but for which series-type treatment is required, e.g., a serial in which an occasional issue is analyzed.

008/12 z

008/16 a *[code indicating heading may be used as a series added entry]*

130     00#aChinese studies in history

---

## RELATED USMARC DOCUMENT/FIELD

008/16 Heading use—series added entry

**008/13 Numbered/unnumbered series**

M

Codes

a	Numbered series	A
b	Unnumbered series	A
c	Series numbering varies	A
n	Not applicable	A

**CHARACTER POSITION DEFINITION AND SCOPE**

A one-character alphabetic code indicates whether a 1XX heading for a series (or a series-like phrase) in an established heading record (008/09, code a) is numbered, unnumbered, or varies between being numbered and unnumbered.

**GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS****■ CODES****a - Numbered series**

Code a indicates that the series (or series-like phrase) is numbered. If the heading is traced as a series added entry in bibliographic records for individual items in the series (008/16, code a), field 642 (Series Numbering Example) contains the form of series numbering to be used in an added entry.

008/13 a

008/16 a [code indicating heading may be used as a series added entry]

130 Ø0#aStructure and properties of cell membranes

642 ØØ#av. 1#5DLC

**b - Unnumbered series**

Code b indicates that the series (or series-like phrase) is unnumbered.

008/13 b

130 Ø0#aEPO dossier international

## 008/13

### c - Series numbering varies

Code c indicates that some issues of the series (or series-like phrase) are numbered; others, published concurrently, are unnumbered. If the heading is traced as a series added entry in bibliographic records for the numbered items (008/16, code a), field 642 (Series Numbering Example) contains the form of series numbering to be used in an added entry.

008/13 c

008/16 a *[code indicating heading may be used as a series added entry]*

130    00#aActualités de biochimie marine

642    00#av. 5#5DLC

### n - Not applicable

Code n indicates that the 1XX heading is not a series or series-like phrase heading (008/12, code n; 008/16, code b).

008/13 n

100    10#Kimura, Toshihiro

---

## RELATED USMARC DOCUMENT/FIELD

008/12 Type of series

008/16 Heading use—series added entry

642    Series Numbering Example

**008/14 Heading use code—main or added entry***M*Codes

- |   |   |          |
|---|---|----------|
| a | Heading is appropriate for use as main or added entry     | <i>A</i> |
| b | Heading is not appropriate for use as main or added entry | <i>A</i> |
- 

**CHARACTER POSITION DEFINITION AND SCOPE**

A one-character alphabetic code indicates whether the 1XX heading is appropriate for use as a main (1XX field) or added entry (7XX field) in bibliographic records. An *appropriate heading* is a 1XX heading in an established heading record (008/09, Type of record, code a or f) that conforms to descriptive cataloging rules (008/10, any code except n). An *inappropriate heading* would be any unestablished 1XX heading or any heading that does not conform to descriptive cataloging rules (008/10, code n).

---

**GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS****■ CODES****a - Heading is appropriate for use as main or added entry**

Code a indicates that the 1XX field in an established heading record contains a name, name/title, or uniform title that conforms to descriptive cataloging rules. The heading is appropriate for use as a main or added entry in bibliographic records.

008/14 a

100 10#aSmith, Arthur D.#q(Arthur Dwight),#d1907-

008/14 a

110 20#aAnnenberg School of Communications (University of Pennsylvania)

008/14 a

111 20#aConference on the Quantitative Measures of China's Economic  
Output#d(1975 :#cBrookings Institution)

008/14 a

130 00#aSerie Cuaderno de docencia

008/14 a

151 00#aBuenos Aires (Argentina : Province)



## 008/14

### b - Heading is not appropriate for use as main or added entry

Code b indicates that the 1XX field in an established heading record contains a heading that does not conform to descriptive cataloging rules or that the 1XX field contains an unestablished heading in a reference, subdivision, or node label record. These headings are not appropriate for use as a main or added entry in bibliographic records.

- 008/14 b  
008/09 a *[established heading record]*  
008/10 n *[code indicating heading not established using descriptive cataloging rules]*  
150    00+aSuper Bowl Game (Football)
- 008/14 b  
008/09 a *[established heading record]*  
008/10 n *[code indicating heading not established using descriptive cataloging rules]*  
150    00+aBeds in literature
- 008/14 b  
008/09 a *[established heading record]*  
008/10 n *[code indicating heading not established using descriptive cataloging rules]*  
151    00+aLoire River Valley (France)
- 008/14 b  
008/09 a *[established heading record]*  
008/10 n *[code indicating heading not established using descriptive cataloging rules]*  
151    00+aChina+xHistory+yMay Thirtieth Movement, 1925
- 008/14 b  
008/09 b *[reference record (untraced reference)]*  
150    00+aBadges of honor  
260    00+isubdivision+aMedals, badges, decorations, etc.+iunder armies, navies, etc., e.g.+aUnited States. Navy—Medals, badges, decorations, etc.
- 008/14 b  
008/09 c *[reference record (traced reference)]*  
100    10+aReger, Max,+d1873-1916.+tDies irae  
664    00+aFor this movement included in the composer's unfinished Requiem search under+bReger, Max, 1873-1916.+tRequiem (Mass)
- 

## RELATED USMARC DOCUMENT/FIELD

008/10 Descriptive cataloging rules

**008/15 Heading use code—subject added entry**

M

Codes

- |   |   |   |
|---|---|---|
| a | Heading is appropriate for use as subject added entry     | A |
| b | Heading is not appropriate for use as subject added entry | A |
- 

**CHARACTER POSITION DEFINITION AND SCOPE**

A one-character alphabetic code indicates whether the 1XX heading is appropriate for use as a subject added entry (6XX field) in bibliographic records. An *appropriate heading* is a 1XX heading in an established heading record (008/09, Type of record, code a or f) that conforms to subject heading system/thesaurus rules (008/11, any code except n). An *inappropriate heading* would be any unestablished 1XX heading or any established heading that does not conform to subject heading system/thesaurus rules (008/11, code n).

---

**GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS****■ CODES****a - Heading is appropriate for use as subject added entry**

Code a indicates that the 1XX field in an established heading record contains a subject name or term that conforms to subject heading system/thesaurus rules. The heading is appropriate for use as a subject added entry in bibliographic records.

008/15 a  
 008/11 a [code indicating LCSH]  
 150    Ø0#aSuper Bowl Game (Football)

008/15 a  
 008/11 a [code indicating LCSH]  
 150    Ø0#aBeds in literature

008/15 a  
 008/11 a [code indicating LCSH]  
 151    Ø0#aLoire River Valley (France)

008/15 a  
 008/10 c [code indicating AACR 2]  
 008/11 a [code indicating LCSH]  
 151    Ø0#aFrance

008/15 a  
 008/11 a [code indicating LCSH]  
 151    Ø0#aChina+xHistory+yMay Thirtieth Movement, 1925

## 008/15

### b - Heading is not appropriate for use as subject added entry

Code b indicates that the 1XX field in an established heading record contains a heading that does not conform to subject heading system/thesaurus rules or that the 1XX field contains an unestablished heading in a reference, subdivision, or node label record. These headings are not appropriate for use as subject added entries in bibliographic records.

008/15 b

008/09 a *[established heading record]*

008/10 c *[code indicating AACR 2]*

008/39 ø *[code indicating Library of Congress cataloging]*

151 ø0#aCeylon

*[In the Library of Congress authority file, Sri Lanka is the only term used for subject added entries; Ceylon may still be appropriate for main or added entries.]*

008/15 b

008/09 b *[reference record (untraced reference)]*

150 ø0#aBadges of honor

260 øø#isubdivision#aMedals, badges, decorations, etc.#iunder armies, navies, etc., e.g.#aUnited States. Navy—Medals, badges, decorations, etc.

008/15 b

008/09 c *[reference record (traced reference)]*

008/10 c *[code indicating AACR 2]*

100 10#aReger, Max,#d1873-1916.#tDies irae

664 øø#aFor this movement included in the composer's unfinished Requiem search under#bReger, Max, 1873-1916.#tRequiem (Mass)

008/15 b

008/09 d *[subdivision record]*

008/11 c *[code indicating MeSH]*

150 ø0#ablood supply

008/15 b

008/09 e *[node label record]*

008/11 c *[code indicating MeSH]*

150 ø0#acommercial catalogs by function

---

### RELATED USMARC DOCUMENT/FIELD

008/10 Descriptive cataloging rules

008/11 Subject heading system/thesaurus

**008/16 Heading use code—series added entry**

M

Codes

- |   |  |   |
|---|--|---|
| a | Heading is appropriate for use as series added entry     | A |
| b | Heading is not appropriate for use as series added entry | A |
- 

**CHARACTER POSITION DEFINITION AND SCOPE**

A one-character alphabetic code indicates whether the 1XX heading is appropriate for use as a series added entry in bibliographic records (4XX Series Statements (Traced); 8XX Series Added Entry). An *appropriate heading* is a 1XX heading in an established heading record (008/09, Type of record, code a) that represents a monographic series, a multipart item, an occasionally analyzable item, or a series-like phrase (008/12, code a, b, z, or c). An *inappropriate heading* would be any unestablished 1XX heading or any established heading that does not represent a series heading (008/12, code n).

---

**GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS****■ CODES****a - Heading is appropriate for use as series added entry**

Code a indicates that the 1XX field in an established heading record contains a series heading. The heading is appropriate for use as a series added entry, regardless of whether the series is actually traced in bibliographic records.

008/16 a  
 008/12 a [code indicating a monographic series]  
 130    Ø0#aOccasional papers (University of Witwatersrand)

008/16 a  
 008/12 b [code indicating a multipart item]  
 110    20#aAerospace Center (U.S.)#tJPC

008/16 a  
 008/12 z [code indicating an occasionally analyzable item]  
 130    Ø0#aSIGOA newsletter

008/16 a  
 008/12 c [code indicating a series-like phrase]  
 130    Ø0#aDahood memorial lecture

## 008/16

### b - Heading is not appropriate for use as series added entry

Code b indicates that the 1XX field in an established heading record contains a heading that is not a series heading (008/12, code n) or that the 1XX field contains an unestablished heading in a reference, subdivision, or node label record. These headings are not appropriate for use as a series added entry in bibliographic records.

008/16 b

130    00#aTreaty of Utrecht#d(1713)

008/16 b

100    10#aIves, Charles,#d1874-1954.#tSet of 3 short pieces.#pScherzo

008/16 b

008/11 a    [code indicating LCSH]

150    00#aSeries, Arithmetic

---

### RELATED USMARC DOCUMENT/FIELD

*USMARC Format for Bibliographic Data: 4XX (Series Statement) and 8XX (Series Added Entry) fields*

**008/17 Type of subject subdivision code**

0

Codes

a	Topical	
b	Form	0
c	Chronological	0
d	Geographic	0
e	Language	0
n	Not applicable	0

**CHARACTER POSITION DEFINITION AND SCOPE**

A one-character code identifies the type of subject subdivision contained in the 1XX heading field in a subdivision record, an established heading and subdivision record, or a reference and subdivision record (008/09, Kind of record, code d, f, or g). Code n is used in all other kinds of records.

**GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS****■ CODES****a - Topical**

Code a indicates that the 1XX heading is a topical subject subdivision.

008/17 a

008/09 d [subdivision record]

150 00#aaadverse effects

008/17 a

008/09 f [established heading and subdivision record]

150 00#aFuture

360 00#isubdivision#aFuture#iunder specific subject terms

**b - Form**

Code b indicates that the 1XX heading is a form subject subdivision.

008/17 b

008/09 d [subdivision record]

150 00#acongresses

## 008/17

008/17 b  
008/09 g *[reference and subdivision record]*  
150    Ø0#aDictionaries  
260    ØØ#isubdivision#aDictionaries#iunder specific subject terms

### c - Chronological

Code c indicates that the 1XX heading is a chronological subject subdivision.

008/17 c  
008/09 d *[subdivision record]*  
150    Ø0#a20th century

### d - Geographic

Code d indicates that the 1XX heading is a geographic subject subdivision.

008/17 d  
008/09 d *[subdivision record]*  
151    Ø0#aOntario

008/17 d  
008/09 f *[established heading and subdivision record]*  
151    Ø0#aGreat Lakes  
680    ØØ#aThis term is to be used only as a geographic descriptor and may  
not be subdivided. It may, however, be used to subdivide topical  
indexing terms.

### e - Language

Code e indicates that the 1XX heading is a language subject subdivision.

008/17 e  
008/09 d *[subdivision record]*  
150    Ø0#aGerman

### n - Not applicable

Code n indicates that the 1XX heading is not a subject subdivision.

008/17 n  
008/09 a *[established heading record]*  
Ø0#aElectroplating

008/17 n

008/09 a *[established heading record]*110 10#aQueensland.#bDept. of Employment and Labour Relations

---

**| CONTENT DESIGNATOR HISTORY**

Ø *Value used in records before the definition of this character position [OBSOLETE]*

The *type of subject subdivision* was not specified prior to the definition of this character position in 1986. Records created prior to that time may contain a blank (Ø) meaning *undefined* in this position.





**| 008/18-27 Undefined character positions***O*

---

**CHARACTER POSITION DEFINITION AND SCOPE**

| These ten character positions are undefined; each may contain a blank (ø) or a fill character (|).



## | 008/28 Type of government agency

O

Codes

Ø	Not a government agency	O
i	International intergovernmental	O
f	Federal/national	O
a	Autonomous or semi-autonomous component of the Soviet Union, Yugoslavia, or Malaysia	O
s	State, provincial, territorial, dependent, etc.	O
m	Multistate	O
c	Multilocal	O
l	Local	O
z	Other type of government agency	O
o	Government agency—type undetermined	O
u	Unknown if heading is government agency	O

## CHARACTER POSITION DEFINITION AND SCOPE

A one-character code indicates the jurisdictional level of the 1XX heading in an established heading record (008/09, Kind of record, code a). The heading may be either a jurisdiction or a body created or controlled by an international, national, state, or local government (including intergovernmental bodies of all types) jurisdiction.

## GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

## ■ CODES

## Ø - Not a government agency

Code Ø indicates that the 1XX heading is not a government body.

008/28 Ø

110 20#aInternational Comparative Literatur

008/28 Ø

130 Ø0#aBible

## 008/28

- a - Autonomous or semi-autonomous component of the Soviet Union, Yugoslavia, or Malaysia**  
Code a indicates that the LXX heading is, or is authorized by, an autonomous or semi-autonomous component of the Soviet Union, Yugoslavia, or Malaysia.

008/28 a  
151      00#aSabah

**c - Multilocal**

Code c indicates that the LXX heading is a government body that is authorized by a regional combination of jurisdictions below the state level.

008/28 c  
110      20#aHouston Independent School District

**f - Federal/national**

Code f indicates that the LXX heading is, or is authorized by, a federal or national government.

008/28 f  
110      20#aNational Agricultural Library

**i - International Intergovernmental**

Code i indicates that the LXX heading is an international intergovernmental body.

008/28 i  
110      20#aUnited Nations.#bSecretary-General

**l - Local**

Code l indicates that the LXX heading is, or is authorized by, a county, city, town, etc., government.

008/28 l  
151      00#aMexico City (Mexico)

**m - Multistate**

Code m indicates that the LXX heading is a government body that is authorized by a regional combination of jurisdictions at the state, provincial, territorial, etc., level.

008/28 m  
110      20#aCouncil of State Governments

**rnment agency—type undetermined**

e o indicates that the jurisdictional level of the LXX heading cannot be determined.

**s - State, provincial, territorial, dependent, etc.**

Code s indicates that the 1XX heading is, or is authorized by, a state, province, territory, etc., government.

008/28 s

110 10#aVirginia.#bGovernor

**u - Unknown if heading is government agency**

Code u indicates that it cannot be determined whether the 1XX heading is a government agency.

008/28 u

110 20#aAfghan Cartographic & Cadastral Survey Institute

**| z - Other type of government agency**

Code z indicates that the 1XX heading is a government agency that is authorized by a level other than that specified by one of the other defined codes.

008/28 z

110 20#aPatoka Lake Regional Planning Commission

---



**008/29 Reference evaluation**

M

Codes

a	Tracings are consistent with the heading	A
b	Tracings are not necessarily consistent with the heading	A
n	Not applicable	A

**CHARACTER POSITION DEFINITION AND SCOPE**

A one-character code indicates whether the 4XX/5XX tracing fields in a record have been evaluated for consistency with the rules used to formulate the 1XX heading in the record. This information is used to identify heading/tracing inconsistencies when a major change in the rules used to formulate headings and references has not been fully implemented. For example, in advance of implementing new rules, an organization may begin to add to its authority records a 4XX tracing reflecting the 1XX heading according to the new rules. When the rules are implemented, the 1XX headings in the database may be converted to the new rule form by flipping the pertinent 4XX field and the 1XX field. The tracing fields in the record then must be evaluated for their consistency with the new 1XX heading.

**GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS****■ CODES****a - Tracings are consistent with the heading**

Code a indicates that the 4XX/5XX tracing fields in a record have been evaluated and are consistent with the rules used to formulate the 1XX heading in that record.

**008/29 a**008/10 c *[code indicating AACR 2]*

110 10#aMauritius.#bMinistry for Employment

410 10#aMauritius.#bMinistère de l'emploi

410 10#aMauritius.#bEmployment, Ministry for

**008/29 a**008/10 c *[code indicating AACR 2]*

130 10#aEconomic and statistical notes

410 10#aGreat Britain.#bDept. of the Environment.#tEconomic and statistical  
notes



## 008/29

008/29 a  
008/11 a [code indicating LCSH]  
150    ∅0#aActing for television  
450    ∅0#aTelevision acting  
550    ∅0#aActing

### b - Tracings are not necessarily consistent with the heading

Code b indicates that the 4XX/5XX tracing fields in a record have not been evaluated and may not be consistent with the rules used to formulate the 1XX heading in that record. *Code b is not used in current authority records.*

008/29 b  
008/10 c [code indicating AACR 2]  
110    20#aTucson Metropolitan Chamber of Commerce  
410    10#aTucson, Ariz.#bMetropolitan Chamber of Commerce  
510    10#w#aTucson, Ariz.#bChamber of Commerce

### n - Not applicable

Code n indicates that the record contains no 4XX/5XX tracing fields.

008/29 n  
008/10 c [code indicating AACR 2]  
100    10#aAhlborn, Richard E.

008/29 n  
008/11 a [code indicating LCSH]  
150    ∅0#aBa (Egyptian religion)

---

## | CONTENT DESIGNATOR HISTORY

∅    *Value used in records before the definition of this byte [OBSOLETE]*

This code was made obsolete in 1987. *Reference evaluation* was not specified prior to the definition of this character position in 1980. Records created prior to that time may contain a blank ∅ meaning *undefined* in this position.

**008/30 Undefined character position***O*

---

**CHARACTER POSITION DEFINITION AND SCOPE**

This character position is undefined; it may contain a blank (Ø) or a fill character (I).



**008/31 Record update in process***M*Codes

- |   |                         |          |
|---|-------------------------|----------|
| a | Record can be used      | <i>A</i> |
| b | Record is being updated | <i>A</i> |
- 

**CHARACTER POSITION DEFINITION AND SCOPE**

A one-character alphabetic code indicates whether a change in any field in a record is being considered. Code b alerts users to a potential change in the record and that it may not be advisable to use the 1XX heading in bibliographic records. The organization investigating the modification may be identified by the NUC symbol contained in the last subfield #d of field 040 (Cataloging Source).

---

**GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS****■ CODES****a - Record can be used**

Code a indicates that no change in the record is being considered and that the data may be used.

**b - Record is being updated**

Code b indicates that a change in the record is being considered.

---

**RELATED USMARC DOCUMENT/FIELD**

040 Cataloging Source



**008/32 Undifferentiated personal name***M*Codes

a	Differentiated personal name	<i>A</i>
b	Undifferentiated personal name	<i>A</i>
n	Not applicable	<i>A</i>

---

**CHARACTER POSITION DEFINITION AND SCOPE**

A one-character alphabetic code indicates whether a personal name contained in field 100 in an established heading record or a reference record (008/09, Kind of record, code a or c) is used by one person or by two or more persons. Code n is used if the 1XX heading is not a personal name or if the personal name is a family name (100, first indicator value 3).

If neither dates nor distinguishing terms are available to differentiate between two or more identical names, the same heading is used for all persons with the same name. In a single authority record, field 670 (Source Data Found) may contain a descriptive term for each person consisting of the title of the work cataloged and the person's relationship to it, e.g., [Author of Speciall newes from Ireland].

---

**GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS****■ CODES****a - Differentiated personal name**

Code a indicates that the personal name in field 100 is a unique name.

008/32 a

100 10#aDring, Madeleine

008/32 a

100 10#aCzerny, Carl,#d1791-1857.#tRicordanza

008/32 a

008/09 c [*reference record (untraced reference)*]

100 10#aReger, Max,#d1873-1916.#tDies irae

664 00#aFor this movement included in the composer's unfinished Requiem  
search under#bReger, Max, 1873-1916.#tRequiem (Mass)

## 008/32

### b - Undifferentiated personal name

Code b indicates that the personal name in field 100 is used by two or more persons.  
No distinguishing information is available.

#### 008/32 b

- 100 00# Divine of the Church of England
- 670 00# [Author of A modest examination of the new oath of allegiance]
- 670 00# His A modest examination of the new oath of allegiance, 1689: #bt.p.  
(divine of the Church of England)
- 670 00# [Author of Reasons against petitioning the King for restoring the deprived  
bishops without repentance]
- 670 00# Author's Reasons against petitioning the King for restoring the deprived  
bishops without repentance, 1690: #bcaption t.p. (divine of the Church of  
England)

### n - Not applicable

Code n indicates that the 1XX heading is not a personal name or that the personal  
name is a family name.

#### 008/32 n

- 100 30# Guelf, House of

#### 008/32 n

- 110 20# University of Denver

#### 008/32 n

- 130 00# Occasional papers of the Prince of Wales Northern Heritage Centre

#### 008/32 n

- 150 00# Ballet dancing

#### 008/32 n

- 151 00# Paris (France)

---

## RELATED USMARC DOCUMENT/FIELD

670 Source Data Found

**008/33 Level of establishment code***M*Codes

a	Fully established heading	<i>A</i>
b	Memorandum	<i>A</i>
c	Provisional	<i>A</i>
d	Preliminary	<i>A</i>
n	Not applicable	<i>A</i>

---

**CHARACTER POSITION DEFINITION AND SCOPE**

A one-character alphabetic code indicates the extent to which the formulation of the 1XX heading conforms to the descriptive cataloging and/or subject heading system/thesaurus rules coded in 008/10 and 008/11. Codes a, b, c and d are used only in established heading records (008/09, Kind of record, code a or f). Code n is used in all other kinds of records.

The codes defined for 008/33 apply only to the 1XX heading field. The completeness of the entire authority record is indicated in Leader/17 (Encoding level).

---

**GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS****■ CODES****a - Fully established heading**

Code a indicates that the 1XX heading is fully established. The heading may be used without reservation in a bibliographic record.

008/33 a  
100 10#aSwarts, Robert L.,#d1942-

008/33 a  
150 Ø0#aElectrons



**b - Memorandum**

Code b indicates that the 1XX heading is fully established but that it has not been used in a bibliographic record. The authority work was done before the decision was made to not use the heading in a bibliographic record; however, the information is retained for probable future use. When the heading is used in a bibliographic record, code b will be changed to code a or c.

## 008/33 b

100 10# Wellington, John, #d1958-

670 00# Microform review ten volume index, 1972-1981, c1982: #bCIP t.p.  
(John Wellington) data sheet (b. 9/10/58)**c - Provisional**

Code c indicates that the 1XX heading cannot be formulated satisfactorily because of inadequate information. Further investigation should be made when the heading is next used in a bibliographic record. When the needed information is available, code c will be changed to code a.

## 008/33 c

110 20# Fédération internationale de la précontrainte. #bWorking Group on  
Concrete Ships*[The French form of the subordinate unit could not be found.]***d - Preliminary**

Code d indicates that the 1XX heading is taken from a bibliographic record because the bibliographic item is not available at the time the heading is established. For example, authority records may be created for the 1XX headings in bibliographic records that are being converted retrospectively to machine-readable form. When the heading is used in a bibliographic record created from cataloging with an item in hand, code d will be changed to code a.

## 008/33 d

100 10# Armstrong, William Herbert

670 00# LCCN 56-1255: His Machine tools for metal cutting, 1957 #b(hdg.:  
Armstrong, William Herbert)**n - Not applicable**

Code n indicates that the 1XX field contains an unestablished heading in a reference, subdivision, reference and subdivision, or node label record.

## 008/33 n

008/09 c *[reference record (untraced reference)]*

150 00# Celebrations, anniversaries, etc.

260 00# Anniversaries, etc. #i under names of individual persons and corporate  
bodies, under individual historic events, and under names countries,  
cities, etc.; and subdivision #a Centennial celebrations, etc. #i under  
names of individual corporate bodies, under historic events, and  
under names of countries, cities, etc.

008/33 n  
 008/09 c *[reference record (traced reference)]*  
 100 10#aReger, Max, #d1873-1916. #tDies irae  
 664 00#aFor this movement included in the composer's unfinished Requiem  
 search under #bReger, Max, 1873-1916. #tRequiem (Mass)

008/33 n  
 008/09 d *[subdivision record]*  
 150 00#aadverse effects

---

#### RELATED USMARC DOCUMENT/FIELD

008/10 Descriptive cataloging rules  
 008/11 Subject heading system/thesaurus



**008/34-37 Undefined character positions**O

---

**CHARACTER POSITION DEFINITION AND SCOPE**

These four character positions are undefined; each may contain a blank (Ø) or a fill character (|).

---

**| CONTENT DESIGNATOR HISTORY**

Prior to 1986, character positions 35-37 were defined as *Language of heading code*.



**008/38 Modified record**

O

Codes

∅	Not modified	O
s	Shortened	O
x	Missing characters	O

---

**CHARACTER POSITION DEFINITION AND SCOPE**

A one-character code indicates whether the record is modified from its intended content because it required characters that could not be converted into machine-readable form (e.g., nonroman characters) or because it exceeded a system-imposed maximum allowable length.

---

**GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS****■ CODES****∅ - Not modified**

Code ∅ indicates that the content of the record required no modification in order to be transcribed into machine-readable form.

**s - Shortened**

Code s indicates that all of the data intended for the record is not included in the machine-readable record because the record would exceed the maximum length allowed by a particular system. The *USMARC Specifications for Record Structure, Character Sets, Tapes* states that USMARC records have a maximum length of 99,999 characters. *Code s is not used in current authority records.*

**| x - Missing characters**

Code x indicates that the intended content could not be converted into machine-readable mathematical symbols, etc. Organizations now use special symbols by a word or phrase. *Code*

---

**RELATED USMARC DOCUMENT/FIELD**

*USMARC Specifications for Record Structure*



## 008/39 Cataloging source code

M

Codes

Ø	Library of Congress	A
a	National Agricultural Library	A
b	National Library of Medicine	A
c	Library of Congress cooperative cataloging program	A
d	Other sources	A
u	Unknown	A

## CHARACTER POSITION DEFINITION AND SCOPE

A one-character code indicates the creator of an authority record. If the cataloging source is known, the National Union Catalog (NUC) symbol of the organization creating the record is carried in subfield #a of field 040 (Cataloging Source). The parties responsible for the USMARC authority record are determined by the code in 008/39 and the NUC symbol(s) in field 040.

## GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

## ■ CODES

## Ø - Library of Congress

Code Ø indicates that the Library of Congress is the creator of the original authority data.

008/39 Ø

040 ØØ#aDLC#cDLC

*[The Library of Congress is also responsible for the content designation and transcription.]*

## a - National Agricultural Library

Code a indicates that the National Agricultural Library is the creator of the original authority data.

008/39 a

040 ØØ#aDNAL#cDNAL

*[The National Agricultural Library is also responsible for the content designation and transcription.]*



**b - National Library of Medicine**

Code b indicates that the National Library of Medicine is the creator of the original authority data.

008/39 b

040    00#aNLM#cDLC

*[The Library of Congress is responsible for the content designation and transcription.]*

**c - Library of Congress cooperative cataloging program**

Code c indicates that the creator of the authority data is a participant (other than the National Agricultural Library and the National Library of Medicine) in a cooperative cataloging program with the Library of Congress, such as the National Coordinated Cataloging Operations program (NACO), the Linked Systems Project (LSP), and the LC Online Cooperative Program.

008/39 c

040    00#aMt#cDLC

*[NACO record created by the Montana State Library; the Library of Congress is responsible for the content designation and transcription.]*

008/39 c

040    00#aOU#cOU

*[Record created, content designated, and transcribed by LSP participant Ohio State University.]*

008/39 c

040    00#aICU#cICU

*[Record created, content designated, and transcribed by LC Online Cooperative Program participant University of Chicago.]*

**d - Other sources**

Code d indicates that the source of the authority data is an organization that is other than an LC cooperating cataloging program participant or one for which a specific code is defined.

008/39 d

040    00#aWyU#cWyU

*[Record created, content designated, and transcribed by the University of Wyoming.]*

**u - Unknown**

Code u indicates that the creator of the authority data is unknown. This code is used when an organization transcribes a manual authority record from an unknown source. In this case, field 040 lacks a subfield #a and subfield #c contains the NUC symbol of the transcribing organization.

008/39 u

040    ØØ#cOrU

*[The University of Oregon is responsible for the content designation and transcription.]*

---

**RELATED USMARC DOCUMENT/FIELD**

040 Cataloging Source



## 01X-09X Numbers and Codes—General Information

*National Level  
Requirement*

010	Library of Congress Control Number (NR)	A
014	Link to Bibliographic Record for Serial or Multipart Item (R)	O
020	International Standard Book Number (R)	A
022	International Standard Serial Number (R)	A
035	System Control Number (R)	O
040	Cataloging Source (NR)	M
042	Authentication Code (NR)	O
043	Geographic Area Code (NR)	O
045	Time Period of Heading (NR)	O
050	Library of Congress Call Number (R)	O
052	Geographic Classification Code (R)	O
053	LC Classification Number (R)	O
060	National Library of Medicine Call Number (R)	O
066	Character Sets Present (NR)	A
070	National Agricultural Library Call Number (R)	O
072	Subject Category Code (R)	O
073	Subdivision Usage (NR)	O
082	Dewey Decimal Call Number (NR)	O
083	Dewey Decimal Classification Number (R)	O
09X	Local Call Numbers (NR)	O

## DEFINITION AND SCOPE

Fields 01X-09X contain standard numbers, classification numbers, codes, and other data elements relating to the record.

Alternate Graphic Representation

Subfield ≠6 (Linkage) is defined for the following 01X-09X fields:

014	Link to Bibliographic Record for Serial or Multipart Item
020	International Standard Book Number
022	International Standard Serial Number
035	System Control Number
050	Library of Congress Call Number
060	National Library of Medicine Call Number
070	National Agricultural Library Call Number
072	Subject Category Code
073	Subdivision Usage
082	Dewey Decimal Call Number
083	Dewey Decimal Classification Number

The description of subfield ≠6 contained in field 014 applies to each of these fields. It will be added to the other field descriptions when they are reissued for other changes.



**010 Library of Congress Control Number (NR)**

A

Indicators

<u>First</u>	Undefined
Ø	Undefined

M

M

<u>Second</u>	Undefined
Ø	Undefined

M

M

Subfield Codes

‡a	LC control number (NR)
‡z	Cancelled/invalid LC control number (R)

O

M

**FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE**

This field contains a unique number assigned to a record by the Library of Congress or a Linked Systems Project (LSP) partner contributing authority records to the National Coordinated Cataloging Operations (NACO) database.

The LC control number is carried in field 001 (Control Number) in records distributed by LC's Cataloging Distribution Service. It may also be carried in field 010‡a. An organization using LC records may move the LC control number from field 001 to field 010 and use field 001 for its own control number.

An LC record may contain field 010 with a cancelled or invalid control number of a previously-distributed record. A record may be cancelled because it is a duplicate, i.e., it represents the same name, series, or subject heading represented by another record. The structure of the cancelled/invalid control number is the same as that used by LC in field 001. Field 010 may or may not contain a subfield ‡a with the valid control number from the 001 field.

**STRUCTURE OF THE LC CONTROL NUMBER**

The LC control number for authority records has the same 12-character-position structure as the LC control number for bibliographic and holdings data records:

- three character positions for an alphabetic prefix
- eight character positions for an eight-digit number composed of a two-digit prefix representing the year the number was assigned and a six-digit serial number
- a final character position reserved for supplement number information

**Alphabetic prefix**

Prefixes are carried in a USMARC record as lowercase alphabetic characters. Prefixes of less than three characters are left justified with blank ( ) fill. LC authority records are differentiated from LC bibliographic and holdings data records by the control number prefix.

Records distributed in the MARC Distribution Service—Name Authorities (i.e., names and series) have the prefix n . Prefixes nr , nw , and no identify records from the Research Libraries Information Network (RLIN), the Western Library Network (WLN), and the Online Computer Library Center (OCLC), respectively, that originate in those systems by NACO participants and are sent to LC over the LSP links.

Records distributed in the MARC Distribution Service—Subject Authorities have the prefix sh .

**Year**

The year portion of the control number consists of two digits representing the year the control number was assigned. In name authority records that were converted retrospectively by an agency under contract to LC, the digits 50 were used for the year for name authority records, and the digits 42 were used for series authority records. In subject authority records that were converted retrospectively from an LC internal format to USMARC, the digits 85 were used in lieu of the actual year of creation.

**Serial number**

The serial number portion consists of one to six digits. Serial numbers of less than six digits are right justified with zero fill. The hyphen separating the year and the serial number in LC printed products is not carried in the machine record. For example, the serial number in the number 85-2 is carried as 85000002 in the USMARC record.

**Supplement number**

This character position was originally defined to carry a supplement number for dashed-on supplement entries in bibliographic records. Use of the supplement number has not been implemented. LC uses a blank ( ) in this position.

**■ EXAMPLES**

```
001 n .85822720
010 .+zn .78013283.+zn .85822720

001 n .80022124
010 .+an .80022124.+zn .80014241
```

---

**INPUT CONVENTIONS**

Field 010 is an agency-assigned field; it may be used only for an LC control number.

---

**RELATED USMARC DOCUMENT/FIELD**

001 Control Number





**014 Link to Bibliographic Record for Serial or Multipart  
Item (R)**

O

Indicators

<u>First</u>	Undefined	M
Ø	Undefined	M
<u>Second</u>	Undefined	M
Ø	Undefined	M

Subfield Code

‡a	Control number of related bibliographic record (NR)	M
‡6	Linkage (NR)	A

**FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE**

This field contains the control number copied from field 001 of a USMARC bibliographic record for a serial or a multipart item that is cataloged as a set. The inclusion of this field in the established heading record for a series (008/09, Kind of record, code a) provides a machine link within a system between the series heading and a bibliographic record in which the series heading is used. Each bibliographic record control number associated with the series heading is contained in a separate 014 field.

**GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS****■ INDICATORS**

Both indicator positions are undefined; each contains a blank (Ø).

**■ SUBFIELD CODE****‡a - Control number of related bibliographic record**

Subfield ‡a contains the National Union Catalog (NUC) symbol (enclosed in parentheses) of the organization that created the related bibliographic record (040, Cataloging Source, subfield ‡a) followed by the control number from field 001 of the bibliographic record. (The NUC symbol is an authoritative-agency data element. The Library of Congress maintains the *Symbols of American Libraries* and is the authoritative agency.)

*Bibliographic record:*

001 885032313  
 245 00\$aHuman genes and diseases /\$cvolume editor, F. Blasi.  
 440 80\$aHorizons in biochemistry and biophysics ;\$v. 8  
 040 88\$aDNLM/DLC\$cDLC  
 [Certain LC cooperative cataloging programs require the use of composite NUC symbols in field  
 040\$a.]

*Authority record:*

001 n884704742  
 014 88\$a(DNLM/DLC)885032313  
 130 88\$aHorizons in biochemistry and biophysics

## | \$6 - Linkage

Subfield \$6 contains data that link fields that are alternate graphic representations of each other. It contains the tag number of an associated field and an occurrence number. A complete description of subfield \$6 and guidelines for applying it are provided in the *880 Alternate Graphic Representation* section.

---

## INPUT CONVENTIONS

## Punctuation

A slash (/) occurs between the components of the composite NUC symbols used by the Library of Congress in certain cooperative cataloging programs.

## Structure

The structure of the control number is the same as that used by the originating organization in its control number field (001 Control Number; 010 Library of Congress Control Number). No space occurs between the parenthetical NUC symbol and the first character position of the control number.

---

## RELATED USMARC DOCUMENT/FIELD

880 Alternate Graphic Representation

*Symbols of American Libraries*

*USMARC Format for Bibliographic Data:* 001 Control Number; 010 Library of Congress Control Number

**020 International Standard Book Number (R)**

A

Indicators

First Undefined  
 Ø Undefined

M

M

Second Undefined  
 Ø Undefined

M

M

Subfield Codes

| #a International Standard Book Number (NR)  
 #c Terms of availability (NR)  
 #z Cancelled/invalid ISBN (R)

A

O

A

**FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE**

This field contains the International Standard Book Number (ISBN), the terms of availability, and any cancelled/invalid ISBN copied from field 020 of a USMARC bibliographic record for a multipart item that is cataloged as a set. The inclusion of this field in the established heading record for a series (008/09, Kind of record code, code a) provides a machine link within a system between the series heading and a bibliographic record in which the series heading is used. Each valid ISBN associated with the series heading is contained in a separate 020 field.

The ISBN is an agency-assigned data element. ISBNs are assigned to monographic publications by designated agencies in each country participating in the program. An ISBN consists of ten digits comprising four groups separated by hyphens. (The tenth digit is a check digit used as a computer validity check; it consists of a number between 0 and 9 or an uppercase X (for the arabic numeral 10).) Procedures for validation of the ISBN by calculating the check digit and hyphenating instructions are in *Book Numbering (ANSI Z39.21)*. A description of the ISBN structure and guidelines for recording qualifying information are found in *Cataloging Service Bulletin*, no. 16 (Spring 1982), published by the Library of Congress.

An International Standard Serial Number (ISSN) associated with a series heading for a serial is contained in field 022 (International Standard Serial Number).

**GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS****■ INDICATORS**

Both indicators are undefined; each contains a blank (Ø).

## ■ SUBFIELD CODES

## | #a - International Standard Book Number

Subfield #a contains a valid ISBN for the multipart item. Parenthetical qualifying information, such as the publisher/distributor, binding/format, and volume numbers, is not separately subfield coded.

020 #a0882335073 (set)

020 #a0882335065 (v. 2 : jacket)

## #c - Terms of availability

Subfield #c contains the price or a brief statement of availability and any parenthetical qualifying information concerning the terms. When field 020 in the corresponding bibliographic record contains only a subfield #c, field 020 is not included in the series authority record.

020 #a8449955289 (v. 1)#c\$15.00 (per vol.)

## #z - Cancelled/invalid ISBN

Subfield #z contains a cancelled or invalid ISBN and any parenthetical qualifying information. Each cancelled/invalid ISBN is contained in a separate subfield #z.

020 #a0870686933 (v. 1 : alk. paper)#z0870684302 (jacket)

## INPUT CONVENTIONS

## Display Constants

ISBN	[associated with the content of subfield #a]
ISBN (invalid)	[associated with the content of subfield #z]
- - -	[embedded hyphens]

An ISBN is usually printed in a publication with the prefix *ISBN* and with each of its parts separated from the other by hyphens or spaces. The initialism *ISBN*, the phrase *ISBN (invalid)*, and the embedded hyphens are not carried in the USMARC record. They may be system generated as display constants associated with the content of subfields #a and #z, respectively.

*Content designated field:*

020 #a0870686933 (v. 1)#z0870684302

*Display example:*

ISBN 0-87068-693-3 (v. 1) ISBN (invalid) 0-87068-430-2

**RELATED USMARC DOCUMENT/FIELD**

022 International Standard Serial Number  
*USMARC Format for Bibliographic Data:* 020 International Standard Book Number

**OTHER RELATED DOCUMENTS**

*Book Numbering* (ANSI Z39.21)  
*Cataloging Service Bulletin*, no. 16 (Spring 1982)



**022 International Standard Serial Number (R)**

A

Indicators

<u>First</u>	Undefined	M
Ø	Undefined	M
<u>Second</u>	Undefined	M
Ø	Undefined	M

Subfield Codes

	±a	International Standard Serial Number (NR)	A
	±y	Incorrect ISSN (R)	A
	±z	Cancelled ISSN (R)	A

---

**FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE**

This field contains the valid International Standard Serial Number (ISSN) and any incorrect and cancelled ISSNs copied from field 022 of a USMARC bibliographic record for a serial. The inclusion of this field in the established heading record for a series (008/09, Kind of record, code a) provides a machine link within a system between the series heading and a bibliographic record in which the series heading is used. Each valid ISSN associated with the series heading is contained in a separate 022 field.

The ISSN is an agency-assigned data element. ISSNs are assigned to serial publications by national centers under the auspices of the International Serial Data System (ISDS). An ISSN consists of eight digits comprising two groups of four digits each, separated by a hyphen. (The eighth digit is a check digit used as a computer validity check; it consists of a number between 0 and 9 or an uppercase X (for the arabic numeral 10).) A description of the ISSN structure and the procedure for validation of the ISSN by calculating the check digit is in *International Standard Serial Numbering* (ANSI Z39.9).

An International Standard Book Number (ISBN) associated with a series heading for a multipart set is contained in field 020 (International Standard Book Number).

---

**GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS****■ INDICATORS**

Both indicator positions are undefined; each contains a blank (Ø).



## ■ SUBFIELD CODES

## | #a - International Standard Serial Number

Subfield #a contains a valid ISSN for the serial.

022 ⑈#a0083-0674

## #y - Incorrect ISSN

Subfield #y contains an incorrect ISSN that has been associated with the serial. Each incorrect ISSN is contained in a separate subfield #y. A cancelled ISSN is contained in subfield #z.

022 ⑈#a0046-225X#y0046-2254

## #z - Cancelled ISSN

Subfield #z contains a cancelled ISSN that is associated with the serial. Each cancelled ISSN is contained in a separate subfield #z.

022 ⑈#a0410-7543#z0527-740X

## INPUT CONVENTIONS

## Display Constants

ISSN	<i>[associated with the content of subfield #a]</i>
ISSN (incorrect)	<i>[associated with the content of subfield #y]</i>
ISSN (cancelled)	<i>[associated with the content of subfield #z]</i>

is usually printed in a publication with the prefix ISSN and as two groups of four digits separated by a hyphen. The hyphen separating the two groups of digits is carried in the MARC record. The initialism *ISSN* and the phrases *ISSN (incorrect)* and *ISSN (cancelled)* are not input. They may be system generated as display constants associated with subfields #a, #y, and #z, respectively.

*Display example:*

| ISSN 0046-225X ISSN (incorrect) 0046-2254

## RELATED USMARC DOCUMENT/FIELD

020 International Standard Book Number

USMARC Format for Bibliographic Data: 022 International Standard Serial Number

**OTHER RELATED DOCUMENT**

*Serial Numbering (ISSN)* (ANSI Z39.9)



**035 System Control Number (R)**

O

Indicators

<u>First</u>	Undefined	M
Ø	Undefined	M
<u>Second</u>	Undefined	M
Ø	Undefined	M

Subfield Codes

‡a	System control number (NR)	M
‡z	Cancelled/invalid system control number (R)	A

**FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE**

This field contains a system control number for a record that belongs to a system other than the one whose number is contained in field 001 (Control Number) or field 010 (Library of Congress Control Number). For interchange purposes, documentation of the structure and use of the system control number must be provided to exchange partners by the originating organization. Each valid system control number and any related cancelled/invalid control number are contained in a separate 035 field.

**GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS****■ INDICATORS**

Both indicator positions are undefined; each contains a blank (Ø).

**■ SUBFIELD CODES****‡a - System control number**

Subfield ‡a contains the National Union Catalog (NUC) symbol (enclosed in parentheses) of the organization originating the system control number, followed immediately by the number. (The NUC symbol is an authoritative-agency data element. The Library of Congress maintains the *Symbols of American Libraries* and is the authoritative agency.)

035 ØØ‡a(CaBVAU)2835210335

## 035

### **#z - Cancelled/invalid system control number**

Subfield #z contains a cancelled/invalid system control number that is associated with the valid system control number contained in subfield #a.

035 ~~00~~#a(OCOLC)1553114#z(OCOLC)153114

---

## **INPUT CONVENTIONS**

### **Capitalization**

The capitalization of the NUC symbol characters strictly follows that found in *Symbols of American Libraries*.

### **Structure**

The structure of the system control number is determined by the documentation provided by the originating system. No space occurs between the parenthetical NUC symbol and the first character position of the control number.

---

## **RELATED USMARC DOCUMENT/FIELD**

001 Control Number

010 Library of Congress Control Number

## **OTHER RELATED DOCUMENT**

*Symbols of American Libraries*

**040 Cataloging Source (NR)***M*Indicators

First    Undefined  
 ⌀        Undefined

*M**M*

Second   Undefined  
 ⌀        Undefined

*M**M*Subfield Codes

⊕a    Original cataloging agency (NR)  
 ⊕b    Language of cataloging (NR)  
 ⊕c    Transcribing agency (NR)  
 ⊕d    Modifying agency (R)  
 ⊕f    Subject heading/thesaurus conventions (NR)

*M**O**M**A**A***FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE**

This field contains the National Union Catalog (NUC) symbol of the organization(s) that created the original record, assigned USMARC content designation and transcribed the record into machine-readable form, or modified an existing USMARC record. The NUC symbols in field 040 and the code in 008/39 (Cataloging source) specify the responsible parties for the content, content designation, and transcription of an authority record. (The NUC symbol is an authoritative-agency data element. The Library of Congress maintains the *Symbols of American Libraries* and is the authoritative agency.)

Field 040 may contain a USMARC code for the language of the textual information (i.e., nonheading data) contained in the record in note fields, subfield ⊕i (Reference instruction phrase) of the 4XX and 5XX tracing fields, etc. It may also contain a USMARC code for the subject heading/thesaurus conventions used to formulate the heading.

**GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS****■ INDICATORS**

Both indicator positions are undefined; each contains a blank (⌀).

## ■ SUBFIELD CODES

## ‡a - Original cataloging agency

Subfield ‡a contains the NUC symbol of the organization that created the original record.

008/39 ‡ [code indicating Library of Congress]

040 ‡‡‡aDLC‡cDLC

*[The Library of Congress is responsible for the content, content designation, and transcription.]*

## ‡b - Language of cataloging

Subfield ‡b contains a USMARC code for the language used in the textual portions of the record. (The language code is an authoritative-agency data element. The Library of Congress maintains the *USMARC Code List for Languages* and is the authoritative agency.)

## ‡c - Transcribing agency

Subfield ‡c contains the NUC symbol of the organization that transcribed the record into machine-readable form.

008/39 c [code indicating LC cooperative program]

040 ‡‡‡aSd‡cICU

*[The South Dakota State Library is responsible for the content of the record; the University of Chicago is responsible for the content designation and transcription.]*

008/39 c [code indicating LC cooperative program]

040 ‡‡‡aICU‡cICU

*[The University of Chicago is responsible for the content, content designation, and transcription.]*

## ‡d - Modifying agency

Subfield ‡d contains the NUC symbol of the organization responsible for modifying a USMARC record. A modification is defined as any correction to a record, including data, content designation, or keying changes. The NUC symbol for each organization that modifies a record is contained in a separate subfield ‡d. Subfield ‡d is not repeated when the same NUC symbol would occur in adjacent ‡d subfields. In an online system, the NUC symbol in the last subfield ‡d may be used to identify the source of potential modification to a record that contains code b in 008/31 (Record update in process).

Leader/05 c [code indicating revised record]

008/39 c [code indicating LC cooperative program]

040 ‡‡‡aMH‡cMH‡dDLC

*[Harvard University and the Library of Congress are collectively responsible for the content, content designation, and transcription.]*

Leader/05 c [code indicating revised record]  
 008/39 c [code indicating LC cooperative program]  
 040 ~~##a~~Nc~~c~~DLC~~d~~DLC  
 [The North Carolina State Library and the Library of Congress are collectively responsible for the content; the Library of Congress is responsible for the content designation and transcription. Two modifications by LC are indicated by a single subfield #d.]

| #f - Subject heading/thesaurus conventions

Subfield #f contains a USMARC code for the subject heading/thesaurus conventions used to formulate the heading when field 008/11 (Subject heading system/thesaurus) contains code z (Other). The source of the USMARC code is Part IV: Subject/Index Term Sources of the *USMARC Code List for Relators, Sources, Descriptive Conventions*. (The code is an authoritative-agency data element. The Library of Congress maintains the *USMARC Code List* and is the authoritative agency.)

---

RELATED USMARC DOCUMENT/FIELD

Leader/05 Record status  
 008/11 Subject heading system/thesaurus  
 008/31 Record update in process  
 008/39 Cataloging source  
*USMARC Code List for Languages*  
*USMARC Code List for Relators, Sources, Descriptive Conventions*: Part IV  
 Subject/Index Term Sources

OTHER RELATED DOCUMENT

*Symbols of American Libraries*





| 042 Authentication Code (NR)

O

Indicators

First Undefined  
Ø Undefined

M

M

Second Undefined  
Ø Undefined

M

M

Subfield Code

‡a Authentication code (R)

M

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

This field will contain one or more authentication codes assigned by centers that review (and upgrade, if necessary) an authority record in a national database. When defined, the authentication codes will be compatible with those used in other cooperative projects.



**043 Geographic Area Code (NR)**

O

Indicators

<u>First</u>	Undefined	M
Ø	Undefined	M
<u>Second</u>	Undefined	M
Ø	Undefined	M

Subfield Code

#a	Geographic area code (R)	M
----	--------------------------	---

**FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE**

This field contains as many as three USMARC geographic area codes (GAC) for geographic areas associated with the 1XX heading in an established heading record or a subdivision record (008/09, Kind of record, code a, d, or f). A more precise identification of geographic areas associated with a geographic name heading may be contained in field 052 (Geographic Classification Code). (Field 043 is an authoritative-agency field. The Library of Congress maintains the *USMARC Code List for Geographic Areas* and is the authoritative agency.)

**GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS****■ INDICATORS**

Both indicator positions are undefined; each contains a blank (Ø).

**■ SUBFIELD CODE****#a - Geographic area code**

Subfield #a contains a USMARC code for a geographic area. Each geographic area code associated with a heading is seven characters in length and is contained in a separate subfield #a.

100 10#aFord, Gerald R.,#d1913- #xMuseums, relics, etc.#zMichigan

043 ØØ#an-us-mi

110 10#aFrance.#tTreaties, etc.#gPoland,#d1948 Mar. 2

043 ØØ#ae-fr---#ae-pl---

## 043

130 00#aBible+zGermany

043 00#ae-gx---

150 00#aCanadian Grand Prix Race

043 00#an-cn---

150 00#aWater resources development+zKenya

043 00#af-ke---

151 00#aAmazon River

043 00#asa-----

---

## INPUT CONVENTIONS

### Structure

All alphabetical characters are input in lowercase. Embedded and trailing hyphens are carried in the USMARC record. Trailing hyphens need not be input; they may be system generated. A detailed description of the structure and use of GACs is contained in *USMARC Code List for Geographic Areas*.

---

## RELATED USMARC DOCUMENT/FIELD

052 Geographic Classification Code

*USMARC Code List for Geographic Areas*

## Time Period Code Table

<u>B.C.</u>		<u>A.D.</u>	
<u>Code</u>	<u>Time period</u>	<u>Code</u>	<u>Time period</u>
a0	before 2999	<i>(Add 0, 1, 2 ... 9 to each alphabetic character for the decade)</i>	
b0	2999-2900		
b1	2899-2800		
b2	2799-2700		
b3	2699-2600		
b4	2599-2500		
b5	2499-2400		
b6	2399-2300		
b7	2299-2200		
b8	2199-2100		
b9	2099-2000	e _	1-99
c0	1999-1900	f _	100-199
c1	1899-1800	g _	200-299
c2	1799-1700	h _	300-399
c3	1699-1600	i _	400-499
c4	1599-1500	j _	500-599
c5	1499-1400	k _	600-699
c6	1399-1300	l _	700-799
c7	1299-1200	m _	800-899
c8	1199-1100	n _	900-999
c9	1099-1000	o _	1000-1099
d0	999-900	p _	1100-1199
d1	899-800	q _	1200-1299
d2	799-700	r _	1300-1399
d3	699-600	s _	1400-1499
d4	599-500	t _	1500-1599
d5	499-400	u _	1600-1699
d6	399-300	v _	1700-1799
d7	299-200	w _	1800-1899
d8	199-100	x _	1900-1999
d9	99-1	y _	2000-2099

For B.C. dates, the lowercase alphabetic character represents the millenium and the digit represents the century. If the century is not known, a hyphen (-) is used instead of a number. A single century or a period within a century is coded by repeating the appropriate two-character code to create the required four-characters.

151 00#aRome+xHistory+yRepublic, 265-30 B.C.  
045 00#ad7d9

150 00#aBronze age  
045 00#aa-c-  
[3000-1000 B.C.]

151 00#aEgypt+xHistory+yEighteenth dynasty, ca. 1570-1320 B.C.  
045 00#ac4c6

**A.D. dates**, the lowercase alphabetic character represents the century. A digit (0-9) added to represent the decade. If the decade is not known, a hyphen (-) is used instead of a number. A single year or a period within a decade is coded by repeating appropriate two-character code to create the required four characters.

51 \$0\$aGreat Britain\$xHistory\$yMedieval period, 1066-1485  
45 \$b\$ao6s8

50 \$0\$aBhopal Union Carbide Plant Disaster, Bhopal, India, 1984  
45 \$b\$ax8x8

50 \$0\$aCivilization, Modern\$y20th century  
45 \$b\$ax-x-

50 \$0\$aCatalan literature\$y16th-18th centuries  
45 \$b\$at-v-

51 \$0\$aGreece\$xHistory\$y146 B.C.-323 A.D.  
45 \$b\$ad8h2

50 \$0\$aTwenty-first century\$xForecasts  
45 \$b\$ay-y-

#### **Formatted 9999 B.C. through A.D. time period**

Subfield **\$b** contains a specific time period formatted as *yyyymmddhh*, preceded by a code for the era (*c* for B.C.; *d* for A.D.). The era and year are required components; month, day, and hour are optional.

—era expressed as a code: *c* (B.C.), *d* (A.D.)

—year expressed as a four-digit number (0000 to 9999) right justified; unused positions contain zeros

—month expressed as a two-digit number (01 to 12) right justified; unused positions contain zeros

—day expressed as a two-digit number (01 to 31) right justified; unused positions contain zeros

—hour expressed as a two-digit number using the 24-hour clock (00 to 23) right justified; unused positions contain zeros.

First indicator position values 0-2 specify whether the time period in subfield **\$b** is a single date, multiple dates, or a range of dates. Each 9999 B.C. through A.D. time period associated with the heading is contained in a separate subfield **\$b**.

151 \$0\$aFrance\$xHistory\$yRevolution, 1791-1797  
045 2\$b\$bd1791\$b1797

151 \$0\$aJapan\$xHistory\$yFebruary Incident, 1936 (February 26)  
045 0\$b\$bd19360226

151 \$0\$aChina\$xHistory\$y221 B.C.-960 A.D.  
45 2\$b\$ad7n6\$bc0221\$b0960

**‡c - Formatted pre-9999 B.C. time period**

Subfield ‡c contains a formatted time period consisting of as many numeric characters as are needed to represent the number of years B.C. First indicator position values 0-2 specify whether the time period in subfield ‡c is a single date, multiple dates, or a range of dates. Each pre-9999 B.C. time period associated with the heading is contained in a separate subfield ‡c.

150 ‡0‡aGeology, Stratigraphic‡yMesozoic  
045 2‡‡c225000000‡c70000000

---

**INPUT CONVENTIONS****Punctuation**

No marks of punctuation are used in field 045.

**Order of subfields**

Subfield ‡c (Formatted pre-9999 B.C. time period) is input preceding subfield ‡b (Formatted 9999 B.C. through A.D. time period).

---

**| CONTENT DESIGNATOR HISTORY**

*First Indicator - Type of time period in subfield ‡b or ‡c*  
‡b 9999 B.C. through A.D. time period, formatted  
‡c Pre-9999 B.C. time period, formatted

Subfield ‡b was redefined for 9999 B.C. through A.D. time periods when subfield ‡c was defined for pre-9999 B.C. time periods in 1987. Prior to that time, all dates/times were contained in subfield ‡b.









## Time Period Code Table

<u>B.C.</u>		<u>A.D.</u>	
<u>Code</u>	<u>Time period</u>	<u>Code</u>	<u>Time period</u>
a0	before 2999	<i>(Add 0, 1, 2 ... 9 to each alphabetic character for the decade)</i>	
b0	2999-2900		
b1	2899-2800		
b2	2799-2700		
b3	2699-2600	e —	1-99
b4	2599-2500	f —	100-199
b5	2499-2400	g —	200-299
b6	2399-2300	h —	300-399
b7	2299-2200	i —	400-499
b8	2199-2100	j —	500-599
b9	2099-2000	k —	600-699
c0	1999-1900	l —	700-799
c1	1899-1800	m —	800-899
c2	1799-1700	n —	900-999
c3	1699-1600	o —	1000-1999
c4	1599-1500	p —	1100-1199
c5	1499-1400	q —	1200-1299
c6	1399-1300	r —	1300-1399
c7	1299-1200	s —	1400-1499
c8	1199-1100	t —	1500-1599
c9	1099-1000	u —	1600-1699
d0	999-900	v —	1700-1799
d1	899-800	w —	1800-1899
d2	799-700	x —	1900-1999
d3	699-600	y —	2000-2099
d4	599-500		
d5	499-400		
d6	399-300		
d7	299-200		
d8	199-100		
d9	99-1		

For B.C. dates, the lowercase alphabetic character represents the millenium and the digit represents the century. If the century is not known, a hyphen (-) is used instead of a number. A single century or a period within a century is coded by repeating the appropriate two-character code to create the required four-characters.

151 00#aRome#xHistory#yRepublic, 265-30 B.C.

045 00#ad7d9

150 00#aBronze age

045 00#aa-c-

[3000-1000 B.C.]

151 00#aEgypt#xHistory#yEighteenth dynasty, ca. 1570-1320 B.C.

045 00#ac4c6



## Time Period Code Table

<u>B.C.</u>		<u>A.D.</u>	
<u>Code</u>	<u>Time period</u>	<u>Code</u>	<u>Time period</u>
a0	before 2999	<i>(Add 0, 1, 2 ... 9 to each alphabetic character for the decade)</i>	
b0	2999-2900		
b1	2899-2800		
b2	2799-2700		
b3	2699-2600	e —	1-99
b4	2599-2500	f —	100-199
b5	2499-2400	g —	200-299
b6	2399-2300	h —	300-399
b7	2299-2200	i —	400-499
b8	2199-2100	j —	500-599
b9	2099-2000	k —	600-699
c0	1999-1900	l —	700-799
c1	1899-1800	m —	800-899
c2	1799-1700	n —	900-999
c3	1699-1600	o —	1000-1999
c4	1599-1500	p —	1100-1199
c5	1499-1400	q —	1200-1299
c6	1399-1300	r —	1300-1399
c7	1299-1200	s —	1400-1499
c8	1199-1100	t —	1500-1599
c9	1099-1000	u —	1600-1699
d0	999-900	v —	1700-1799
d1	899-800	w —	1800-1899
d2	799-700	x —	1900-1999
d3	699-600	y —	2000-2099
d4	599-500		
d5	499-400		
d6	399-300		
d7	299-200		
d8	199-100		
d9	99-1		

For B.C. dates, the lowercase alphabetic character represents the millenium and the digit represents the century. If the century is not known, a hyphen (-) is used instead of a number. A single century or a period within a century is coded by repeating the appropriate two-character code to create the required four-characters.

151 #0#aRome#xHistory#yRepublic, 265-30 B.C.

045 ##ad7d9

150 #0#aBronze age

045 ##aa-c-

[3000-1000 B.C.]

151 #0#aEgypt#xHistory#yEighteenth dynasty, ca. 1570-1320 B.C.

045 ##ac4c6

For A.D. dates, the lowercase alphabetic character represents the century. A digit (0-9) is added to represent the decade. If the decade is not known, a hyphen (-) is used instead of a number. A single year or a period within a decade is coded by repeating the appropriate two-character code to create the required four characters.

151 00#aGreat Britain#xHistory#yMedieval period, 1066-1485  
045 00#a06s8

150 00#aBhopal Union Carbide Plant Disaster, Bhopal, India, 1984  
045 00#a8x8

150 00#aCivilization, Modern#y20th century  
045 00#aX-x-

150 00#aCatalan literature#y16th-18th centuries  
045 00#aT-v-

151 00#aGreece#xHistory#y146 B.C.-323 A.D.  
045 00#a8h2

150 00#aTwenty-first century#xForecasts  
045 00#aY-y-

#### | #b - Formatted 9999 B.C. through A.D. time period

| Subfield #b contains a specific time period formatted as *yyyymmddhh*, preceded by a  
| code for the era (*c* for B.C.; *d* for A.D.). The era and year are required components;  
| the month, day, and hour are optional.

- era expressed as a code: *c* (B.C.), *d* (A.D.)
- year expressed as a four-digit number (0000 to 9999) right justified; unused positions contain zeros
- month expressed as a two-digit number (01 to 12) right justified; unused positions contain zeros
- day expressed as a two-digit number (01 to 31) right justified; unused positions contain zeros
- hour expressed as a two-digit number using the 24-hour clock (00 to 23) right justified; unused positions contain zeros.

First indicator position values 0-2 specify whether the time period in subfield #b is a single date, multiple dates, or a range of dates. Each 9999 B.C. through A.D. time period associated with the heading is contained in a separate subfield #b.

151 00#aFrance#xHistory#yRevolution, 1791-1797  
045 20#bd1791#bd1797

151 00#aJapan#xHistory#yFebruary Incident, 1936 (February 26)  
045 00#b19360226

151 00#aChina#xHistory#y221 B.C.-960 A.D.  
045 20#ad7n6#bc0221#bd0960

| #c - Formatted pre-9999 B.C. time period

Subfield #c contains a formatted time period consisting of as many numeric characters as are needed to represent the number of years B.C. First indicator position values 0-2 specify whether the time period in subfield #c is a single date, multiple dates, or a range of dates. Each pre-9999 B.C. time period associated with the heading is contained in a separate subfield #c.

150 00#aGeology, Stratigraphic#yMesozoic

045 2#0#c225000000#c70000000

---

| INPUT CONVENTIONS

| Punctuation

| No marks of punctuation are used in field 045.

| Order of subfields

| Subfield #c (Formatted pre-9999 B.C. time period) is input preceding subfield #b (Formatted 9999 B.C. through A.D. time period).





**050 Library of Congress Call Number (R)**

O

Indicators

<u>First</u>	Undefined	
Ø	Undefined	M
		M
<u>Second</u>	Source of call number	
0	Assigned by LC	M
4	Assigned by agency other than LC	A
		A

Subfield Codes

#a	Classification number (NR)		M
#b	Item number (NR)		A
#d	Volumes/dates to which call number applies (NR)	(current)	O
		(earlier)	M
#5	Institution to which field applies (R)		A

**FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE**

This field contains a call number for a series when all or part of the series is classified as a collected set or with the main series (646, Series Classification Practice, subfield #a, code c or m). Classification numbers contained in this field are assigned from *Library of Congress Classification* or *LC Classification—Additions and Changes*. The second indicator values distinguish between content actually assigned by the Library of Congress and content assigned by an organization other than LC. The organization is identified in subfield #5.

Field 050 may also contain the volumes/dates to which the call number applies. Varying call numbers for different ranges of volumes/dates within a series or different copies or sets are contained in separate 050 fields.

**GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS****■ INDICATORS****First Indicator - Undefined**

The first indicator position is undefined and contains a blank (Ø).

**Second Indicator - Source of call number**

---

The second indicator position contains a value that indicates whether the source of the call number is the Library of Congress or another organization.

**0 - Assigned by LC**

Value 0 indicates that the source of the call number is the Library of Congress.

050 00#aQC851#b.L455 subser.

**4 - Assigned by agency other than LC**

Value 4 indicates that the source of the call number is an organization other than the Library of Congress. The National Union Catalog (NUC) symbol of the organization is contained in subfield #5.

050 04#aQH198.H3#bC66#5DI

**■ SUBFIELD CODES****#a - Classification number**

Subfield #a contains the classification number portion of the series call number. (The classification number is an authoritative-agency data element. The Library of Congress maintains the *Library of Congress Classification* and the *LC Classification—Additions and Changes* and is the authoritative agency.)

130 00#aMémoires et documents publiés par la Société d'histoire de la Suisse  
romande

050 00#aDQ3#b.S6

**#b - Item number**

Subfield #b contains the item number portion of the series call number. Organizations that use the *Cutter-Sanborn Three-Figure Author Table* may conform to Library of Congress item number practice by applying *Subject Cataloging Manual: Shelflisting* procedures. Subfield #b may also contain a copy (or set) number.

111 20#aInternational Kimberlite Conference#n(3rd :#d1982 :#cClermont-Ferrand,  
France).#tKimberlites

050 00#aQE462.K5#bI59

**#d - Volumes/dates to which call number applies**

Subfield #d contains a statement identifying those items in the series to which the call number applies. Subfield #d is used only when the call number does not apply to all items of the series. This subfield may also contain a copy (or set) number.

130 00#aBulletin (United States. Bureau of Plant Industry)

050 00#aQK1#b.U45#dno. 1-200, copy 1; no. 201-

**#5 - Institution to which field applies**

Subfield #5 contains the NUC symbol of the organization that assigned the series call number when the second indicator position contains value 4. (The NUC symbol is an authoritative-agency data element. The Library of Congress maintains the *Symbols of American Libraries* and is the authoritative agency.)

050 #4#aHD1694.S6#bC55#5DI

---

**INPUT CONVENTIONS****Capitalization**

Alphabetic characters in the classification number portion of the field are always uppercase. No space separates the alphabetic character(s) from the class number.

**Order**

The 050 field for a *current* call number precedes the 050 field for an *earlier* call number.

**Display Constant**

Applies to: *[associated with the content of subfield #d]*

An instruction phrase such as *Applies to:* is not carried in the USMARC record. It may be system generated as a display constant associated with the content of subfield #d.

*Content designated field:*

050 #0#aQK1#b.U45#dno. 1-200

*Display example:*

QK1.U45 Applies to: no. 1-200

---

**RELATED USMARC DOCUMENT/FIELD**

646 Series Classification Practice

**OTHER RELATED DOCUMENTS**

*Cutter-Sanborn Three-Figure Author Table*  
*Library of Congress Classification*  
*LC Classification—Additions and Changes*  
*Subject Cataloging Manual: Shelflisting*  
*Symbols of American Libraries*

---

## 050

### | CONTENT DESIGNATOR HISTORY

#### *Second Indicator - Source of Call Number*

The second indicator position was defined in 1987. Prior to that change, 050 was an agency-assigned field and contained only call numbers assigned by the Library of Congress. LC records created before the definition of this indicator may contain a blank (Ø) meaning *undefined* in this position.

**052 Geographic Classification Code (R)**

O

Indicators

<u>First</u>	Undefined	M
Ø	Undefined	M
<u>Second</u>	Undefined	M
Ø	Undefined	M

Subfield Codes

#a	Geographic classification area code (NR)	M
#b	Geographic classification subarea code (R)	A

**FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE**

This field contains a geographic classification code for a geographic area associated with the 151 field in an established heading record or a subdivision record for a geographic name (008/09, Kind of record, code a, d, or f). Each main geographic area code and any related subarea codes associated with the heading are contained in a separate 052 field.

The geographic classification code is derived from the *Library of Congress Classification—Class G* and expanded Cutter number lists for place names. Cutter numbers for place names in the United States are also published in *Geographic Cutters*. This code can provide more precise geographic access than the codes contained in field 043 (Geographic Area Code). (Field 052 is an authoritative-agency field. The Library of Congress maintains the *Library of Congress Classification*, *Geographic Cutters*, and the Cutter number lists and is the authoritative agency.)

**GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS****■ INDICATORS**

Both indicator positions are undefined; each contains a blank (Ø).

## 052

### ■ SUBFIELD CODES

#### ‡a - Geographic classification area code

Subfield ‡a contains a four to six character numeric code for the main geographic area associated with the heading. The code consists of the appropriate classification number from the range G3190-G9980 derived from the *Library of Congress Classification—Class G* by dropping the letter G.

151 00‡aMexico‡xEconomic conditions‡y1970-

052 00‡a4411

#### ‡b - Geographic classification subarea code

Subfield ‡b contains an alphanumeric Cutter number for a geographic subarea of the geographic area coded in subfield ‡a. Each geographic subarea code is contained in a separate subfield ‡b. Subfield ‡b may be repeated for subareas falling within a main area with the same code.

151 00‡aRichmond (Tex.)‡xMaps

052 00‡a4034‡bR4‡bR8

---

### INPUT CONVENTIONS

#### Punctuation

The period that usually precedes a Cutter number is omitted in subfield ‡b. Field 052 does not end with a period.

#### Capitalization

Alphabetic characters are recorded in uppercase.

---

### RELATED USMARC DOCUMENT/FIELD

043 Geographic Area Code

### OTHER RELATED DOCUMENTS

*Library of Congress Classification—Class G*  
*LC Classification—Additions and Changes*  
*Geographic Cutters*

**053 LC Classification Number (R)**

O

Indicators

First Undefined  
 Ø Undefined

M  
 M

Second Undefined  
 Ø Undefined

M  
 M

Subfield Codes

‡a Classification number—single number or beginning  
 number of a range (NR)  
 ‡b Classification number—end number of a range (NR)  
 ‡c Explanatory term (NR)

M  
 A  
 A

**FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE**

This field contains a single LC classification number or a range of numbers associated with a 1XX heading in an established heading record or a subdivision record (008/09, Kind of record, code a, d, or f). The classification number(s) may be qualified by a descriptive term when the heading is represented in more than one place in the LC classification schedules. Each classification number or range of numbers associated with a heading is contained in a separate 053 field. (Field 053 is an authoritative-agency field. The Library of Congress maintains the *Library of Congress Classification* schedules and the *LC Classification—Additions and Changes* and is the authoritative agency.)

**GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS****■ INDICATORS**

Both indicator positions are undefined; each

**■ SUBFIELD CODES**

‡a - Classification number—single number or b  
 Subfield ‡a contains a single class number  
 bers.

100 10‡bGrimes, Martha  
 053 ØØ‡aPS3557.R48998

130 Ø0‡aBook of Mormon‡xAntiquities  
 053 ØØ‡aBX8627



## 053

### **#b - Classification number—end number of a range**

Subfield #b contains the end number of a range of class numbers when the beginning number of the range is contained in subfield #a.

151 00#aUnited States#xHistory#yRevolution, 1775-1783  
053 00#aE201#bE298

### **#c - Explanatory term**

Subfield #c contains a term or phrase that specifies the topic of the class number. Normally, such a phrase is used to differentiate between two or more class numbers associated with the heading.

150 00#aString quartet  
053 00#aML1160#cHistory  
053 00#aMT728#cInstruction and study  
  
110 20#aCatholic Church#xHistory#xSources  
053 00#aBX850#bBX875#cDocuments

---

## INPUT CONVENTIONS

### Structure

All alphabetic characters in the LC classification number are uppercase. No space separates the alphabetic character(s) from the class number.

### Display Constants

-            *[hyphen associated with the content of subfield #a and #b]*  
( ... )     *[parentheses associated with the content of subfield #c]*

The hyphen between the two class numbers in a range of numbers in subfields #a and #b and the parentheses that may enclose the explanatory term in subfield #c are not carried in the USMARC record. They may be system generated as display constants associated with the content of subfields #b and #c, respectively.

*Content designated field:*

053 00#aBX850#bBX875#cDocuments

*Display example:*

BX850-BX875 (Documents)

---

## OTHER RELATED DOCUMENTS

*Library of Congress Classification*

*LC Classification—Additions and Changes*

**Display Constants**

- *[hyphen associated with the content of subfield #b]*
- ( ... )    *[parentheses associated with the content of subfield #c]*

The hyphen between the two class numbers in a range of numbers in subfields #a and #b and the parentheses that may enclose the explanatory term in subfield #c are not carried in the USMARC record. They may be system generated as display constants associated with the content of subfields #b and #c, respectively.

*Content designated field:*

053    ~~053~~ #aBX850#bBX875#cDocuments

*Display example:*

BX850-BX875 (Documents)

---

**OTHER RELATED DOCUMENTS**

*Library of Congress Classification*

*LC Classification—Additions and Changes*



**060 National Library of Medicine Call Number (R)**

O

Indicators

<u>First</u>	Undefined	M
Ø	Undefined	M
<u>Second</u>	Source of call number	M
0	Assigned by NLM	A
4	Assigned by agency other than NLM	A

Subfield Codes

‡a	Classification number (NR)	M
‡b	Item number (NR)	A
‡d	Volumes/dates to which call number applies (NR)	(current) O
		(earlier) M
‡5	Institution to which field applies (R)	A

**FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE**

This field contains a call number for a series when all or part of the series is classified as a collected set or with the main series (646, Series Classification Practice, subfield ‡a, code c or m). Classification numbers contained in this field are assigned from the *National Library of Medicine Classification* schedules QS-QZ and W for preclinical sciences and medicine that are maintained by the National Library of Medicine (NLM) or from the *Library of Congress Classification* schedules for peripheral and related topics that are used by NLM. The second indicator values distinguish between content actually assigned by the National Library of Medicine and content assigned by an organization other than NLM. The organization is identified in subfield ‡5.

Field 060 may also contain the volumes/dates to which the call number applies. Varying call numbers for different ranges of volumes/dates within a series or different copies or sets are contained in separate 060 fields.

**GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS****■ INDICATORS****First Indicator - Undefined**

The first indicator position is undefined and contains a blank (Ø).

## 060

**Second Indicator - Source of call number.**

The second indicator position contains a value that indicates whether the source of the call number is the National Library of Medicine or another organization.

**0 - Assigned by NLM**

Value 0 indicates that the source of the call number is the National Library of Medicine.

060 00#aW1#bJO706M

4 - Assigned by agency other than NLM

Value 4 indicates that the source of the call number is an organization other than the National Library of Medicine. The National Union Catalog (NUC) symbol of the organization is carried in subfield #5.

060 04#W1#bRI218#5CLU-M

## ■ SUBFIELD CODES

**#a - Classification number**

Subfield #a contains the classification number portion of the series call number. (The classification number is an authoritative-agency data element. The National Library of Medicine maintains the *National Library of Medicine Classification* and is the authoritative agency. NLM is also the authoritative agency for determining which *Library of Congress Classification* schedules and numbers are used to augment the NLM scheme.)

130 ~~Journal of~~ Journal of infection

060 B0#aW1#bJO706M

**#b - Item number**

Subfield #b contains the item number portion of the NLM call number for a series. As a general rule, NLM uses the *Cutter-Sanborn Three-Figure Author Table* to create item numbers. The special scheme of numbering used in classes W1 and W3 is described in the *National Library of Medicine Classification*. This subfield may also contain a copy (or set) number.

130 Trauma management

060 b0#aWO 700#bT776

‡d - Volumes/dates to which call number applies

Subfield #d contains a statement identifying those items in the series to which the call number applies. Subfield #d is used only when the call number does not apply to all items of the series. This subfield may also contain a copy (or set) number.

**#5 - Institution to which field applies**

Subfield #5 contains the NUC symbol of the organization that assigned the NLM call number when the second indicator position contains value 4. (The NUC symbol is an authoritative-agency data element. The Library of Congress maintains the *Symbols of American Libraries* and is the authoritative agency.)

060 04aW1bRI2185CLU-M

---

**INPUT CONVENTIONS****Order**

The 060 field for a *current* call number precedes the 060 field for an *earlier* call number.

---

**RELATED USMARC DOCUMENT/FIELD**

646 Series Classification Practice

**OTHER RELATED DOCUMENTS**

*Cutter-Sanborn Three-Figure Author Table*  
*Library of Congress Classification*  
*LC Classification—Additions and Changes*  
*National Library of Medicine Classification*  
*Symbols of American Libraries*



| **066 Character Sets Present** (NR)

A

Indicators

First    Undefined  
 ␣        Undefined

M

M

Second   Undefined  
 ␣        Undefined

M

M

Subfield Codes

␣a Non-ASCII G0 default character set designation (NR)  
 ␣b Non-ANSEL G1 default character set designation (NR)  
 ␣c Alternate graphic character set identification (R)

O

O

M

**FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE**

This field contains the Intermediate and Final characters of the standard escape sequence(s) that specify the character sets present in a record when a character set other than ASCII, ANSEL, or the USMARC Greek, USMARC subscript, or USMARC superscript is present. The presence of field 066 ␣c must be present when a record contains nonroman data in field 880 (Alternate Graphic Representation). A detailed description of the standard escape sequences used in USMARC records is provided in *USMARC Specifications for Record Structure, Character Sets, Tapes*.

**GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS**■ **INDICATORS**

Both indicator positions are undefined; each contains a blank (␣).

■ **SUBFIELD CODES**

## ␣a - Non-ASCII G0 default character set designation

Subfield ␣a contains the Intermediate and Final characters of the standard escape sequence that designates and invokes the default G0 character set when it is not ASCII, USMARC Greek, USMARC subscript, or USMARC superscript. Subfield ␣a is unlikely to be used in records created in the United States.

066 ␣␣␣a(N

*[The ASCII graphics (N identify the G0 one-byte-per-character Basic Cyrillic character set.)*

066 ␣␣␣a\$1

*[The ASCII graphics \$1 identify the G0 multiple-bytes-per-character Chinese, Japanese, Korean character set.]*



‡b - Non-ANSEL G1 default character set designation

Subfield ‡b contains the Intermediate and Final characters of the standard escape sequence that designates and invokes the default G1 character set when it is not ANSEL. *Subfield ‡b is unlikely to be used in records created in the United States.*

066 ‡b‡b\$)1

*[The ASCII graphics \$)1 identify the G1 multiple-bytes-per-character Chinese, Japanese, Korean character set.]*

066 ‡b‡b)Q

*[The ASCII graphics )Q identify the G1 one-byte-per-character Extended Cyrillic character set.]*

‡c - Alternate graphic character set identification

Subfield ‡c contains the Intermediate and Final characters of each escape sequence that designates an alternate graphic character set used in a record. The escape sequence for each alternate character set present is contained in a separate subfield ‡c.

066 ‡b‡c)S

*[The ASCII graphics )S identify the G1 one-byte-per-character Greek character set.]*

---

RELATED USMARC DOCUMENT/FIELD

880 Alternate Graphic Representation

*USMARC Specifications for Record Structure, Character Sets, Tapes*

**070 National Agricultural Library Call Number (R)**

O

Indicators

<u>First</u>	Undefined	M
Ø	Undefined	M
<u>Second</u>	Undefined	M
Ø	Undefined	M

Subfield Codes

#a	Classification number (NR)	M
#b	Item number (NR)	A
#d	Volumes/dates to which call number applies (NR)	(current) O
		(earlier) M

---

**FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE**

This field contains a National Agricultural Library (NAL) call number for a series when all or part of the series is classified as a collected set or with the main series (646, Series Classification Practice, subfield #a, code c or m). Field 070 is an agency-assigned field. It is used only for call numbers assigned by the National Agricultural Library. This field may also contain NAL accession numbers for visual materials.

Field 070 may also contain the volumes/dates to which the call number applies. Varying call numbers for different ranges of volumes/dates within a series are contained in separate 070 fields.

---

**GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS****■ INDICATORS**

Both indicator positions are undefined; each

## 070

### ■ SUBFIELD CODES

#### ‡a - Classification number

Subfield ‡a contains the classification number portion of the NAL call number for a series. Prior to 1965, NAL used a USDA library classification scheme. In 1965, NAL began using the *Library of Congress Classification* for all newly-cataloged materials. Both schemes are still used because some series title changes have been kept with the USDA scheme call number.

070 ‡a99.8‡bF76322

070 ‡aQH545.A1T6

#### ‡b - Item number

Subfield ‡b contains the NAL item number.

070 ‡a99.8‡bF76322

#### ‡d - Volumes/dates to which call number applies

Subfield ‡d contains a statement identifying those items in the series to which the call number applies. Subfield ‡d is used only when the call number does not apply to all items of the series. This subfield may also contain a copy (or set) number.

---

### INPUT CONVENTIONS

#### Order

The 070 field for a *current* call number precedes the 070 field for an *earlier* call number.

---

### RELATED USMARC DOCUMENT/FIELD

646 Series Classification Practice

### OTHER RELATED DOCUMENTS

*USDA Library Classification Schedules*  
*Library of Congress Classification*  
*LC Classification—Additions and Changes*

**072 Subject Category Code (R)**

O

Indicators

<u>First</u>	Undefined	<i>M</i>
Ø	Undefined	<i>M</i>
<u>Second</u>	Code source	<i>M</i>
Ø	No information provided	<i>A</i>
0	National Agricultural Library subject category code list	<i>A</i>
7	Code source specified in subfield #2	<i>A</i>

Subfield Codes

#a	Subject category code (NR)	<i>M</i>
#x	Subject category code subdivision (R)	<i>A</i>
#2	Code source (NR)	<i>A</i>

**FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE**

This field contains a code for the subject category that is associated with the 1XX field in an established heading record (008/09, Kind of record, code a or f) or a node label record (008/09, code e). The code may indicate the relative position of the heading in a particular hierarchical arrangement in the thesaurus specified by the value in the second indicator position. Field 072 is repeated for each location of the heading in a specific thesaurus and for multiple subject category codes when a heading is common to different thesauri.

**GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS****■ INDICATORS****First Indicator - Undefined**

The first indicator position is undefined and contains a blank (Ø).

**Second Indicator - Code source**

The second indicator position contains a value that specifies the source of the subject category code.

**Ø - No information provided**

A blank (Ø) indicates that the source of the subject category code is the same as the subject heading system/thesaurus identified in 008/11 (Subject heading system).

008/11 c [code indicating MeSH]  
 150 Ø0#aAtrophy  
 072 ØØ#aC23#x.739#x.102

**0 - National Agricultural Library subject category code list**

Value 0 indicates that the source of the subject category code is the list used by NAL. Value 0 is an authoritative-agency data element. Its use requires that the source of the subject category code is the *AGRIS: Subject Categories*.

008/11 d [code indicating NAL]  
 150 Ø0#aContamination and toxicology  
 072 Ø0#aQ200

**7 - Code source specified in subfield #2**

Value 7 indicates that the code source is specified in subfield #2.

008/11 a [code indicating LCSH]  
 150 Ø0#aIrrigation  
 072 Ø7#aE5#x.510#2MeSH

**■ SUBFIELD CODES****#a - Subject category code**

Subfield #a contains a subject category code that indicates the broad subject category to which the heading belongs in a hierarchically-arranged thesaurus.

008/11 c [code indicating MeSH]  
 150 Ø0#aLibraries, Hospital  
 072 ØØ#aL1#x.346#x.596#x.463  
 072 ØØ#aN2#x.278#x.354#x.560  
 072 ØØ#aN4#x.452#x.442#x.468

008/09 e [node label record]  
 008/11 c [code indicating MeSH]  
 150 Ø0#aNeoplastic Process  
 072 ØØ#aC4#x.805

**#x - Subject category code subdivision**

Subfield #x contains a code that indicates the level of specificity within the broader category represented by the code in subfield #a.

008/11 c [code indicating MeSH]  
 151 Ø0#aLibya  
 072 ØØ#aZ1#x.58#x.266#x.513  
 072 ØØ#aZ1#x.630#x.600

## #2 - Code source

Subfield #2 contains a USMARC code that identifies the thesaurus used to assign the subject category code when the second indicator position of this field contains value 7. (Subfield #2 is an authoritative-agency data element. The Library of Congress maintains the *USMARC Code List for Relators, Sources, Description Conventions* and is the authoritative agency.)

008/11 a [code indicating LCSH]

150      00#aIrrigation

072      07#aE5#x.510#2MeSH

---

## RELATED USMARC DOCUMENT/FIELD

008/11 Subject heading system/thesaurus code

*USMARC Code List for Relators, Sources, Description Conventions*



**073 Subdivision Usage (NR)**

O

Indicators

<u>First</u>	Undefined	M
Ø	Undefined	M
<u>Second</u>	Undefined	M
Ø	Undefined	M

Subfield Code

‡a	Subdivision usage (R)	M
‡z	Source (NR)	M

---

**FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE**

This field contains a code specifying the topical or geographic subject terms with which the subdivision may be used in a particular thesaurus. The code may correspond to all or a portion of the subject category code contained in field 072 (Subject Category Code) in an established heading record for a topical term or geographic name (008/09, Kind of record, code a or f). Field 073 is appropriate only in subdivision records (008/09, code d or f).

---

**GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS****■ INDICATORS**

Both indicator positions are undefined; each contains a blank (Ø).

**■ SUBFIELD CODES****‡a - Subdivision usage**

Subfield ‡a contains a category designator that specifies the category of terms with which the subdivision may be used.

**‡z - Source**

Subfield ‡z contains a USMARC code that identifies the thesaurus used to assign the category designator code. (Subfield ‡z is an authoritative-agency data element. The Library of Congress maintains the *USMARC Code List for Relators, Sources, Description Conventions* and is the authoritative agency.)



## 073

In the following example the subdivision *adverse effects* may be used with six categories of terms in the MeSH system, i.e., those coded in field 073 as D (Chemicals and drugs), E (Procedures and techniques), F4 (Behavioral tests, therapies, services), etc. The subject heading *Antigens* is in category D (specifically, D24). The category designator *D* in field 073#a of the subdivision record and the subject category code *D24* in field 072#a of the established heading record provide a link between the subject subdivision *adverse effects* and the subject heading *Antigens*.

008/09 d [subdivision record]  
008/11 c [code indicating MeSH]  
150    ØØ#aadverse effects  
073    ØØ#aD#aE#aF4#aG3#aH#aJ#zMeSH

008/09 a [established heading record]  
008/11 c [code indicating MeSH]  
150    Ø0#aAntigens  
072    ØØ#aD24#x.611#x.216

---

### RELATED USMARC DOCUMENT/FIELD

072 Subject Category Code  
*USMARC Code List for Relators, Sources, Description Conventions*

**082 Dewey Decimal Call Number (R)**

O

Indicators

<u>First</u>	Type of edition	
0	Full edition	M
1	Abridged edition	A

<u>Second</u>	Source of call number	
0	Assigned by LC	M
4	Assigned by agency other than LC	A

Subfield Codes

#a	Classification number (NR)	M
#b	Item number (NR)	A
#d	Volumes/dates to which call number applies (NR)	(current) O
		(earlier) M
#2	Edition number (NR)	M
#5	Institution to which field applies (R)	A

**FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE**

This field contains a call number for a series when all or part of the series is classified as a collected set or with the main series (646, Series Classification Practice, subfield #a, code c or m). Classification numbers in this field are assigned from *Dewey Decimal Classification*, the *Abridged Dewey Decimal Classification*, or *DC&: Dewey Decimal Classification Additions, Notes and Decisions*. The second indicator values distinguish between content actually assigned by the Library of Congress and content assigned by an organization other than LC. The organization is identified in subfield #5.

Field 082 also contains the specific edition of the type of Dewey schedule (identified by the first indicator value) from which the classification number was assigned and may contain the volumes/dates to which the call number applies. Varying call numbers for different ranges of volumes/dates within a series or different copies or sets are contained in separate 082 fields.

**GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS****■ INDICATORS****First Indicator - Type of edition**

The first indicator position contains a value that specifies whether the classification number is from the full or the abridged edition of the classification schedules. The actual edition number is contained in subfield #2.

## 082

### 0 - Full edition

Value 0 indicates that the class number is from the full edition.

082 00#a780.92#220

### 1 - Abridged edition

Value 1 indicates that the class number is from the abridged edition.

082 10#a552#212

### Second Indicator - Source of call number

---

The second indicator position contains a value that indicates whether the source of the call number is the Library of Congress or another organization.

### 0 - Assigned by LC

Value 0 indicates that the source of the call number is the Library of Congress.

082 00#a345.73#220

### 4 - Assigned by agency other than LC

Value 4 indicates that the source of the call number is an organization other than the Library of Congress. The National Union Catalog (NUC) symbol of the organization is contained in subfield #5.

## ■ SUBFIELD CODES

### | #a - Classification number

Subfield #a contains the classification number portion of the series call number. (The classification number is an authoritative-agency data element. The Library of Congress maintains the *Dewey Decimal Classification*, the *Abridged Dewey Decimal Classification*, and the *DC&* and is the authoritative agency.)

130 #0Mémoires et documents publiés par la Société d'histoire de la Suisse  
082 00#a949.4#220

### | #b - Item number

Subfield #b contains the item number portion of the series call number. This subfield may also contain a copy (or set) number.

### #d - Volumes/dates to which call number applies

Subfield #d contains a statement identifying those items in the series to which the call number applies. Subfield #d is used only when the call number does not apply to all items of the series. This subfield may also contain a copy (or set) number.

### #2 - Edition number

Subfield #2 contains the number of the edition of the Dewey classification schedules from which the class number was assigned. If numbers are assigned from more than one edition, each number or range of numbers is contained in a separate 082 field.

111 20#aInternational Kimberlite Conference#n(3rd :#d1982 :#cClermont-Ferrand,  
France).#tKimberlites  
082 00#a552.3#220  
082 10#a552#212

#### #5 - Institution to which field applies

Subfield #5 contains the NUC symbol of the organization that assigned the call number when the second indicator position contains value 4. (The NUC symbol is an authoritative-agency data element. The Library of Congress maintains the *Symbols of American Libraries* and is the authoritative agency.)

## INPUT CONVENTIONS

### Order

The 082 field for a *current* call number precedes the 082 field for an *earlier* call number.

### Display Constant

*dc* [abbreviation associated with the content of subfield #2]

The abbreviation *dc* that may be displayed before the edition number in subfield #2 is not carried in the USMARC record. It may be system generated as a display constant.

*Content designated field:*

082 10#a552#212

*Display example:*

552 dc12

## RELATED USMARC DOCUMENT/FIELD

646 Series Classification Practice

## OTHER RELATED DOCUMENTS

*Dewey Decimal Classification and Relative Index*

*Abridged Dewey Decimal Classification and Relative Index*

*DC&: Dewey Decimal Classification Additions, Notes and Decisions*

*Symbols of American Libraries*



**083 Dewey Decimal Classification Number (R)**

O

Indicators

<u>First</u>	Type of edition	
0	Full edition	M
1	Abridged edition	A
		A
<u>Second</u>	Undefined	
Ø	Undefined	M
		M

Subfield Codes

#a	Classification number—single number or beginning number of a range (NR)	M
#b	Classification number—end number of a range (NR)	A
#c	Explanatory term (NR)	A
#2	Edition number (NR)	M

**FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE**

This field contains a single Dewey decimal classification number or a range of numbers associated with a 1XX heading in an established heading record or a subdivision record (008/09, Kind of record code, code a, d, or f). The classification number(s) may be qualified by a descriptive term when the heading is represented in more than one place in the Dewey classification schedules. Each classification number or range of numbers associated with a heading is contained in a separate 083 field. (Field 083 is an authoritative-agency field. The Library of Congress maintains the *Dewey Decimal Classification*, the *Abridged Dewey Decimal Classification*, and the *DC&* and is the authoritative agency.)

**GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS****■ INDICATORS****First Indicator - Type of edition**

The first indicator position contains a value that specifies whether the class number is from the full or the abridged edition of the classification schedules. The actual edition number is contained in subfield #2.

**0 - Full edition**

Value 0 indicates that the class number is from the full edition.

150 000aAviation medicine  
083 000a616.980213+220

**1 - Abridged edition**

Value 1 indicates that the class number is from the abridged edition.

150 000aAviation medicine  
083 100a616.9+212

**Second Indicator - Undefined**

The second indicator position is undefined and contains a blank ( ).

**■ SUBFIELD CODES****+a - Classification number—single number or beginning number of a range**

Subfield +a contains a single class number or the first number in a range of class numbers.

130 000aBible.+1English.+sAuthorized  
083 000a220.5203+220

151 000aChina  
083 000a951+212

**+b - Classification number—end number of a range**

Subfield +b contains the end number of a range of class numbers when the beginning number of the range is contained in subfield +a.

150 000aWorld War, 1939-1945+xPersonal narratives  
083 000a940.5481+b940.5482+220

**+c - Explanatory term**

Subfield +c contains a term or phrase that specifies the topic of the class number. Normally, such a phrase is used to differentiate between two or more class numbers associated with the heading.

150 000aGold  
083 000a669.22+cInterdisciplinary+220  
083 000a549.23+cMineralogy+220  
083 000a553.41+cEconomic geology+220

**#2 - Edition number**

Subfield #2 contains the number of the edition of the classification schedules from which the class number was assigned. If numbers are assigned from more than one edition, each number or range of numbers is contained in a separate 083 field.

100 10#aSartre, Jean Paul#d1905-  
 083 0#b#a848.91409#cInterdisciplinary#220  
 083 0#b#a194#220

**INPUT CONVENTIONS****Display Constants**

-           *[hyphen associated with the content of subfields #a and #b]*  
 ( ... )    *[parentheses associated with the content of subfield #c]*  
 dc         *[abbreviation associated with the content of subfield #2]*

The hyphen between the two class numbers in a range of numbers in subfields #a and #b, the parentheses that may enclose an explanatory term in subfield #c, and the abbreviation *dc* before the edition number in subfield #2 are not carried in the USMARC record. They may be system generated as display constants associated with the content of subfields #b, #c, and #2, respectively.

*Content designated field:*

083 0#b#a346.3#b346.9#cSpecific jurisdictions and areas#220

*Display example:*

346.3-346.9 (Specific jurisdictions and areas) dc20

**OTHER RELATED DOCUMENTS**

*Dewey Decimal Classification and Relative Index*

*Abridged Dewey Decimal Classification and Relative Index*

*DC&: Dewey Decimal Classification Additions, Notes and Decisions*





**09X Local Call Numbers**0

---

**FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE**

The 090-099 fields are reserved for a locally assigned call number for a series when all or part of the series is classified as a collected set or with the main series (646, Series Classification Practice, subfield #a, code c or m). For interchange purposes, the practices used in fields 09X should be known by parties involved in the interchange.

---

**RELATED USMARC DOCUMENT/FIELD**

646 Series Classification Practice

---

**| CONTENT DESIGNATOR HISTORY**

090 *Local Call Number* [OBSOLETE]

Field 090 was made obsolete in all USMARC specifications when the entire 09X block of numbers was reserved for local use and definition in 1982. Prior to that change, the field was defined for series call numbers. Both indicators were undefined. The subfield codes were: #a (Classification number), #b (Item number), and #d (Volumes/dates to which call number applies).







## X00 Personal Names—General Information

*National Level  
Requirement*

100	Heading—Personal Name (NR)	
400	See From Tracing—Personal Name (R)	A
500	See Also From Tracing—Personal Name (R)	A

Indicators

<u>First</u>	Type of personal name entry element	
0	Forename	M
1	Single surname	A
2	Multiple surname	A
3	Family name	A
		A
<u>Second</u>	Nonfiling characters	
0-9	Number of nonfiling characters present	M
		M

Subfield Codes

<i>Name portion</i>		
#a	Personal name (NR)	
#q	Fuller form of name (NR)	M
#b	Numeration (NR)	A
#c	Titles and other words associated with a name (R)	A
#d	Dates associated with a name (NR)	A
#e	Relator term (R)	A
		O
<i>Name and title portions</i>		
#k	Form subheading (R)	A
<i>Title portion</i>		
#t	Title of a work (NR)	
#f	Date of a work (NR)	A
#g	Miscellaneous information (NR)	A
#h	Medium (NR)	A
#l	Language of a work (NR)	O
#m	Medium of performance for music (R)	A
#n	Number of part/section of a work (R)	A
#o	Arranged statement for music (NR)	A
#p	Name of part/section of a work (R)	A
#r	Key for music (NR)	A
#s	Version (NR)	A
		A
<i>Subject subdivision portion</i>		
#x	General subdivision (R)	
#y	Chronological subdivision (R)	A
#z	Geographic subdivision (R)	A
		A

## X00

### *Tracing and linking subfields*

#i	Reference instruction phrase [400/500] (NR)	A
#w	Control subfield [400/500] (NR)	A
#5	Institution to which field applies [400/500] (R)	A
#6	Linkage (NR)	A

---

## GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

The content designators identify the subelements occurring in personal name headings constructed according to the generally accepted cataloging and thesaurus-building rules (e.g., *Anglo-American Cataloguing Rules* (AACR 2), *Library of Congress Subject Headings* (LCSH)) that are identified in 008/10 (Descriptive cataloging rules) or 008/11 (Subject heading system/thesaurus). Personal names used in phrase subject headings (e.g., John, the Baptist, Saint, in the Koran) are contained in the X50 fields.

### ■ INDICATORS

#### First Indicator - Type of personal name entry element

---

The first indicator position contains a value that identifies the form of the entry element of the heading. The values distinguish among forenames, single surnames, multiple surnames, and family names used as the entry element.

##### 0 - Forename

Value 0 indicates that the heading begins with a forename or is a name consisting of words, phrases, initials, separate letters, or numerals that are formatted in direct order.

100 00#aRadulfus,#cNiger,#db. ca. 1140.#tChronica

400 00#aAuthor of The diary of a physician,#d1807-1877  
[Name is formatted in direct order.]

400 20#aDiary of a physician, Author of The,#d1807-1877  
[Name is formatted in inverted order; entry element consists of multiple words; first indicator value is 2.]

100 00#aC. E. L. J.

400 10#aJ., C. E. L.  
[Name is formatted in inverted order in field 400; first indicator value is 1.]

400 00#aX,#cDr.

400 00#aDr. X

##### 1 - Single surname

Value 1 indicates that the heading is a name with a single surname formatted in inverted order (*single surname, forename*) or a name without forename(s) which is known to be a single surname. If there is uncertainty that a name without forename(s) is a surname, the first indicator position contains value 0.

A surname beginning with a separately written prefix which is an article (e.g., La), a preposition (e.g., De), or a combination (e.g., Del) is classified as a single or multiple surname depending on the number of words following the prefix. When a single word follows the prefix (e.g., Van Rosenburgh), the name is considered a single surname (value 1). When more than one word follows the prefix (e.g., Van Alderwerelt van Rosenburgh), the name is considered a multiple surname (value 2).

- 100 10#aOlearius, Adam,#d1603-1671
- 400 10#aOlearius,#cHerr#q(Adam),#d1603-1671  
[Name without forename known to be a surname.]
- 400 10#aO., A.#q(Adam Olearius),#d1603-1671
  
- 100 10#aDe Angelini, Anna  
[Single word follows prefix.]
- 400 10#aAngelini, Anna de
  
- 100 10#aMcCoy, Hal
- 100 10#aO'Brien, Gerard
- 400 10#aS., Anton D.
  
- 100 20#aEl-Eisawy, Bashir M.  
[Prefix is an integral part of an anglicized Arabic name; first indicator value is 2.]
- 400 10#aEisawy, Bashir M.

## 2 - Multiple surname

Value 2 indicates that the heading is a name with a multiple surname formatted in inverted order (*multiple surname, forename*) or a name without forename(s) which is known to be a multiple surname.

- 100 20#aAllsworth-Jones, P.
- 400 10#aJones, P. Allsworth-
  
- 100 20#aAlderwerelt van Rosenburgh, C. R. W. K. van#q(Cornelis Rugier Willem Karel),#d1863-1936
- 400 20#aVan Alderwerelt van Rosenburgh, C. R. W. K.#q(Cornelis Rugier Willem Karel),#d1863-1936  
[Multiple words follow separately-written prefix.]
  
- 100 20#aAleixandre Ferrandis, V.
- 100 20#aHinojosa-S., Rolando R.
- 100 20#aDigby of Geashill, Frances Noel Digby,#cBaroness,#d1660 or 61-1684
- 100 20#aMateu y Llopis, Felipe,#d1901-
- 100 20#aSan Román, Teresa
- 100 20#aEl Saffar, Ruth S.,#d1941-  
[Anglicized Arabic surname is treated as a multiple surname.]
- 100 20#aMc Intosh, Paula
- 100 20#aBen Omar, Saidali Bacar,#d1931-



## X00

### 3 - Family name

Value 3 indicates that the heading is the name of a family, clan, dynasty, house, or other such group. The name may be constructed in direct or inverted order.

100 30#aArey family

500 30#aIhrig family

100 30#aGuelf, House of

400 30#aHouse of Guelf

100 30#aAttalid dynasty,+d282-133 B.C.

100 30#aVon der Au family

### Second Indicator - Nonfiling characters

---

The second indicator position contains a value that specifies the number of character positions associated with an initial definite or indefinite article (e.g., Le, An) at the beginning of a heading that are disregarded in sorting and filing processes.

#### 0 - No nonfiling characters present

Value 0 indicates that no initial article character positions are disregarded.

Diacritical marks or special characters at the beginning of a heading that does not begin with an initial article are not counted as nonfiling characters.

100 10#a'Ubaydī, Maḥmūd 'Abd Allāh Ibrāhīm

An initial definite or indefinite article may also simply be deleted in the formulation of the personal name heading. If the initial article is retained but is not to be disregarded in sorting and filing processes, value 0 is used.

100 00#aAmerican,+cpseud.

*[Full pseudonym is An American; indefinite article omitted.]*

100 10#aLe Saout, Françoise

*[Definite article is an integral part of the name.]*

#### 1-9 - Number of nonfiling characters present

A non-zero value indicates that the heading begins with a definite or indefinite article that is disregarded in sorting and filing processes. A diacritical mark or special character associated with the initial article (but preceding the first actual filing character) is included in the count of nonfiling characters.

*Because the omission of initial articles to be disregarded in sorting and filing processes is common practice, values 1-9 are unlikely to be used in an X00 field.*

## ■ SUBFIELD CODES

## ‡a - Personal name

Subfield ‡a contains a personal name. The name may be a surname and/or forename; letters, initials, abbreviations, phrases, or numbers used in place of a name; or a family name. A parenthetical qualifying term associated with the name is contained in subfield ‡c.

- |        100 00‡aThomas‡c(Anglo-Norman poet)  
          100 10‡aStoodt, Dieter  
          100 20‡aGranet Velez, Gail  
          100 30‡aPlantagenet, House of  
          100 30‡aPřemyslid dynasty  
  
          100 10‡aKarkhanis, Sharad-  
          400 00‡aSharad Karkhanis  
  
          100 00‡aW. P.,‡cEsq.  
          400 10‡aP., W.,‡cEsq.  
          400 00‡aWP,‡cEsq.

## ‡b - Numeration

Subfield ‡b contains a roman numeral or a roman numeral and a subsequent part of a forename. It is used only in a forename heading (first indicator, value 0).

- 100 00‡aGustaf‡bV,‡cKing of Sweden,‡d1858-1950  
 400 00‡aOscar Gustaf‡bV Adolf,‡cKing of Sweden,‡d1858-1950  
  
 100 10‡aAppleton, Victor,‡cII, pseud.  
       *[Roman numeral used with a surname heading (first indicator, values 1 or 2) is contained in subfield ‡c.]*

## ‡c - Titles and other words associated with a name

Subfield ‡c contains titles and other words associated with a name. These include qualifying information such as

- titles designating rank, office, or nobility, e.g., Sir
- terms of address, e.g., Mrs.
- initials of an academic degree or denoting membership in an organization, e.g., F.L.A.
- a roman numeral used with a surname
- other words or phrases associated with the name, e.g., clockmaker, Saint.

If the heading is a surname followed directly by a prefix without intervening forenames or forename initials, the prefix is contained in subfield ‡c to prevent its being treated as a forename in searching and sorting processes.

- 400 10‡aSanctis,‡cDe

## X00

Multiple adjacent titles or words associated with a name are contained in a single subfield **#c**. Subfield **#c** is repeated only when words associated with a name are separated by subelements contained in other subfields.

- 100 10#aSalisbury, James Cecil,#cEarl of,#dd. 1683
- 100 00#aNorodom Sihanouk Varman,#cKing of Cambodia,#d1922-
- 100 00#aCuthbert,#cFather, O.S.F.C.,#d1866-1939
- 100 00#aThomas,#cAquinas, Saint,#d1225?-1274
- 100 00#aThomas#c(Anglo-Norman poet).#tRoman de Tristan.#lEnglish
- 100 10#aSaur, Karl-Otto,#cJr.
- 100 10#aAppleton, Victor,#cII, pseud.
- 100 00#aMargaret,#cQueen, consort of James IV, King of Scotland,  
#d1489-1541
- 100 00#aAugustine,#cSaint, Bishop of Hippo
- 100 00#aBlack Foot,#cChief,#dd. 1877#c(Spirit)  
[Subfield **#c** is repeated due to intervening subelements.]
- 400 00#aHausbuch,#cMeister des,#d15th cent.
- 400 00#aAmsterdam Cabinet,#cMaster of the,#d15th cent.
- 400 10#aWeiss, Judah Areyh,#cha-Levi
- 400 10#aL'Epée,#cabbé de#q(Charles-Michel),#d1712-1789
- 400 30#aKonbaung dynasty,#cBurma,#d1752-1885
- 100 10#aMassena, André,#cprince d'Essling,#d1758-1817
- 400 10#aE.,#cP. d',#d1758-1817

### **#d** - Dates associated with a name

Subfield **#d** contains dates of birth, death, or flourishing or any other date used with a name. A qualifier used with the date (e.g., b., d., ca., fl., ?, cent.) is also contained in subfield **#d**.

- 100 10#aLobb, Theophilus,#d1678-1763
- 100 10#aLuckombe, Philip,#dd. 1803
- 100 10#aSalant, Yosef Tsevi,#d1884 or 5-1981
- 100 10#aSirillo, Solomon ben Joseph,#dd. ca. 1558
- 100 10#aMalalas, John,#dca. 491-ca. 578
- 100 10#aMarcellus, Marcus Claudius,#dd. 45 B.C.
- 100 10#aLevi, James,#dfl. 1706-1739
- 100 20#aJoannes Aegidius, Zamorensis,#d1240 or 41-ca. 1316
- 400 10#aCompton, Winny,#db. 1787

### **#e**

**#e** contains a designation of function that describes the relationship between a work.

- 10#aBrown, John,#d1800-1859,#edefendant

**#f - Date of a work**

Subfield #f contains a date of publication used with a title of a work in a name/title heading.

100 10#aDorst, Tankred.#tWorks.#f1985

100 10#aSperoni, Sperone,#d1500-1588.#tSelections.#f1982

400 10#aSperoni, Sperone,#d1500-1588.#tCanace, e scritti in sua difesa.#f1982

A date added parenthetically to a title to distinguish between identical titles entered under the same name is not separately subfield coded.

**#g - Miscellaneous information**

Subfield #g contains a data element that is not more appropriately contained in another defined subfield. This subfield code is defined for consistency among the 1XX fields. *Subfield #g is unlikely to be used in an X00 field.*

**#h - Medium**

Subfield #h contains a media qualifier used with a title of a work in a name/title heading.

100 10#aWagner, Richard,#d1813-1883.#tOuvertüre.#hSound recording

**#i - Reference instruction phrase**

Subfield #i contains a reference instruction phrase other than those that may be system generated from the field tag or from the codes defined for subfield #w (Control subfield). Subfield #i is appropriate only in the 400 See From Tracing and 500 See Also From Tracing fields. Guidelines for applying subfield #i are provided in the *Tracing and Reference Fields—General Information* section.

**#k - Form subheading**

Subfield #k contains a form subheading. A form subheading may occur in either the name or the title portion of an X00 field. Form subheadings used with personal names include *Selections* and *in fiction, drama, poetry, etc.*

100 10#aHusák, Gustáv.#tSpeeches.#kSelections

100 10#aAkhmatova, Anna Andreevna,#d1889-1966.#tSelections.#lEnglish & Russian.#f1985

*[The word Selections is used as a uniform title and is contained in subfield #t.]*

100 20#aGarcía Lorca, Federico,#d1898-1936,#kin fiction, drama, poetry, etc.

100 00#aDemetrius,#cof Phaleron,#db. 350 B.C.#tDe elocutione.#lRussian

400 00#wnaa#aDemetrius,#cof Phaleron.#kSpurious and doubtful works.

#tDe elocutione.#lRussian

*[Pre-AACR 2 use of form subheading.]*

## X00

### #l - Language of a work

Subfield #l contains the name of a language(s) (or a term representing the language, e.g., Polyglot) used with a title of a work in a name/title heading.

- 100 10#aCéline, Louis-Ferdinand,#d1894-1961.#tEntretiens avec le  
professeur Y.#lEnglish & French
- 100 10#aJacobs, Una.#tSonnen-Uhr.#lEnglish
- 100 10#aBrezina, Otokar,#d1868-1929.#tPoems.#lPolyglot

### #m - Medium of performance for music

Subfield #m contains term(s) designating the medium of performance used in a uniform title for a work in a name/title heading.

- 100 10#aBeethoven, Ludwig van,#d1770-1827.#tSonatas,#mpiano.#kSelections
- 400 10#aSpeer, Daniel,#d1636-1707.#tSonatas,#mcoronets (2), trombones  
(3),#rC major

Subfield #m is not used for medium of performance information in a title page title used in a name/title heading.

- 100 10#aRies, Ferdinand,#d1784-1838.#tOctets,#mpiano, winds, strings,  
#nop. 128,#rAb major
- 400 10#aRies, Ferdinand,#d1784-1838.#tOctet, opus 128, for piano, clarinet,  
horn, bassoon, violin, viola, cello & bass

Multiple adjacent elements in a single medium of performance statement are contained in a single subfield #m. Subfield #m is repeated only when medium of performance statements are separated by subelements contained in other subfields.

- 100 10#aArne, Thomas Augustine,#d1710-1778.#tConcertos,#mkeyboard  
instrument, orchestra.#nNo. 3.#pCon spirito,#mkeyboard instrument  
*[Subfield #m is repeated due to intervening subelements.]*

*Additional examples are under the descriptions of subfields #o and #r.*

### #n - Number of part/section of a work

Subfield #n contains a *number* designation for a part/section of a work used with a title in a name/title heading. "Numbering" is defined as an indication of sequencing in any form, e.g., Part 1, Supplement A, Book two. In music titles, the serial, opus, or thematic index number is contained in subfield #n.

- 100 10#aCrisp, Thomas,#d17th cent.#tBabel's-builders unmask't.#nPart 1
- 100 00#aOvid,#d43 B.C.-17 or 18.#tArs amatoria.#nLiber 1.#lEnglish
- 400 10#aTolkien, J. R. R.#q(John Roland Reuel),#d1892-1973.#tLord of  
the rings.#n2.#pTwo towers  
*[Part/section is both numbered and named.]*
- 400 10#wnaa#aHindemith, Paul,#d1895-1963.#tSonata,#mpiano, 4 hands.#n(1938)  
*[Parenthetical date in music titles is a part/section of a work.]*

400 10#aHindemith, Paul,#d1895-1963.#tVierhaendige Sonata fuer zwei Klaviere, 1938  
*[Date is not a part/section number.]*

Multiple alternative numberings for a part/section (usually separated by commas) are contained in a single subfield #n.

400 20#aMendelssohn-Bartholdy, Felix,#d1809-1847.#tQuartets,#mstrings,  
 #nno. 7, op. 81

A numbering that indicates a subpart to the first noted part/section (usually separated by a period) is contained in a separate subfield #n.

400 10#aHindemith, Paul,#d1895-1963.#tPieces,#mstring orchestra,  
 #nop. 44.#nNo. 4

#### #o - Arranged statement for music

Subfield #o contains the abbreviation *arr.* used in a uniform title for a work in a name/title heading.

100 10#aTelemann, Georg Philipp,#d1681-1767.#tSonatas,#mflutes (2),  
 #nop. 5; #oarr.

100 10#aSchubert, Franz,#d1797-1828.#tSongs.#kSelections;#oarr.

Subfield #o is **not** used for an arranged statement in a title page title used in a name/title heading.

100 10#aMozart, Wolfgang Amadeus,#d1756-1791.#tZauberflöte.#kSelections;  
 #oarr.

400 10#aMozart, Wolfgang Amadeus,#d1756-1791.#tDuetts, for 2 violins or flutes, arr. from the celebrated opera Zauberflöte

#### #p - Name of part/section of a work

Subfield #p contains a *name* designation of a part or section of a work used with a title in a name/title heading.

100 10#aHindemith, Paul,#d1895-1963.#tNobilissima visione.#pMeditation

100 10#aPraetorius, Hieronymus,#d1560-1629.#tOpus musicum.#pCantiones  
 sacrae.#pO vos omnes

100 10#aDebussy, Claude,#d1862-1918.#tPreludes,#mpiano,#nbook 1.#pCollines  
 d'Anacapri

*[Part/section is both numbered and named.]*

#### #q - Fuller form of name

Subfield #q contains a more complete form of the name that is in subfield #a.

100 10#aKalashnikov, S. D.#q(Sergeï Dmitrievich)

100 10#aCurien, P.-L.#q(Pierre-Louis)

100 00#aClaudius#q(Claudius Ceccon)

## X00

### ‡r - Key for music

Subfield ‡r contains the statement of key used in a uniform title for a work in a name/title heading.

100 10‡aBeethoven, Ludwig van,‡d1770-1827.‡tSonatas,‡mpiano,‡nno. 13,  
op. 27, no. 1,‡rE major

Subfield ‡r is not used for a music key in a title page title used in a name/title heading.

100 10‡aMozart Wolfgang Amadeus,‡d1756-1791.‡tSonatas,‡mbassoon,  
violoncello,‡nK.292,‡rBb major;‡oarr.  
400 10‡aMozart Wolfgang Amadeus,‡d1756-1791.‡tSonata in B flat major,  
K 292, for bassoon and piano

### ‡s - Version

Subfield ‡s contains version, edition, etc., information used with a title of a work in a name/title heading.

100 10‡aKelly, Michael,‡d1762-1826.‡tPizarro.‡sVocal score  
100 00‡aRaimon,‡d1940-‡tSongs.‡sTexts.‡lSpanish & Catalan.‡kSelections

### ‡t - Title of a work

Subfield ‡t contains a uniform title, a title page title of a work, or a series title used in a name/title heading.

100 10‡aLaw, Felicia.‡tWays we move  
400 10‡aLaw, Felicia.‡tGetting around!

100 10‡aIhara, Saikaku,‡d1642-1693.‡tSelections.‡f1978  
100 00‡aSatprem,‡d1923-‡tGenèse du surhomme.‡lEnglish  
100 00‡aLeonardo,‡cda Vinci,‡d1452-1519.‡tLast Supper  
100 10‡aLewis, C. S.‡q(Clive Staples),‡d1898-1963.‡tChronicles of Narnia (Collier)

*Additional examples are under the descriptions of subfields ‡e, ‡f, ‡k, ‡l, ‡m, ‡n, ‡o, ‡p, and ‡r.*

### ‡w - Control subfield

Subfield ‡w contains up to four character positions (designated as ‡w/0, ‡w/1, etc.) that indicate whether special instructions apply to the display of the heading and whether a tracing is restricted to the reference structure of a particular type of authority. Subfield ‡w is appropriate only in the 400 See From Tracing and 500 See Also From Tracing fields. Guidelines for applying the codes defined for subfield ‡w are provided in the *Tracing and Reference Fields—General Information* section.

**‡x - General subdivision**

Subfield ‡x contains a subject subdivision that is not more appropriately contained in subfields ‡y (Chronological subdivision) or ‡z (Geographic subdivision). Subfield ‡x is appropriate in the X00 fields only when a general topical or form subject subdivision is added to a name or name/title heading to form an extended subject heading.

- 100 30‡aClark family‡xFiction
- 100 10‡=aBrunhoff, Jean de,‡d1899-1937‡xCharacters‡xBabar
- 100 00‡aGautama Buddha‡xBiography‡xEarly works to 1800
- 100 10‡aTatlin, Vladimir Evgrafovich,‡d1885-1953.‡tMonument to the Third International‡xCopying
- 100 00‡aNapoleon‡bI,‡cEmperor of the French,‡d1769-1821‡xAssassination attempt, 1800 (December 24)
- 400 10‡aWashington, George,‡d1732-1799‡xExpedition, 1753-1754

**‡y - Chronological subdivision**

Subfield ‡y contains a subject subdivision that represents a period of time. Subfield ‡y is appropriate in the X00 fields only when a chronological subject subdivision is added to a name or name/title heading to form an extended subject heading.

- 100 10‡aShakespeare, William,‡d1564-1616‡xCriticism and interpretation  
‡xHistory‡y18th century

**‡z - Geographic subdivision**

Subfield ‡z contains a geographic subject subdivision. Subfield ‡z is appropriate in the X00 fields only when a geographic subject subdivision is added to a name or name/title heading to form an extended subject heading.

- 100 00‡aFrederick‡bII,‡cHoly Roman Emperor,‡d1194-1250‡xHomes and  
haunts‡zItaly
- 100 10‡aFord, Gerald R.,‡d1913- ‡xMuseums‡zMichigan

**‡5 - Institution to which field applies [400/500]**

Subfield ‡5 contains the National Union Catalog (NUC) symbol of the organization that has added a tracing field to a national authority file record. Subfield ‡5 is appropriate only in the 400 See From Tracing and 500 See Also From Tracing fields. Guidelines for applying subfield ‡5 are provided in the *Tracings and Reference Fields—General Information* section.

**‡6 - Linkage**

Subfield ‡6 contains data that link pairs of fields that are alternate graphic representations of each other. It contains the tag number of an associated field and an occurrence number. A complete description of subfield ‡6 and guidelines for applying it are provided in the *880 Alternate Graphic Representation* section.

---



# X00

## INPUT CONVENTIONS

### Ambiguous Headings

The following categories are personal names:

Biblical characters, Named  
Clans  
Counts, Houses of  
Dukes, Houses of  
Dynasties

Earls, Houses of  
Families  
Houses (Families)  
Royal houses (Families)

### Punctuation

The punctuation of the subelements of a heading is generally dictated by descriptive cataloging or subject heading system/thesaurus rules. These input conventions clarify USMARC punctuation practices.

An X00 field does not end with a mark of punctuation unless the field ends with an abbreviation, an initial/letter, or data that ends with a mark of punctuation.

100 10# #aTomlinson, Bridget  
100 10# #aMarmontel, Jean François, #d1723-1799  
100 10# #aZweig, Martin. #tWinning on Wall Street  
100 10# #aCarter, Elliott, #d1908- #tSuites, #msaxophones (4)  
100 10# #aPond, Samuel W. #q(Samuel William)  
100 10# #aDance, Daryl Cumber. #tShuckin' and jivin'  
400 10# #aDorst, Tankred. #tWerkausgabe. #f1985  
  
100 10# #aSloane, Eugene A.  
100 10# #aTrotignon, Yves. #tXXe siecle en U.R.S.S.  
100 10# #aSienkiewicz, Henryk, #d1846-1916. # =tQuo vadis?  
100 10# #aKelterborn, Rudolf, #d1931-  
400 10# #aAshkenazi, Shemu el Yafeh, #d16th cent.  
400 10# #aSawoskin, A. N.

The name portion of a name/title field ends with a mark of punctuation. The mark of punctuation is placed inside a closing quotation mark.

100 10# #aRavel, Maurice, #d1875-1937. #tSelections; #oarr.  
100 00# #aThomas #c(Anglo-Norman poet). #tRoman de Tristan. #lEnglish  
100 00# #aChristo, #d1935- #tSurrounded islands  
100 00# #aDemetrius, #cof Phaleron, #db. 350 B.C. #tDe elocutione. #lRussian

A name or title portion followed by a subject subdivision does not end with a mark of punctuation unless the name or title portion ends with an abbreviation, initial/letter, or open date.

- 100 10#aSavoskin, Anatolij Nikolajev#xBibliography
- 100 10#aTatlin, Vladimir Evgrafovich,#d1885-1953.#tMonument to the Third International#xCopying
- 100 10#aCapote, Truman,#d1924- #xCriticism and interpretation
- 100 00#aAlexander,#cthe Great,#d356-323 B.C.#xArt

### Spacing

Adjacent personal name initials/letters or an abbreviation for a name and an adjacent name or initial/letter are separated by one space.

- 100 10#aHyatt, J. B.
- 100 10#aFlam, F. A.#q(Floyd A.)
- 100 10#aEnschedé, Ch. J.
- 100 10#aGorbanev, R. V.#q(Rostislav Vasil'evich)

No spaces are used in initials/letters that do not represent personal names. An abbreviation consisting of more than a single letter is separated from preceding and succeeding words or initials/letters by one space.

- 100 00#aCuthbert,#cFather, O.S.F.C.,#d1866-1939
- 100 10#aSharma, S. K.,#cM.P.H.
- 100 10#aBrown, G. B.,#cPh. D.

A name portion containing an open-ended date ends with one space when it is followed by a subject subdivision portion or a subfield #k.

- 100 10#aFord, Gerald R.,#d1913- #xAssassination attempt, 1975 (September 5)
- 100 10#aaBorges, Jorge Luis,#d1899- ,#kin fiction, drama, poetry, etc.
- 100 10#aDalí, Salvador,#d1904-#tHomage to Goya

### Display Constants

– [*dash associated with the content of subfield #x, #y, or #z*]

The dash (–) that precedes a subject subdivision in an extended subject heading is not carried in the machine-readable record. It may be system generated as a display constant associated with the content of subfields #x, #y, and #z.

*Content designated field:*

- 100 10#aBrunhoff, Jean de,#d1899-1937#xCharacters#xBabar

*Display example:*

Brunhoff, Jean de, 1899-1937–Characters–Babar

### RELATED USMARC DOCUMENT/FIELD

880 Alternate Graphic Representation  
Tracing and Reference Fields—General Information



## 100 Heading—Personal Name (NR)

### FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

This field contains a personal name used as a heading in either an established heading record (008/09, Kind of record, code a) or a reference record (008/09, code b or c). In an established heading record, field 100 contains the established form of a personal name. In a reference record, this field contains an unestablished form of a personal name.

Guidelines for applying the content designators defined for field 100, input conventions, and national level record requirements are given in the *X00 Personal Names—General Information* section.

### ■ EXAMPLES

100 00#aMany a K'Omalowete a Djonga,#d1950-  
 100 10#aMeyer  
 100 10#aJones, James E.,#cJr.  
 100 10#aSoares, A. J.#q(António José)  
 100 10#aSenapati, Fakir Mohan,#d1843-1918.#tSelections.#lEnglish.#f1984  
 100 10#aCasadesus, Henri Gustave,#d1870-1947.#tConcertos,#mvioloncello,  
     orchestra,#rC minor  
 100 20#aVaughan Williams, Ralph,#d1872-1958  
 100 30#aNormandy, Dukes of

---

### RELATED USMARC DOCUMENT/FIELD

X00 Personal Names—General Information



## X10 Corporate Names—General Information

*National Level  
Requirement*

110	Heading—Corporate Name (NR)	A
410	See From Tracing—Corporate Name (R)	A
510	See Also From Tracing—Corporate Name (R)	A

Indicators

<u>First</u>	Type of corporate name entry element	M
0	Inverted name	A
1	Jurisdiction name	A
2	Name in direct order	A
<u>Second</u>	Nonfiling characters	M
0-9	Number of nonfiling characters present	M

Subfield Codes

<i>Name portion</i>		
‡a	Corporate name or jurisdiction name as entry element (NR)	M
‡b	Subordinate unit (R)	A
‡c	Location of meeting (NR)	A
‡d	Date of meeting or treaty signing (R)	A
‡e	Relator term (R)	O
<i>Name and title portions</i>		
‡g	Miscellaneous information (NR)	A
‡k	Form subheading (R)	A
‡n	Number of part/section/meeting (R)	A
<i>Title portion</i>		
‡t	Title of a work (NR)	A
‡f	Date of a work (NR)	A
‡h	Medium (NR)	O
‡l	Language of a work (NR)	A
‡p	Name of part/section of a work (R)	A
‡m	Medium of performance for music (R)	A
‡o	Arranged statement for music (NR)	A
‡r	Key for music (NR)	A
‡s	Version (NR)	A
<i>Subject subdivision portion</i>		
‡x	General subdivision (R)	A
‡y	Chronological subdivision (R)	A
‡z	Geographic subdivision (R)	A

## X10

### *Tracing and linking subfields*

#i	Reference instruction phrase [410/510] (NR)	A
#w	Control subfield [410/510] (NR)	A
#5	Institution to which field applies [410/510] (R)	A
#6	Linkage (NR)	A

---

## GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

The defined content designators identify the subelements occurring in corporate name headings constructed according to the generally accepted cataloging and thesaurus-building rules (e.g., *Anglo-American Cataloguing Rules* (AACR 2), *Library of Congress Subject Headings* (LCSH)) that are identified in 008/10 (Descriptive cataloging rules) or 008/11 (Subject heading system/thesaurus). A corporate name, a form subheading, a title of a work, and/or a city section name entered under the name of a jurisdiction are X10 corporate names. A name of a jurisdiction that represents an ecclesiastical entity is an X10 corporate name. Other names of jurisdictions used alone or followed by subject subdivisions are geographic names and are contained in the X51 fields. A named meeting that is entered under a corporate name is contained in the X10 fields. A meeting entered directly under its own name is contained in the X11 fields. Corporate names used in phrase subject headings (e.g., Catholic Church in art) are contained in the X50 fields.

## ■ INDICATORS

### First Indicator - Type of corporate name entry element \_\_\_\_\_

The first indicator position contains a value that identifies the form of the entry element of the heading. The values distinguish among an inverted name, a jurisdiction name, and a corporate name in direct order used as the entry element.

#### 0 - Inverted name

Value 0 indicates that the corporate name begins with a personal name in inverted order (*surname, forename*).

410 00#aN<sup>ewman</sup> (Jean and Dorothy) Industrial Relations Library  
410 00#<sup>a</sup>L<sup>ister</sup> (D.B.) & Associates

Corporate names beginning with a personal surname alone, a personal name in direct order (not inverted), or containing a personal name other than as the entry element are identified by value 2.

110 20#<sup>a</sup>F<sup>ield</sup> & Young (Jersey City, N.J.)  
110 20#<sup>a</sup>N<sup>igel</sup> Brooks Chorale  
110 20#<sup>a</sup>J. Paul Getty Museum  
110 20#<sup>a</sup>O<sup>rchestra</sup> Gelmini

**1 - Jurisdiction name**

Value 1 indicates that the entry element is a name of a jurisdiction that is also an ecclesiastical entity or is a jurisdiction name under which a corporate name, a city section, or a title of a work is entered.

- 110 10#aPennsylvania.#bState Board of Examiners of Nursing Home Administrators
- 110 10#aJalisco (Mexico).#tLey que aprueba el plan regional urbano de Guadalajara, 1979-1983
- 410 10#aMarseille (France : Diocese : Catholic Church)
- 410 10#aCambridge (Mass.).#bEast Cambridge

Corporate names containing a name of a jurisdiction as an integral part of the name or qualified by a such a name are identified by value 2.

- 110 20#aUniversity of Illinois at Urbana-Champaign.#bExperimental Music Studios
- 110 20#aArizona Family Planning Council
- 110 20#aEast Randolph Literary Society (Vt.)

**2 - Name in direct order**

Value 2 indicates that the name is in direct order. The heading may contain a parenthetical qualifier or may be an acronym or initialism.

- 110 20#aHarvard University
- 110 20#aNational Gardening Association (U.S.)
- 110 20#aPRONAPADE (Firm)

**Second Indicator - Nonfiling characters**

The second indicator position contains a value that specifies the number of character positions associated with a definite or indefinite article (e.g., The, An) at the beginning of a heading to be disregarded in sorting and filing processes.

**0 - No nonfiling characters present**

Value 0 indicates that no initial article character positions are disregarded.

Diacritical marks or special characters at the beginning of a heading that does not begin with an initial article are not counted as nonfiling characters.

- 110 20#a"I hai" pien chi pu

An initial definite or indefinite article may also simply be deleted in the formulation of the corporate name heading. If the initial article is retained but is not to be disregarded in sorting and filing processes, value 0 is used.

- 110 20#aNur (Firm)
- 410 20#aAl Noor Publishing



## X10

### 1-9 - Number of nonfiling characters present

A non-zero value indicates that the heading begins with a definite or indefinite article that is disregarded in sorting and filing processes. A diacritical mark or special character associated with the article (but preceding the first actual filing character) is included in the count of nonfiling characters.

*Because the omission of initial articles to be disregarded in sorting and filing processes is common practice, values 1-9 are unlikely to be used in an X10 field.*

## ■ SUBFIELD CODES

### ‡a - Corporate name or jurisdiction name as entry element

Subfield ‡a contains a name of a corporate body or the first entity when subordinate units are present; a jurisdiction name under which a corporate body, city section, or a title of a work is entered; or a jurisdiction name that is also an ecclesiastical entity. A parenthetical qualifying term, jurisdiction name, or date is not separately subfield coded.

110 20‡aWinrock International Institute for Agricultural Development  
110 20‡aDiscovery (Ship)  
110 20‡aEmpire State Building (New York, N.Y.)  
110 20‡aUtkal University.‡bPopulation Research Centre  
110 10‡aNotre-Dame de Laeken (Belgium : Parish)  
110 10‡aBritish Columbia.‡bFish and Wildlife Branch  
110 10‡aSwitzerland.‡tObligationenrecht (1911)

410 10‡aNew York (N.Y.).‡bGreenwich Village

### ‡b - Subordinate unit

Subfield ‡b contains a name of a subordinate corporate unit, a name of a city section, or a name of meeting entered under a corporate or jurisdiction name.

110 10‡aTexas.‡bDept. of Human Services  
110 20‡aUniversity of Ife.‡bDept. of Demography and Social Statistics  
110 20‡aLabour Party (Great Britain).‡bConference‡n(71st :  
‡cBlackpool)

### ‡c - Location of meeting

Subfield ‡c contains a place name or a name of an institution where a meeting was held. Multiple adjacent locations are contained in a single subfield ‡c.

110 20‡aCatholic Church.‡bConcilium Plenarium Americae Latinae  
‡d(1899 :‡cRome, Italy)  
110 20‡aDemocratic Party (Tex.).‡bState Convention‡d(1857 :‡cWaco)  
110 10‡aBotswana.‡bDelegation to the Commonwealth Parliamentary  
Conference, 28th, 1982, Nassau, Bahamas  
*[Delegation to ... is not a named meeting; number, date, and place are  
not separately subfield coded.]*

**#d - Date of meeting or treaty signing**

Subfield #d contains the date a meeting was held.

110 10#aNew Hampshire.#bConstitutional Convention#d(1781)

In a name/title X10 field, subfield #d also contains the date a treaty was signed.

110 10#aAlgeria.#tTreaties, etc.#gEngland and Wales,#d1682 Apr. 20

**#e - Relator term**

Subfield #e contains a designation of function that describes the relationship between a name and a work.

110 20#aEastman Kodak Company,#edefendant-appellant

**#f - Date of a work**

Subfield #f contains a date of publication used with a title of a work in a name/title heading.

110 20#aRaleigh Publishing Company.#tWorks.#f1979

A date added parenthetically to a title to distinguish between identical titles entered under the same name is not separately subfield coded.

110 10#aFrance.#tConstitution (1946)

**#g - Miscellaneous information**

Subfield #g contains a data element that is not more appropriately contained in another defined subfield.

In a heading for a meeting entered under a corporate body, subfield #g also contains a subelement that is not more appropriately contained in subfields #c, #d, or #n.

110 10#aMinnesota.#bConstitutional Convention#d(1857 :#gRepublican)

In a name/title X10 field, subfield #g contains the name of intergovernmental agreements, etc.

110 10#aGreat Britain.#tTreaties, etc.#g|  
etc.#d1951 Mar. 6

**#h - Medium**

Subfield #h contains a media qualifier used in the title.

110 20#aPearls Before Swine (Musical gr  
#hSound recording

## X10

### #i - Reference instruction phrase

Subfield #i contains a reference instruction phrase other than those that may be system generated from the field tag or from the codes defined for subfield #w (Control subfield). Subfield #i is appropriate only in the 410 See From Tracing and 510 See Also From Tracing fields. Guidelines for applying subfield #i are provided in the *Tracing and Reference Fields—General Information* section.

### #k - Form subheading

Subfield #k contains a form subheading. A form subheading may occur in either the name or the title portion of an X10 field. Form subheadings used with corporate names include *Manuscript*; *Protocols*, etc.; and *Selections*.

110 20#aBritish Library.#kManuscript.#nArundel 384

110 10#aFrance.#tTreaties, etc.#gPoland,#d1948 Mar. 2.#kProtocols,  
etc.#d1951 Mar. 6

110 20#aLibrary of Congress.#bCongressional Research Service.#bSenior  
Specialist Division.#tSoviet diplomacy and negotiating behavior.  
#lJapanese.#kSelections

### #l - Language of a work

Subfield #l contains the name of a language(s) (or a term representing the language, e.g., Polyglot) used with a title of a work in a name/title heading.

110 20#aBanco Central de Venezuela.#tProcedimiento para la obtención de  
divisas del mercado controlado para el pago de importaciones a  
través de cartas de crédito.#lEnglish & Spanish

### #m - Medium of performance for music

Subfield #m contains term(s) designating the medium of performance used in a uniform title for a work in a name/title heading. This subfield code is defined for consistency in the 1XX fields. *Subfield #m is unlikely to be used in an X10 field.*

### #n - Number of part/section/meeting

Subfield #n contains the *number of a meeting* that is entered under a corporate name.

110 10#aUnited States.#bCongress#n(97th, 2nd session :#d1982).#bHouse

Subfield #n also contains a *number* designation for a part/section of a work used with a title in a name/title heading. "Numbering" is defined as an indication of sequencing in any form, e.g., Part 1, Supplement A, Book two.

110 10#aItaly.#tRegio decreto-legge 20 luglio 1934,#nn. 1404.#lGerman

110 20#aCorpus Christi College (University of Cambridge).#bLibrary.  
#kManuscript.#n57

110 10#aPhilippines.#tLabor Code of the Philippines.#nBook 5,#pLabor  
Relations

*[Part/section is both numbered and named.]*

Multiple alternative numberings for a part/section (usually separated by commas) are contained in a single subfield  $\#n$ .

110 20 $\#a$ Montevergine (Abbey). $\#b$ Biblioteca. $\#k$ Manuscript. $\#n$ Scaffale XXIII,  
171

$\#o$  - Arranged statement for music

Subfield  $\#o$  contains the abbreviation *arr.* used in a uniform title for a work in a name/title heading. This subfield is defined for consistency in the 1XX fields. *Subfield  $\#o$  is unlikely to be used in an X10 field.*

$\#p$  - Name of part/section of a work

Subfield  $\#p$  contains a *name* designation of a part/section of a work used with a title in a name/title heading.

110 10 $\#a$ United States. $\#t$ Constitution. $\#p$ Preamble  
110 20 $\#a$ United States Strategic Bombing Survey. $\#t$ Reports. $\#p$ Pacific war  
110 10 $\#a$ Ecuador. $\#t$ Plan Nacional de Desarrollo, 1980-1984. $\#n$ Parte 1,  
 $\#p$ Grandes objetivos nacionales. $\#l$ English  
[Part/section is both numbered and named.]

Subfield  $\#p$  also contains a name designation following the form subdivision *Manuscript*.

110 20 $\#a$ New York Public Library. $\#k$ Manuscript. $\#p$ Aulendorf Codex

$\#r$  - Key for music

Subfield  $\#r$  contains the statement of key used in a uniform title for a work in a name/title heading. This subfield is defined for consistency in the 1XX fields. *Subfield  $\#r$  is unlikely to be used in an X10 field.*

$\#s$  - Version

Subfield  $\#s$  contains version, edition, etc., information used with a title of a work in a name/title heading.

110 20 $\#a$ American Library Association. $\#b$ Bookdealer-Library Relations  
Committee. $\#t$ Acquisitions guidelines $\#s$ (2nd ed.)

$\#t$  - Title of a work

Subfield  $\#t$  contains a uniform title, a title page title of a work, or a series title used in a name/title heading.

110 10 $\#a$ Venezuela. $\#t$ Control de cambio no. 3. $\#l$ English & Spanish  
110 10 $\#a$ United States. $\#t$ Treaties, etc.

*Additional examples are under the descriptions of subfields  $\#f$ ,  $\#k$ ,  $\#l$ ,  $\#n$ , and  $\#p$ .*

## X10

### ‡w - Control subfield [410/510]

Subfield ‡w contains up to four character positions (designated as ‡w/0, ‡w/1, etc.) that indicate whether special instructions apply to the display of the heading and whether a tracing is restricted to the reference structure of a particular type of authority. Subfield ‡w is appropriate only in the 410 See From Tracing and 510 See Also From Tracing fields. Guidelines for applying the codes defined for subfield ‡w are provided in the *Tracing and Reference Fields—General Information* section.

### ‡x - General subdivision

Subfield ‡x contains a subject subdivision that is not more appropriately contained in subfields ‡y (Chronological subdivision) or ‡z (Geographic subdivision). Subfield ‡x is appropriate in the X10 fields only when a general topical or form subject subdivision is added to a name or name/title heading to form an extended subject heading.

110 20‡aLutheran Church‡xDoctrines‡xEarly works to 1800

### ‡y - Chronological subdivision

Subfield ‡y contains a subject subdivision that represents a period of time. Subfield ‡y is appropriate in the X10 fields only when a chronological subject subdivision is added to a name or name/title heading to form an extended subject heading.

110 10‡aUnited States.‡bArmy‡xRecruiting, enlistment, etc.‡yCivil War, 1861-1865, [World War, 1914-1918, etc.]

110 20‡aHarvard University‡xHistory‡yRevolution, 1775-1783

### ‡z - Geographic subdivision

Subfield ‡z contains a geographic subject subdivision. Subfield ‡z is appropriate in the X10 fields only when a geographic subject subdivision is added to a name or name/title heading to form an extended subject heading.

110 20‡aCatholic Church‡zGermany‡xHistory‡y1933-1945

### | ‡5 - Institution to which field applies [410/510]

Subfield ‡5 contains the National Union Catalog (NUC) symbol of the organization that has added a tracing field to a national authority file record. Subfield ‡5 is appropriate only in the 410 See From Tracing and 510 See Also From Tracing fields. Guidelines for applying subfield ‡5 are provided in the *Tracings and Reference Fields—General Information* section.

### | ‡6 - Linkage

Subfield ‡6 contains data that link pairs of fields that are alternate graphic representations of each other. It contains the tag number of an associated field and an occurrence number. A complete description of subfield ‡6 and guidelines for applying it are provided in the *880 Alternate Graphic Representation* section.

---

## INPUT CONVENTIONS

## Ambiguous Headings

The following categories are corporate names:

Abbeys	Ecclesiastical entities that are also names of places, e.g., Basel (Switzerland : Ecclesiastical principality)
Academics	Educational institutions
Airplanes, Named	Embassies
Almshouses	Exhibition buildings
Apartment houses	Experiment stations
Armories	
Artificial satellites	Factories
Asylums (Charitable institutions)	Ferry buildings
Auditoriums	Fire stations
	Funds
Banks	Funeral homes, mortuaries
Bars	
Boards of trade (Chambers of commerce)	Galleries
Broadcasting stations	Grain elevators
Buildings, Private	Groups of industries, Named
Buildings occupied by corporate bodies	Gymnasiums
Bus terminals	
	Halfway houses
Capitols	Homes
Castles	Hospitals
Cathedrals	Hotels
Churches (in use or in ruins)	Houses (Structures)
City halls	
City sections (entered subordinately)	Immigration stations
Civic centers	Industrial groups, Named
Club houses	
Coal ash sites	Laboratories
Coliseums	Libraries
Collections, Public or Private	Lighthouses
Colleges	
Communication satellites	Manors
Community centers	Mansions
Concert halls	Market buildings
Conglomerate corporations, Asian	Markets
Convention centers	Mills
Convents	Mine buildings
Correctional institutions	Mints
Court houses	Monasteries
Crematories	Morgues
Custom houses	Mortuaries
	Motels
Dance halls	Movie theaters
Denominations, Religious (individual)	Museums
Dispensaries	Music halls
Dwellings	

## X10

Night clubs	Sanitoriums
Nuclear power stations	School districts
Nursing homes	Schools
Observatories	Service stations
Office buildings	Shipyards
Official residences	Shopping centers
Old age homes	Spas
Opera houses	Sports arenas
Orders of Knighthood	Stadiums
Orphanages	Stock exchanges
Pagodas	Stores, Retail
Palaces	Studies (Research projects)
Plans (Programs)	Temples (in use or in ruins)
Police stations	Terminal buildings
Poorhouses	Theater buildings
Port authorities	Theater companies
Post offices	Tribes (as legal entities only)
Power plants	Undertakers
Presidential mansions	Universities
Prisons	Villas
Programs	Warehouses
Projects	Zaibatsu
Public comfort stations	
Racetracks	
Railroads	
Railway stations	
Resorts	
Restaurants	

### Punctuation

The punctuation of the subelements of a heading is generally dictated by descriptive cataloging or subject heading system/thesaurus rules. These input conventions clarify USMARC punctuation practices.

An X10 field does not end with a mark of punctuation unless the field ends with an abbreviation, an initialism, or data that ends with a mark of punctuation.

- 110 20#**a**Oklahoma Council on Juvenile Delinquency
- 110 20#**a**Martin Marietta Corporation.#**b**Environmental Center
- 110 10#**a**Bihar (India).#**t**Bihar Panchayat Raj Act, 1947
- 110 20#**a**Verlag Netto-Marktpreiskatalog "Austria"
- 110 20#**a**Western Map and Publishing Co.
- 110 10#**a**United States.#**b**Congress#**n**(87th :#**d**1961-1962)
- 410 20#**a**C.I.M.A.
- 410 20#**a**Finnish Relief Fund, inc.

The name portion of a name/subordinate body or name/title heading ends with a mark of punctuation. The mark of punctuation is placed inside a closing quotation mark.

- 110 10‡aBoston (Mass.).‡tLaws, etc.  
 410 20‡aCatholic Church.‡bPope (1978- : John Paul II).‡tOpen the doors to the Redeemer  
 X10 20‡aCasa de la Cultura Ecuatoriana "Benjamin Carrión."‡bSección de Ciencias Biológicas

A name or title portion followed by a subject subdivision does not end with a mark of punctuation unless the name or title portion ends with an abbreviation, initialism, or open date.

- 110 20‡aSociety of Friends‡zPennsylvania‡xHistory

### Spacing

No spaces are used in initialisms or personal name initials.

- 110 20‡aBrotherhood of Railway Trainmen (U.S.).‡bMinnesota State Legislative Board  
 110 20‡aMetallurgical Society of AIME.‡bNew Jersey Chapter  
 110 20‡aGuru Ram Dass P.G. School of Planning  
 110 20‡aConföderation Iranischer Studenten (N.U.)  
 410 20‡aCIMA  
 410 20‡aD.B. Lister and Associates

One space is used between preceding and succeeding initials if an abbreviation consists of more than a single letter.

An open-ended date ends with a space when it is followed by other data.

- 110 20‡aScientific Society of San Antonio (1904- )

### Display Constants

- [dash associated with the content of subfield ‡x, ‡y, or ‡z]

The dash (–) that precedes a subject subdivision in an extended subject heading is not carried in the USMARC record. It may be system generated as a display constant associated with the content of subfield ‡x, ‡y, or ‡z.

*Content designated field:*

- 110 20‡aLutheran Church‡xDoctrines‡xEarly works to 1800

*Display example:*

Lutheran Church–Doctrines–Early works to 1800

## RELATED USMARC DOCUMENT/FIELD

Tracing and Reference Fields—General Information





## 110 Heading—Corporate Name (NR)

### FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

This field contains a corporate name used as a heading in either an established heading record (008/09, Kind of record, code a) or a reference record (008/09, code b or c). In an established heading record, field 110 contains the established form of a corporate name. In a reference record, this field contains an unestablished form of a corporate name.

Guidelines for applying the content designators defined for field 110, input conventions, and national level record requirements are given in the *X10 Corporate Names—General Information* section.

### ■ EXAMPLES

- 110 10#aConstantinople (Ecumenical patriarchate)
- 110 10#aVenezuela.#bFuerza Aérea Venezolana
- 110 20#aAssociation for Childhood Education International.#bSummer Seminar  
#d(1980 :#cTaipei, Taiwan)
- 110 10#aArgentina.#tLey no. 20,771
- 110 10#aUnited States.#tTruth in Lending Act (1980)
- 110 10#aEngland and Wales.#tTreaties, etc.#gSavoy (Duchy),#d1669 Sept. 19
- 110 10#aMexico.#tTreaties, etc.#gUnited States,#d1944 Feb. 3.#kProtocols,  
etc.,#d1944 Nov. 14
- 110 20#aReal Academia de la Historia (Spain).#kManuscript.#nH
- 110 20#aAlcazar (Madrid, Spain)
- 110 20#aEverett Literary Association (Brooklyn, New York, N.Y.)
- 110 20#aYale University.#bDept. of Manuscripts and Archives
- 110 20#aTouring club italiano.#bServizio cartografico.#tCarta stradale  
d'Europa
- 110 20#aCatholic Church#xHistory#yModern period, 1500-

---

### RELATED USMARC DOCUMENT/FIELD

X10 Corporate Names—General Information



## X11 Meeting Names—General Information

*National Level  
Requirement*

111	Heading—Meeting Name (NR)	A
411	See From Tracing—Meeting Name (R)	A
511	See Also From Tracing—Meeting Name (R)	A

Indicators

<u>First</u>	Type of meeting name entry element	M
0	Inverted name	A
1	Jurisdiction name	A
2	Name in direct order	A
<u>Second</u>	Nonfiling characters	M
0-9	Number of nonfiling characters present	M

Subfield Codes

<i>Name portion</i>		
‡a	Meeting name or jurisdiction name as entry element (NR)	M
‡q	Name of meeting following jurisdiction name entry element (NR)	A
‡d	Date of meeting (NR)	A
‡c	Location of meeting (NR)	A
‡e	Subordinate unit (R)	A
‡g	Miscellaneous information (NR)	A
<i>Name and title portions</i>		
‡n	Number of part/section/meeting (R)	A
<i>Title portion</i>		
‡t	Title of a work (NR)	A
‡f	Date of a work (NR)	A
‡h	Medium (NR)	O
‡k	Form subheading (R)	A
‡l	Language of a work (NR)	A
‡p	Name of part/section of a work (R)	A
‡s	Version (NR)	A
<i>Subject subdivision portion</i>		
‡x	General subdivision (R)	A
‡y	Chronological subdivision (R)	A
‡z	Geographic subdivision (R)	A

## X11

### *Tracing and linking subfields*

#i	Reference instruction phrase [411/511] (NR)	A
#w	Control subfield [411/511] (NR)	A
#5	Institution to which field applies [411/511] (R)	A
#6	Linkage (NR)	A

---

## GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

The content designators identify the subelements occurring in meeting name headings constructed according to the generally accepted cataloging and thesaurus-building rules (e.g. *Anglo-American Cataloguing Rules* (AACR 2), *Library of Congress Subject Headings* (LCSH)) that are identified in 008/10 (Descriptive cataloging rules) or 008/11 (Subject heading system/thesaurus). A named meeting that is entered under a corporate name is contained in the X10 fields. Corporate names that include such words as *conference* or *congress* are also contained in the X10 fields. For example, the Congress of Neurological Surgeons, a professional group, is a corporate name.

### ■ INDICATORS

#### First Indicator - Type of meeting name entry element \_\_\_\_\_

The first indicator position contains a value that identifies the form of the entry element of the heading. The values distinguish among an inverted personal name, a jurisdiction name, and a meeting name in direct order used as the entry element.

##### 0 - Inverted name

Value 0 indicates that the meeting name begins with a personal name in inverted order (*surname, forename*).

411 00#aSmith (David Nichol) Memorial Seminar

Meeting names beginning with a personal surname alone, a personal name in direct order (not inverted), or containing a personal name other than as the entry element are identified by value 2.

111 20#aSymposium Internacional "Manuel Pedroso" In Memoriam  
#d(1976 :#cGuanajuato, Mexico)

111 20#aWittenberg University Luther Symposium#d(1983)

411 20#aMartin Luther Symposium#d(1983 :#cWittenburg University)

##### 1 - Jurisdiction name

Value 1 indicates that the entry element is a jurisdiction name under which a meeting name is entered. This construction is not used in AACR 2 formulated 111 Heading or 511 See Also From Tracing fields. It may occur in 411 See From Tracing fields.

411 10#waVenice (Italy).#qInternational Biennial Exhibition of Art

Meeting names containing a jurisdiction name as an integral part of the name or qualified by a place name are identified by value 2.

111 20#aNation-wide Conference of the Women of Afghanistan  
#d(1980 :#cKabul, Afghanistan)

411 20#aBrussels Hemoglobin Symposium

## 2 - Name in direct order

Value 2 indicates that the name is in direct order. The heading may contain a parenthetical qualifier or may be an acronym or initialism.

111 20#aIASTED International Symposium  
111 20#aSymposium (International) on Combustion  
111 20#aGovernor's Conference on Aging (N.Y.)#d(1982 :#cAlbany)  
111 20#aEsto '84#d(1984 :#cToronto, Ont.)#eRaamatunäituse Komitee  
111 20#aInternational Congress of Romance Linguistics and Philology  
#n(17th :#d1983 :#cAix-en-Provence, France)#tActes du XVIIème  
Congrès international de linguistique et philologie romanes  
111 20#aCongresso Brasileiro de Publicações

## Second Indicator - Nonfiling characters

The second indicator position contains a value that specifies the number of character positions associated with a definite or indefinite article (e.g., The, An) at the beginning of a heading that are disregarded in sorting and filing processes.

### 0 - No nonfiling characters present

Value 0 indicates that no initial article character positions are disregarded.

Diacritical marks or special characters at the beginning of a heading that does not begin with an initial article are not counted as nonfiling characters.

111 20#a"Foro sobre el Pueblo Guaymí y su Futuro"#d(1981 :#cPanama,  
Panama)  
111 20#aÖsterreichischer Juristentag.#eArbeitsgemeinschaft  
Konsumentenschutz

An initial definite or indefinite article may also simply be deleted in the formulation of the meeting name heading. If the initial article is retained but is not to be disregarded in sorting and filing processes, value 0 is used.

111 20#aLa Crosse Health and Sports Science Symposium

### 1-9 - Number of nonfiling characters present

A non-zero value indicates that the heading begins with a definite or indefinite article that is disregarded in sorting and filing processes. A diacritical mark or special character associated with the article (but preceding the first actual filing character) is included in the count of nonfiling characters.

*Because the omission of initial articles to be disregarded in sorting and filing processes is common practice, values 1-9 are unlikely to be used in an X11 field.*

# X11

## ■ SUBFIELD CODES

### ‡a - Meeting name or jurisdiction name as entry element

Subfield ‡a contains a name of a meeting or a jurisdiction name under which a meeting is entered. Parenthetical qualifying information is not separately subfield coded. Meeting names are not entered under jurisdiction names in AACR 2 formulated 111 Heading or 511 See Also From Tracing fields. This construction may occur in 411 See From Tracing fields.

111 20‡aInternational Conference on Numerical Methods in Geomechanics  
411 20‡aGeomechanics, International Conference on Numerical Methods in

411 10‡aVenice (Italy).‡qInternational Biennial Exhibition of Art

### ‡c - Location of meeting

Subfield ‡c contains a place name or a name of an institution where a meeting was held.

111 20‡aWorkshop on Primary Health Care‡d(1983 :‡cKavieng, Papua New Guinea)  
111 20‡aConference on Philosophy and Its History‡d(1983 :‡cUniversity of Lancaster)

Multiple adjacent locations are contained in a single subfield ‡c.

111 20‡aWorld Peace Conference‡n(1st :‡d1949 :‡cParis, France and Prague, Czechoslovakia)

### ‡d - Date of meeting

Subfield ‡d contains the date a meeting was held.

111 20‡aColloquio franco-italiano di Aosta‡d(1982)  
111 20‡aSymposium on Finite Element Methods in Geotechnical Engineering  
‡d(1972 :‡cVicksburg, Miss.)  
111 20‡aSpecial Conference on the Chinese Customs Tariff‡d(1925-1926 :  
‡cPeking, China)

A date added parenthetically to a meeting name to distinguish between identical names is not separately subfield coded.

111 20‡aInternational Symposium on Quality Control (1974- )

### ‡e - Subordinate unit

Subfield ‡e contains a name of a subordinate unit entered under a meeting name.

111 20‡aIllinois White House Conference on Children‡d(1980 :‡cSpringfield, Ill.).‡eChicago Regional Committee  
111 20‡aStour Music Festival.‡eOrchestra  
111 20‡aWhite House Conference on Library and Information Services  
‡d(1979 :‡cWashington, D.C.).‡eOhio Conference Delegation

**#f - Date of a work**

Subfield #f contains a date of publication used with a collective uniform title in a name/title heading.

111 20#aHybrid Corn Industry Research Conference.#tWorks.#f1980

A date added parenthetically to a title to distinguish between identical titles entered under the same name is not separately subfield coded.

111 20#aInternational Symposium on Quality Control (1974- )

**#g - Miscellaneous information**

Subfield #g contains a data element that is not more appropriately contained in another defined subfield. Such information is not used in AACR 2 formulated X11 heading fields. It may occur in pre-AACR 2 X11 headings that contain the parenthetical phrase *Projected, not held*.

111 20#aSymposium on Nonsteady Fluid Dynamics,#cSan Francisco,#d1978  
#g(Projected, not held)

**#h - Medium**

Subfield #h contains a media qualifier used with a title of a work in a name/title heading.

**#i - Reference instruction phrase**

Subfield #i contains a reference instruction phrase other than those that may be system generated from the field tag or from the codes defined for subfield #w (Control subfield). Subfield #i is appropriate only in the 411 See From Tracing and 511 See Also From Tracing fields. Guidelines for applying subfield #i are provided in the *Tracing and Reference Fields—General Information* section.

**#k - Form subheading**

Subfield #k contains a form subheading used with a title of a work in a name/title heading. The term *Selections* is a form subheading used with meeting names.

111 20#aInternational Conference on Safety of Life at Sea#d(1960 :  
#cLondon, England).#tFinal act of conference with annexes including  
the International Convention for the Safety of Life at Sea, signed  
in London, 17 June, 1960.#lChinese & English.#kSelections

**#l - Language of a work**

Subfield #l contains the name of the language(s) (or a term representing the language, e.g., Polyglot) of a work in a name/title heading.

111 20#aBiennale di Venezia#d(1980).#eSettore arti visive.#tCatalogo  
generale 1980.#lEnglish



# X11

## #n - Number of part/section/meeting

Subfield #n contains the *number of a meeting*.

111 20#aAsian Games#n(9th :#d1982 :#cDelhi, India).#eSpecial Organising Committee

Subfield #n also contains a *number* designation for a part/section of a work. "Numbering" is defined as an indication of sequencing in any form, e.g., Part 1, Supplement A, Book two.

411 20#aVatican Council#n(2nd :#d1962-1965).#tConstitutio pastoralis de ecclesia in mundo huius temporis.#n46-52.#pDe dignitate matrimonii et familiae fovenda

*[Part/section is both numbered and named.]*

## #p - Name of part/section of a work

Subfield #p contains a *name* designation of a part/section of a work in a name/title heading.

111 20#aInternational Conference on Gnosticism#d(1978 :#cNew Haven, Conn.).#tRediscovery of Gnosticism.#pModern writers

111 20#aConference on the Limitation of Armament#d(1921-1922 :#cWashington, D.C.).#tWashington Kaigi keika.#n1.#pGunbi seigen ni kansuru mondai

*[Part/section is both numbered and named.]*

## #q - Name of meeting following jurisdiction name entry element

Subfield #q contains a meeting name that is entered under a jurisdiction name contained in subfield #a. This construction is not used in AACR 2 formulated 111 Heading or 511 See Also From Tracing fields. It may occur in 411 See From Tracing fields.

411 10#aVenice (Italy).#qInternational Biennial Exhibition of Art

## #s - Version

Subfield #s contains version, edition, etc., information added to a title of a work in a name/title heading. This subfield code is defined for consistency in the 1XX fields. *Subfield #s is unlikely to be used in an X11 field.*

## #t - Title of a work

Subfield #t contains a uniform title, a title page title of a work, or a series title used in a name/title heading.

111 20#aVatican Council#n(2nd :#d1962-1965).#tDecretum de presbyterorum ministerio et vita

*Additional examples are in the descriptions of subfields #f, #k, #l, #n, and #p.*

**‡w - Control subfield [411/511]**

Subfield ‡w contains up to four character positions (designated as ‡w/0, ‡w/1, etc.) that indicate whether special instructions apply to the display of the heading and whether a tracing is restricted to the reference structure of a particular type of authority. Subfield ‡w is appropriate only in the 411 See From Tracing and 511 See Also From Tracing fields. Guidelines for applying the codes defined for subfield ‡w are provided in the *Tracing and Reference Fields—General Information* section.

**‡x - General subdivision**

Subfield ‡x contains a subject subdivision that is not more appropriately contained in subfield ‡y (Chronological subdivision) or ‡z (Geographic subdivision). Subfield ‡x is appropriate in the X11 fields only when a general topical or form subject subdivision is added to a name or name/title heading to form an extended subject heading.

111 20‡aPurdue Pest Control Conference‡xPeriodicals

111 20‡aInternational Congress of Writers for the Defence of Culture‡n(1st :  
‡d1935 :‡cParis, France)‡xFiction

111 20‡aCouncil of Trent‡d(1545-1563)‡xControversial literature‡xEarly works  
to 1800

**‡y - Chronological subdivision**

Subfield ‡y contains a subject subdivision that represents a period of time. Subfield ‡y is appropriate in the X11 fields only when a chronological subject subdivision is added to a name or name/title heading to form an extended subject heading.

**‡z - Geographic subdivision**

Subfield ‡z contains a geographic subject subdivision. Subfield ‡z is appropriate in the X11 fields only when a geographic subject subdivision is added to a name or name/title heading to form an extended subject heading.

| **‡5 - Institution to which field applies [411/511]**

Subfield ‡5 contains the National Union Catalog (NUC) symbol of the organization that has added a tracing field to a national authority file record. Subfield ‡5 is appropriate only in the 411 See From Tracing and 511 See Also From Tracing fields. Guidelines for applying subfield ‡5 are provided in the *Tracings and Reference Fields—General Information* section.

| **‡6 - Linkage**

Subfield ‡6 contains data that link pairs of fields together. It contains the tag number of an associated description of subfield ‡6 and guidelines for application in the *Representation* section.

---

# X11

## INPUT CONVENTIONS

### Ambiguous Headings

The following categories are meeting names:

Colloquia	Seminars
Exhibitions	Shows (Exhibitions)
Expeditions, Scientific	Symposia
Expositions	Workshops
Fairs	
Festivals (formally organized)	

### Punctuation

The punctuation of the subelements of a heading is generally dictated by descriptive cataloging or subject heading system/thesaurus rules. These input conventions clarify USMARC punctuation practices.

An X11 field does not end with a mark of punctuation unless the field ends with an abbreviation, an initialism, or data that ends with a mark of punctuation.

111 20#aConvegno Santa Caterina in Finalborgo#n(1980 :#cCivico musco del Finale)

The name portion of a name/title heading ends with a mark of punctuation.

111 20#aInternational Congress of the History of Art#n(24th :#d1979 :#cBologna, Italy).#tAtti del XXIV Congresso internazionale di storia dell'arte

A mark of punctuation occurring with a closing quotation mark is placed inside the quotation mark.

111 20#aSimposio "Antropólogos y Misioneros: Posiciones Incompatibles?"#d(1985 :#cBogota, Colombia)

A name or title portion followed by a subject subdivision does not end with a mark of punctuation unless the name or title portion ends with an abbreviation, initialism, or open date.

111 20#aVatican Council#n(2nd :#d1962-1965).#tActa synodalia Sacrosancti Concilii Occumenici Vaticani II#xIndexes

111 20#aCouncil of Constantinople#n(1st :#d381)#xPoetry

## Spacing

No spaces are used in initialisms or personal name initials/letters.

- 111 20#J.J. Sylvester Symposium on Algebraic Geometry#d(1976 :#cJohns Hopkins University)
- 111 20#aWoman's Rights Convention#n(1st :#d1948 :#cSeneca Falls, N.Y.)
- 111 20#aOlympic Games#n(22nd :#d1980 :#cMoscow, R.S.F.S.R.)
- 111 20#aInternational SEG Meeting
- 411 20#aS.E.G. Meeting

One space is used between preceding and succeeding initials if an abbreviation consists of more than a single letter.

An open-ended date ends with a space when it is followed by other data.

- 111 20#aInternational Symposium on Quality Control (1974- )

## Display Constant

- *[dash associated with the content of subfield #x, #y, or #z]*

The dash (–) that precedes a subject subdivision in an extended subject heading is not carried in the USMARC record. It may be system generated as a display constant associated with the content of subfield #x, #y, or #z.

*Content designated field:*

- 111 20#aPurdue Pest Control Conference#xPeriodicals

*Display example:*

Purdue Pest Control Conference–Periodicals

## RELATED USMARC DOCUMENT/FIELD

Tracing and Reference Fields—General Information

## CONTENT DESIGNATOR HISTORY

#b *Number [OBSOLETE]*

In 1980, the definition of subfield #n was expanded to include meeting numbers and subfield #b was made obsolete. Records created before this change may contain the number of the meeting in subfield #b.



## 111 Heading—Meeting Name (NR)

### FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

This field contains a meeting name used as a heading in either an established heading record (008/09, Kind of record, code a) or a reference record (008/09, code b or c). In an established heading record, field 111 contains the established form of a meeting name. In a reference record, this field contains an unestablished form of a meeting name.

Guidelines for applying the content designators defined for field 111, input conventions, and national level record requirements are given in the *X11 Meeting Names—General Information* section.

### ■ EXAMPLES

- 111 20#aEuropean Congress of Biopharmaceutics and Pharmacokinetics
- 111 20#aCentennial Exhibition#d(1876 :#cPhiladelphia, Pa.)
- 111 20#aInternational Institute on the Prevention and Treatment of  
Alcoholism#n(26th :#d1980 :#cCardiff, South Glamorgan).#eEducation Section
- 111 20#aUnited Nations Conference on the Law of the Sea#n(3rd :  
#d1973-1982 :#cNew York, N.Y., etc.)#eDelegations
- 111 20#aInternational Purdue Workshop on Industrial Computer  
Systems.#eMan/Machine Interface Committee
- 111 20#aConference on the Dynamics of Human Settlement Systems#n(1976 :  
#cInternational Institute for Applied Systems Analysis)
- 111 20#aWorkshop on Nuclear Physics with Stored, Cooled Beams#d(1984 :  
#cSpencer, Ind.)
- 111 20#aGeophysical Symposium#n(21st :#d1976 :#cLeipzig, Germany)#tProceedings.  
#kSelections

---

### RELATED USMARC DOCUMENT/FIELD

X11 Meeting Names—General Information



## X30 Uniform Titles--General Information

*National Level  
Requirement*

130	Heading--Uniform Title (NR)	A
430	See From Reference--Uniform Title (R)	A
530	See Also From Reference--Uniform Title (R)	A

Indicators

<u>First</u>	Undefined	M
b	Undefined	M
<u>Second</u>	Nonfiling characters	M
0-9	Number of nonfiling characters present	M

Subfield Codes

<i>Title portion</i>		
#a	Uniform title (NR)	M
#n	Number of part/section of a work (R)	A
#p	Name of part/section of a work (R)	A
#l	Language of a work (NR)	A
#f	Date of a work (NR)	A
#k	Form subheading (R)	A
#s	Version (NR)	A
#d	Date of treaty signing (R)	A
#h	Medium (NR)	O
#m	Medium of performance for music (R)	A
#o	Arranged statement for music (NR)	A
#r	Key for music (NR)	A
#g	Miscellaneous information (NR)	A
#t	Title of a work (NR)	A
<i>Subject subdivision portion</i>		
#x	General subdivision (R)	A
#y	Chronological subdivision (R)	A
#z	Geographic subdivision (R)	A
<i>Tracing and linking subfields</i>		
#i	Reference instruction phrase [430/530] (NR)	A
#w	Control subfield [430/530] (NR)	A
#5	Institution to which field applies [430/530] (R)	A
#6	Linkage (NR)	A



## X30

### GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

The content designators identify the subelements occurring in uniform or conventional title, title page title, or series title headings that are not entered under a name heading and that are constructed according to the generally accepted cataloging and thesaurus-building rules (e.g., *Anglo-American Cataloguing Rules* (AACR 2), *Library of Congress Subject Headings* (LCSH)) that are identified in 008/10 (Descriptive cataloging rules) or 008/11 (Subject heading system/thesaurus). A uniform title heading is used to bring together bibliographic entries for a work when various issues have appeared under different titles and to provide identification for a work when the title by which it is known differs from the title proper of a particular issue or when different publications have identical titles. A uniform title entered under a name is contained in subfield ‡t (Title of a work) in the field appropriate for the author's name (X00, X10, X11). Uniform titles used in phrase subject headings (e.g., Bible in atheism) are contained in the X50 fields.

#### ■ INDICATORS

##### First Indicator - Undefined

The first indicator position is undefined and contains a blank ( ).

##### Second Indicator - Nonfiling characters

The second indicator position contains a value that specifies the number of character positions associated with a definite or indefinite article (e.g., Le, An) at the beginning of a uniform title heading that are disregarded in sorting and filing processes.

##### 0 - No nonfiling characters present

Value 0 indicates that no initial article character positions are disregarded.

Diacritical marks or special characters at the beginning of a uniform title heading that does not begin with an initial article are not counted as nonfiling characters.

130 00‡a"Hsüan lai hsi kan" hsi lieh

130 00‡aĚlektroshlakovyĚ pereplav

An initial definite or indefinite article may also simply be deleted in the formulation of the uniform title heading. If the initial article is retained but is not to be disregarded in sorting and filing processes, value 0 is used.

130 00‡aBastard

[Full title is *Der Bastard*.]

##### 1-9 - Number of nonfiling characters present

A non-zero value indicates that a heading begins with a definite or indefinite article that is disregarded in sorting and filing processes. A diacritical mark or special character associated with the article (but preceding the first actual filing character) is included in the count of nonfiling characters.

*Because the omission of initial articles to be disregarded in sorting and filing processes is common practice, values 1-9 are unlikely to be used in an X30 field.*

## ■ SUBFIELD CODES

## ‡a - Uniform title

Subfield ‡a contains a uniform title. Parenthetical information is separately subfield coded in one instance: the date of signing added to a uniform title of a treaty is contained in subfield ‡d.

- 130 ‡0‡aHabakkuk commentary
- 130 ‡0‡aBeowulf
- 130 ‡0‡aCodex Brucianus
- 130 ‡0‡aResources information series
- 130 ‡0‡aImago (Series)
- 130 ‡0‡aRecherches (Sand (Firm))
- 130 ‡0‡aSocialist thought and practice (Belgrade, Serbia)
- 130 ‡0‡aEconomia (Franco Angeli editore : 1985)
- 130 ‡0‡aNoticias de Macau
- 130 ‡0‡aInter-American Treaty of Reciprocal Assistance‡d(1947)  
[Parenthetical date of treaty signing is contained in subfield ‡d.]

## ‡d - Date of treaty signing

Subfield ‡d contains the date of signing used in a uniform title heading for a treaty or other intergovernmental agreement.

- 130 ‡0‡aBonn Convention‡d(1952)
- 430 ‡0‡aBonner Vertrag‡d(1952)

## ‡f - Date of a work

Subfield ‡f contains a date of publication used in a uniform title heading.

- 130 ‡0‡aBible.‡lLatin.‡sVulgate.‡f1454?
- 130 ‡0‡aTosefta.‡lEnglish.‡f1977

A date added parenthetically to distinguish between identical uniform titles is not separately subfield coded.

- 130 ‡0‡aNew-York statesman (1823)

## ‡g - Miscellaneous information

Subfield ‡g contains a data element used in a uniform title heading that is not more appropriately contained in another defined subfield. Such information is not used in AACR 2 formulated 130 Heading or 530 See Also From Tracing fields. It may occur in a pre-AACR 2 formulated headings in 430 See From Tracing fields.

- 430 ‡0‡wnnaa‡aBible.‡gManuscripts, Latin.‡pN.T.‡pGospels (Lindisfarne gospels)

## X30

### #h - Medium

Subfield #h contains a media qualifier used in a uniform title heading.

130 #0#aGone with the wind (Motion picture).#hSound recording

### #i - Reference instruction phrase

Subfield #i contains a reference instruction phrase other than those that may be system generated from the field tag or from the codes defined for subfield #w (Control subfield). Subfield #i is appropriate only in the 430 See From Tracing and 530 See Also From Tracing fields. Guidelines for applying subfield #i are provided in the *Tracing and Reference Fields—General Information* section.

### #k - Form subheading

Subfield #k contains a form subheading used in a uniform title heading. Form subheadings used with uniform titles include *Manuscript*, *Protocols*, etc., and *Selections*.

130 #0#aBible.#pO.T.#pFive Scrolls.#iHebrew.#sBiblioteca Vaticana.#kManuscript.  
#nUrbaniti I

130 #0#aConvention for the Protection of Human Rights and Fundamental  
Freedoms#d(1950).#kProtocols, etc.

130 #0#aPortrait and biographical album of Isabella County, Mich.#kSelections

130 #0#aVedas.#pR̥gveda.#iItalian & Sanskrit.#kSelections

### #l - Language of a work

Subfield #l contains the name of the language(s) (or a term representing the language, e.g., Polyglot) of a work used in a uniform title heading.

130 #0#aKхимиā i tekhnologiā vody.#lEnglish

130 #0#aLord's prayer.#lPolyglot

130 #0#aTreaty on the Non-proliferation of Nuclear Weapons#d(1968).#lSpanish

130 #0#aAvesta.#pVendidād.#lPahlavi & Avesta.#kSelections

### #m - Medium of performance for music

Subfield #m contains term(s) designating the medium of performance used in a uniform title heading.

130 #0#aConcertos,#mviolin, string orchestra,#rD major  
[Uniform title heading used for a work having doubtful authorship.]

**‡n - Number of part/section of a work**

Subfield ‡n contains a *number* designation for a part/section of a work used in a uniform title heading. "Numbering" is defined as an indication of sequencing in any form, e.g., Part 1, Supplement A, Book two. In music titles, the serial, opus, or thematic index number is contained in subfield ‡n.

- 130 ‡0‡aEnglish lute-songs.‡nSeries 1
- 130 ‡0‡aBulletin.‡nSeries B (Association of Washington Cities)
- 130 ‡0‡aAnnale (Universiteit van Stellenbosch).‡nSerie A2,‡pSoologie  
[Part/section is both numbered and named.]

A part/section designation that is an inversion of a named part that includes a number or a named part that includes chapter and/or verse numbers is contained in subfield ‡p.

- 130 ‡0‡aBible.‡pN.T.‡pCorinthians, 1st
- 430 ‡0‡aBible.‡pO.T.‡pExodus XX, 2-17

**‡o - Arranged statement for music**

Subfield ‡o contains the abbreviation *arr.* used in a uniform title heading.

- 130 ‡0‡aGod save the king;‡oarr.

**‡p - Name of part/section of a work**

Subfield ‡p contains a *name* designation of a part/section used in a uniform title heading.

- 130 ‡0‡aQuestões internacionais.‡pSérie Estudos
- 130 ‡0‡aRecherches morales.‡pDocuments
- 130 ‡0‡aTalmud Yerushalmi.‡pNezikin.‡lGerman.‡kSelections
- 130 ‡0‡aStatistical bulletin (Bamako, Mali).‡pSupplement
- 130 ‡0‡aAmerican Convention on Human Rights‡d(1969).‡nPart 2,  
‡pMeans of Protection.‡lSpanish  
[Part/section is both numbered and named.]

A named part that indicates a subpart to the first noted part/section is contained in a separate subfield ‡p.

- 130 ‡0‡aBiblioteca Francisco Javier Clavijero.‡pSerie menor.‡pColección  
Fuentes para el estudio de la historia del movimiento obrero mexicano
- 130 ‡0‡aBible.‡pN.T.‡pPhilippians.‡lEnglish.‡sRevised Standard.‡f1980
- 430 ‡0‡aBible.‡pN.T.‡pMatthew VI, 9-13

**‡r - Key for music**

Subfield ‡r contains the statement of key used in a uniform title heading.

- 130 ‡0‡aConcertos,‡mviolin, string orchestra,‡rD major

## X30

### ‡s - Version

Subfield ‡s contains version, edition, etc., information used in a uniform title heading.

130 ‡0‡aBible.‡lEnglish.‡sAuthorized

130 ‡0‡aBible.‡pN.T.‡pLuke.‡lGreek.‡sCodex Sinaiticus

### ‡t - Title of a work

Subfield ‡t contains a title page title of a work. This subfield code is defined for consistency in the 1XX fields. *Subfield ‡t is unlikely to be used in an X30 field.*

### ‡w - Control subfield [430/530]

Subfield ‡w contains up to four character positions (designated as ‡w/0, ‡w/1, etc.) that indicate whether special instructions apply to the display of the heading and whether a tracing is restricted to the reference structure of a particular type of authority. Subfield ‡w is appropriate only in the 430 See From Tracing and 530 See Also From Tracing fields. Guidelines for applying the codes defined for subfield ‡w are provided in the *Tracing and Reference Fields—General Information* section.

### ‡x - General subdivision

Subfield ‡x contains a subject subdivision that is not more appropriately contained in subfield ‡y (Chronological subdivision) or ‡z (Geographic subdivision). Subfield ‡x is appropriate in the X30 fields only when a general topical or form subject subdivision is added to a uniform title heading to form an extended subject heading.

130 ‡0‡aNew York times (New York, N.Y. : 1857)‡xIndexes

130 ‡0‡aTriple Alliance, 1882‡xCaricatures and cartoons

130 ‡0‡aBeowulf‡xLanguage‡xGlossaries, etc.

130 ‡0‡aTripiṭaka.‡pSūtrapiṭaka.‡pTantras‡xCommentaries  
‡xEarly works to 1800

### ‡y - Chronological subdivision

Subfield ‡y contains a subject subdivision that represents a period of time. Subfield ‡y is appropriate in the X30 fields only when a chronological subject subdivision is added to a uniform title heading to form an extended subject heading.

130 ‡0‡aKoran‡xCriticism, interpretation, etc.‡xHistory‡y19th century

### ‡z - Geographic subdivision

Subfield ‡z contains a geographic subject subdivision. Subfield ‡z is appropriate in the X30 fields only when a geographic subject subdivision is added to a uniform title heading to form an extended subject heading.

130 ‡0‡aBible‡zGermany

| #5 - Institution to which field applies [430/530]

Subfield #5 contains the National Union Catalog (NUC) symbol of the organization that has added a tracing field to a national authority file record. Subfield #5 is appropriate only in the 430 See From Tracing and 530 See Also From Tracing fields. Guidelines for applying subfield #5 are provided in the *Tracings and Reference Fields—General Information* section.

| #6 - Linkage

Subfield #6 contains data that link pairs of fields that are alternate graphic representations of each other. It contains the tag number of an associated field and an occurrence number. A complete description of subfield #6 and guidelines for applying it are provided in the *880 Alternate Graphic Representation* section.

## INPUT CONVENTIONS

### Ambiguous Headings

The following categories are uniform titles when they are established under title:

Comic strips	Radio programs
Computer programs	Software, Computer
Motion pictures	Television programs

### Punctuation

The punctuation of the subelements of a heading is generally dictated by descriptive cataloging or subject heading system/thesaurus rules. These input conventions clarify USMARC punctuation practices.

An X30 field does not end with a mark of punctuation unless the field ends with an abbreviation, an initialism, or data that ends with a mark of punctuation.

- 130 #0#aTen commandments
- 130 #0#aGod save the king;#oarr.
- 130 #0#aTalmud#xGlossaries, vocabularies, etc.
- 130 #0#aPublicación miscelánea (Inter-American Institute for Cooperation on Agriculture)
- 130 #0#aBible.#lEnglish.#sRevised Standard.#f1961?
- 430 #0#aPax et bonum, Ed.

A mark of punctuation is placed inside a closing quotation mark.

- 530 #0#wb#aPublicaciones del Archivo Histórico de la Provincia de Buenos Aires "Ricardo Levene."#nIII,#pDocumentos del archivo

## X30

A uniform title heading followed by a subject subdivision does not end with a mark of punctuation unless the title ends with an abbreviation or an initialism.

- 130    0#United Nations Convention on Contracts for the International Sale of  
          Goods#d(1980)#xCongresses
- 130    0#Book of Mormon#xAntiquities
- 130    0#Bible.#pN.T.#xCriticism, interpretation, etc.

### Spacing

No spaces are used in initialisms.

- 130    0#CORPS (computing, organizations, policy, and society) series
- 130    0#Bible.#pN.T.#pMatthew

One space is used between preceding and succeeding initials if an abbreviation consists of more than a single letter.

- 130    0#Mineral resources series (Morgantown, W. Va.)

### Display Constant

- *[dash associated with the content of subfield #x, #y, or #z]*

The dash (–) that precedes a subject subdivision in an extended subject heading is not carried in the USMARC record. It may be system generated as a display constant associated with the content of subfield #x, #y, or #z.

*Content designated field:*

- 130    0#Beowulf#xLanguage#xGlossaries, etc.

*Display example:*

Beowulf–Language–Glossaries, etc.

---

## RELATED USMARC DOCUMENT/FIELD

Tracing and Reference Fields–General Information

## 130 Heading—Uniform Title (NR)

### FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

This field contains a uniform title used as a heading in either an established heading record (008/09, Kind of record, code a) or a reference record (008/09, code b or c). In an established heading record, field 130 contains the established form of a uniform title. In a reference record, this field contains an unestablished form of a uniform title.

Guidelines for applying the content designators defined for field 130, input conventions, and national level record requirements are given in the *X30 Uniform Titles—General Information* section.

### ■ EXAMPLES

- 130 0#A l'épreuve
  - 130 0#A Optiques—Hazan
  - 130 0#A Publicação da série "D"
  - 130 0#A Contribution (Victoria University of Wellington. Analytical Facility)
  - 130 0#A Cinéma d'aujourd'hui (Lherminier (Firm))
  - 130 0#A Aurex Jazz Festival '81 (Series)
  - 130 0#A Oxford anthology of music (Sound recording).#p Medieval music.#h Sound recording
  - 130 0#A Oinarrizko euskarazko argitalpenak.#n 2. maila
  - 130 0#A Bible.#p O.T.#p Pentateuch.#l Aramaic#x Versions, Palestinian
  - 130 0#A Beowulf#x Translations, French [German, etc.]
  - 130 0#A Koran#x Criticism, interpretation, etc.#x Biography
  - 130 0#A Bible#x Criticism, interpretation, etc.#x History#y Middle ages, 600-1500
- 

### RELATED USMARC DOCUMENT/FIELD

X30 Uniform Titles—General Information





## X50 Topical Terms—General Information

National Level  
Requirement

150	Heading—Topical Term (NR)	A
450	See From Tracing—Topical Term (R)	A
550	See Also From Tracing—Topical Term (R)	A

Indicators

<u>First</u>	Undefined	M
Ø	Undefined	M
<u>Second</u>	Nonfiling characters	M
0-9	Number of nonfiling characters present	M

Subfield Codes

<i>Main term portion</i>		
‡a	Topical term or geographic name as entry element (NR)	M
‡b	Topical term following geographic name as entry element (NR)	A
<i>Subject subdivision portion</i>		
‡x	General subdivision (R)	A
‡y	Chronological subdivision (R)	A
‡z	Geographic subdivision (R)	A
<i>Tracing and linking subfields</i>		
‡i	Reference instruction phrase [450/550] (NR)	A
‡w	Control subfield [450/550] (NR)	A
‡5	Institution to which field applies [450/550] (R)	A
‡6	Linkage (NR)	A

## GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

The content designators identify the subelements occurring in topical subject headings and subdivisions and node labels constructed according to generally accepted thesaurus-building conventions (e.g., *Library of Congress Subject Headings* (LCSH), *Medical Subject Headings* (MeSH)) that are identified in 008/11 (Subject heading system/thesaurus).

## ■ INDICATORS

## First Indicator - Undefined

The first indicator is undefined and contains a blank (Ø).

## Second Indicator - Nonfiling characters

---

The second indicator position contains a value that specifies the number of character positions associated with a definite or indefinite article (e.g., The, An) at the beginning of a heading that are disregarded in sorting and filing processes.

### 0 - No nonfiling characters present

Value 0 indicates that no initial article character positions are disregarded.

Diacritical marks or special characters at the beginning a heading that does not begin with an initial article are not counted as nonfiling characters.

150    00#aÜberhaupt (The German word)

An initial definite or indefinite article may also simply be deleted in the formulation of the topical term heading. If the initial article is retained but is not to be disregarded in sorting and filing processes, value 0 is used.

150    00#aAfrihili (Artificial language)  
       *[Full name is El-Afrihili; definite article is omitted.]*

150    00#aLa Plata dolphin  
       *[Definite article is an integral part of the heading.]*

### 1-9 - Number of nonfiling characters present

A non-zero value indicates that the heading begins with a definite or indefinite article that is disregarded in sorting and filing processes. A diacritical mark or special character associated with the article (but preceding the first actual filing character) is included in the count of nonfiling characters.

*Because the omission of initial articles to be disregarded in sorting and filing processes is common practice, values 1-9 are unlikely to be used in an X50 field.*

## ■ SUBFIELD CODES

### #a - Topical term or geographic name as entry element

Subfield #a contains a topical subject, a geographic name used as an entry element for a topical term, or a node label term. Parenthetical qualifying information is not separately subfield coded.

150    00#aBlood  
 150    00#acatalogs by source  
 150    00#aCharacters and characteristics in literature  
 150    00#aBull Run, 2nd Battle, 1862  
 450    00#aCaracas.#bBolívar Statue

**#b - Topical term following geographic name as entry element**

Subfield #b contains a topical term that is entered under a geographic name contained in subfield #a. This construction is not commonly used in 150 or 550 heading fields; it may occur in 450 See From Tracing fields.

450 #0#aWashington, D.C.#bLincoln Memorial

**#i - Reference instruction phrase [450/550]**

Subfield #i contains a reference instruction phrase other than those that may be system generated from the field tag or from the codes defined for subfield #w (Control subfield). Subfield #i is appropriate only in the 450 See From Tracing and 550 See Also From Tracing fields. Guidelines for applying subfield #i are provided in the *Tracing and Reference Fields—General Information* section.

**#w - Control subfield [450/550]**

Subfield #w contains up to four character positions (designated as #w/0, #w/1, etc.) that indicate whether special instructions apply to the display of the heading and whether a tracing is restricted to the reference structure of a particular type of authority. Subfield #w is appropriate only in the 450 See From Tracing and 550 See Also From Tracing fields. Guidelines for applying the codes defined for subfield #w are provided in the *Tracing and Reference Fields—General Information* section.

**#x - General subdivision**

Subfield #x contains a subject subdivision that is not more appropriately contained in subfield #y (Chronological subdivision) or #z (Geographic subdivision). Subfield #x is appropriate in the X50 fields only when a general topical or form subject subdivision is added to a main term to form an extended subject heading.

150 #0#aConflict of laws#xSupport (Domestic relations)

150 #0#aIndulgences#xControversial literature#xEarly works to 1800

150 #0#aAmusements#xReligious aspects#xBuddhism,  
[Christianity, etc.]

**#y - Chronological subdivision**

Subfield #y contains a subject subdivision that represents a period of time. Subfield #y is appropriate in the X50 fields only when a chronological subject subdivision is added to the main term to form an extended subject heading.

150 #0#aArchitecture, Modern#y19th century

150 #0#aGod#xHistory of doctrines#yMiddle Ages, 600-1500

150 #0#aMusic#y500-1400

150 #0#aPainting, Chinese#ySung-Yuan dynasties, 960-1368  
#xSocieties, etc.

## X50

### ‡z - Geographic subdivision

Subfield ‡z contains a geographic subject subdivision. Subfield ‡z is appropriate in the X50 fields only when a geographic subject subdivision is added to a main term to form an extended subject heading.

150 ‡0‡aChapels‡zGermany (West)

150 ‡0‡aWater resources development‡zKenya

150 ‡0‡aMusic festivals‡zIllinois

### | ‡5 - Institution to which field applies [450/550]

Subfield ‡5 contains the National Union Catalog (NUC) symbol of the organization that has added a tracing field to a national authority file record. Subfield ‡5 is appropriate only in the 450 See From Tracing and 550 See Also From Tracing fields. Guidelines for applying subfield ‡5 are provided in the *Tracings and Reference Fields—General Information* section.

### | ‡6 - Linkage

Subfield ‡6 contains data that link pairs of fields that are alternate graphic representations of each other. It contains the tag number of an associated field and an occurrence number. A complete description of subfield ‡6 and guidelines for applying it are provided in the *880 Alternate Graphic Representation* section.

---

## INPUT CONVENTIONS

### Ambiguous Headings

The following categories are topical terms:

Artists' groups  
Athletic contests

Baths, Ancient

Competitions  
Computer languages  
Computer systems  
Contests

Ethnic groups  
Events  
Expeditions, Military

Feasts  
Festivals and celebrations (not  
formally organized)  
Festivals, Folk

Fictitious characters  
Folk festivals and celebrations

Games (Events)  
Gates  
Gods

Hill figures

Legendary characters  
Legendary dynasties

Model railroads  
Monuments (Structures,  
statues, etc.)  
Movements, Social

Pyramids

Races (Contests)  
 Railroad models  
 Rooms

Schools of artists  
 Shrines (not churches)  
 Social movements  
 Sports events  
 Stars (Types)  
 Statues  
 Structures (nongeographic, e.g. towers)  
 Stupas

Tests  
 Tombs  
 Towers  
 Tribes (Ethnic groups)

Walls

## Punctuation

The punctuation of the subelements of a heading is generally dictated by subject heading system/thesaurus files. These input conventions clarify USMARC punctuation practices.

An X50 field does not end with a mark of punctuation unless the field ends with an abbreviation, an initialism, or data that ends with a mark of punctuation.

- 150 \$0\$aMagazine illustration
- 150 \$0\$aSeasonal variations (Economics)
- 150 \$0\$aEducation\$zWashington (D.C.)
- 150 \$0\$aMuseums\$zRussian S.F.S.R.
- 150 \$0\$aArt, Chinese\$yTo 221 B.C.
- 150 \$0\$aResearch libraries\$zMexico\$xSocieties, etc.

## Spacing

Spaces are used in initialisms, acronyms, or abbreviations.

150 \$0\$aC.O.D. shipments

450 \$0\$aB.A. degree

450 \$0\$aBA degree

The space is used between preceding and succeeding initials and the letter.

450 \$0\$aPh. D. degree

## X50

### Display Constant

- [*dash associated with the content of subfield #x, #y, or #z*]

The dash (-) that precedes a subject subdivision in an extended subject heading is not carried in the USMARC record. It may be system generated as a display constant associated with the content of subfield #x, #y, or #z.

*Content designated field:*

150 #0#aChapels#zGermany

*Display example:*

Chapels-Germany

---

### RELATED USMARC DOCUMENT/FIELD

Tracing and Reference Fields-General Information

## 150 Heading—Topical Term (NR)

### FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

This field contains a topical term used as a heading in an established heading record (008/09, Kind of record, code a or f), a subdivision record (008/09, code d), a reference record (008/09, code b or g), or a node label record (008/09, code e). In an established heading record or subdivision record, field 150 contains the established form of a heading. In records for references and node labels, this field contains an unestablished form of a heading.

Guidelines for applying the content designators defined for field 150, input conventions, and national level record requirements are given in the *X50 Topical Terms—General Information* section.

### ■ EXAMPLES

- 150 #aCatalogue . . .
- 150 #aDrug effects
- 150 #abiographies by form
- 150 #aJohn, the Baptist, Saint, in the Koran
- 150 #aCatholic Church in art
- 150 #aHighland games in literature
- 150 #aBible in atheism
- 150 #aGreece in art
- 150 #aHurricane Flora, 1963
- 150 #aSalvation#xPrayer-books and devotions#xEnglish, [French, German, etc.]#xHistory and criticism
- 150 #aEnglish language#xGrammar#y1800-1869
- 150 #aDrama#y17th century
- 150 #aGeology, Stratigraphic#yCarboniferous
- 150 #aFrench language#yEarly modern, 1500-1700#xVocabulary
- 150 #aEtching#y18th century#zSpain

---

### RELATED USMARC DOCUMENT/FIELD

X50 Topical Terms—General Information





## X51 Geographic Names—General Information

National Level  
Requirement

151	Heading—Geographic Name (NR)	A
451	See From Tracing—Geographic Name (R)	A
551	See Also From Tracing—Geographic Name (R)	A

Indicators

<u>First</u>	Undefined	M
↳	Undefined	M
<u>Second</u>	Nonfiling characters	M
0-9	Number of nonfiling characters present	M

Subfield Codes

<i>Name portion</i>		
‡a	Geographic name (NR)	M
<i>Subject subdivision portion</i>		
‡x	General subdivision (R)	A
‡y	Chronological subdivision (R)	A
‡z	Geographic subdivision (R)	A
<i>Tracing and linking subfields</i>		
‡i	Reference instruction phrase [451/551] (NR)	A
‡w	Control subfield [451/551] (NR)	A
‡5	Institution to which field applies [451/551] (R)	A
‡6	Linkage (NR)	A

## GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

The content designators identify the subelements occurring in geographic name headings and subject subdivisions constructed according to generally accepted cataloging and thesaurus-building conventions (e.g., *Anglo-American Cataloguing Rules* (AACR 2), *Library of Congress Subject Headings* (LCSH)) that are identified in 008/10 (Descriptive cataloging rules) or 008/11 (Subject heading system/thesaurus). Jurisdiction names alone or followed by subject subdivisions are X51 geographic names. A name of a jurisdiction that represents an ecclesiastical entity is contained in the X10 fields. A corporate name, a form subheading, a title of a work, and/or a city section name entered under the name of a jurisdiction are contained in the X10 fields. Geographic names used in phrase subject headings (e.g., Iran in the Koran) are contained in the X50 fields.

## ■ INDICATORS

## First Indicator - Undefined

The first indicator position is undefined and contains a blank (↳).

## X51

### Second Indicator - Nonfiling characters

---

The second indicator position contains a value that specifies the number of character positions associated with a definite or indefinite article (e.g., The, An) at the beginning of a heading that are disregarded in sorting and filing processes.

#### 0 - No nonfiling characters present

Value 0 indicates that no initial article character positions are disregarded.

Diacritical marks or special characters at the beginning of a heading that does not begin with an initial article are not counted as nonfiling characters.

151    00‡aÅland Islands (Finland)

An initial definite or indefinite article may also simply be deleted in the formulations of the geographic name heading. If the initial article is retained but is not disregarded in sorting and filing processes, value 0 is used.

151    00‡aGuilvenec (France)

*[Full name is Le Guilvenec; definite article is omitted.]*

151    00‡aLa Plata (Argentina)

*[Definite article is an integral part of the name.]*

#### 1-9 - Number of nonfiling characters present

A non-zero value indicates that the heading begins with a definite or indefinite article that is disregarded in sorting and filing processes. A diacritical mark or special character associated with the article (but preceding the first actual filing character) is included in the count of nonfiling characters.

*Because the omission of initial articles to be disregarded in sorting and filing processes is common practice, values 1-9 are unlikely to be used in an X51 field.*

## ■ SUBFIELD CODES

### ‡a - Geographic name

Subfield ‡a contains a geographic name. Parenthetical qualifying information is not separately subfield coded.

151    00‡aAmazon River

151    00‡aCommunist countries

151    00‡aHalley's comet

151    00‡aInterstate 70

151    00‡aMason and Dixon's Line

151    00‡aHimalaya Mountains

151    00‡aIrrawaddy Division (Burma)

151    00‡aLeesville (S.C.)

151    00‡aPalenque Site (Mexico)

151    00‡aPompeii (Ancient city)

151    00‡aAltamira Cave (Spain)

151    00‡aAntietam National Battlefield (Md.)

- 151 #0#nGreenwich Village (New York, N.Y.)
- 151 #0#aHusum-Schwesing (Germany : Concentration camp)
- 151 #0#aKing Ranch (Tex.)
- 151 #0#aWarm Springs Indian Reservation (Or.)
- 151 #0#aDelaware Memorial Bridge (Del. and N.J.)

#### #i - Reference instruction phrase [451/551]

Subfield #i contains a reference instruction phrase other than those that may be system generated from the field tag or from the codes defined for subfield #w (Control subfield). Subfield #i is appropriate only in the 451 See From Tracing and 551 See Also From Tracing fields. Guidelines for applying subfield #i are provided in the *Tracing and Reference Fields—General Information* section.

#### #w - Control subfield [451/551]

Subfield #w contains up to four character positions (designated as #w/0, #w/1, etc.) that indicate whether special instructions apply to the display of the heading and whether a tracing is restricted to the reference structure of a particular type of authority. Subfield #w is appropriate only in the 451 See From Tracing and 551 See Also From Tracing fields. Guidelines for applying the codes defined for subfield #w are provided in the *Tracing and Reference Fields—General Information* section.

#### #x - General subdivision

Subfield #x contains a subject subdivision that is not more appropriately contained in subfield #y (Chronological subdivision) or #z (Geographic subdivision). Subfield #x is appropriate in the the X51 fields only when a general topical or form subject subdivision is added to a geographic name to form an extended subject heading.

- 151 #0#aTexas#xGovernors#xStaff
- 151 #0#aAix-en-Provence (France)#xSocial life and customs#xEarly works to  
1800
- 151 #0#aUnited States#xCensus, 2nd, 1800

#### #y - Chronological subdivision

Subfield #y contains a subject subdivision that represents a period of time. Subfield #y is appropriate in the X51 fields only when a chronological subject subdivision is added to a geographic name to form an extended subject heading.

- 151 #0#aGrecce#xHistory#yGeometric period, ca. 900-700 B.C.
- 151 #0#aUruguay#xHistory#yGreat War, 1843-1852
- 151 #0#aUnited States#xHistory#yCivil War, 1861-1865  
#xConscientious objectors

## X51

### ‡z - Geographic subdivision

Subfield ‡z contains a geographic subject subdivision. Subfield ‡z is appropriate in the X51 fields only when a geographic subject subdivision is added to a geographic name to form an extended subject heading.

151 ‡0‡aUnited States‡xBoundaries‡zCanada

### | ‡5 - Institution to which field applies [451/551]

Subfield ‡5 contains the National Union Catalog (NUC) symbol of the organization that has added a tracing field to a national authority file record. Subfield ‡5 is appropriate only in the 451 See From Tracing and 551 See Also From Tracing fields. Guidelines for applying subfield ‡5 are provided in the *Tracings and Reference Fields—General Information* section.

### | ‡6 - Linkage

Subfield ‡6 contains data that link pairs of fields that are alternate graphic representations of each other. It contains the tag number of an associated field and an occurrence number. A complete description of subfield ‡6 and guidelines for applying it are provided in the 880 *Alternate Graphic Representation* section.

---

## INPUT CONVENTIONS

### Ambiguous Headings

The following categories are geographic names:

Agoras  
Airports  
Amusement parks  
Arboretums  
Archaeological sites  
Areas and regions

Botanical gardens  
Boundary lines  
Bridges

Calderas  
Camps  
Canals  
Caves  
Cemeteries  
| Cities, Extinct (pre-1500)  
City sections (entered directly)  
Collective settlements

Comets  
Communes  
Concentration camps  
Conservation districts  
Countries, Groups of, e.g.,  
    Developing countries,  
    Communist countries, Islamic  
    countries, etc.  
Country clubs

Dams  
Deserts  
Docks

Economic zones  
Esplanades  
Estates

Farms	Railroad tunnels
Forests	Ranches
Fortresses (Structures)	Recreation areas
Forts (Military posts, fortresses, etc.)	Refugee camps
Free ports and zones	Regions, Geographic, e.g., Antarctic regions, Tropics, etc.
Galaxies	Reservations, Indian
Gardens	Reserves (Parks, forests, etc.)
Gas fields	Reservoirs
Geographic regions, e.g., Antarctic regions, Tropics, etc.	Rivers
Geologic basins	Roads
Grasslands	Sanitary landfills
Hazardous waste sites	Sanitation districts
Herbariums	Seas
Highways	Squares
Historic sites	Stars (Individual)
Historical parks	Steppes
	Streets
Islands, Nonjurisdictional	Trails
	Tunnels
Jurisdictions, Ancient	U.S. National Park Service, U.S. Forest Service, and U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service units named after a park, forest, etc.
Lakes	Valleys
Land grants	Waterways
Lines, Boundary	Wildlife refuges
Marketplaces (Ancient)	Zoos
Military installations (active and inactive)	
Mines	
Mountains	
Oceans currents	
Open spaces	
Parks	
Pipelines	
Plains	
Plantations	
Playgrounds	
Plaza (Open spaces, squares, etc.)	
Ports (Physical facilities)	

## X51

### Punctuation

The punctuation of the subelements of a heading is generally dictated by descriptive cataloging or subject heading system/thesaurus rules. These input conventions clarify USMARC punctuation practices.

An X51 field does not end with a mark of punctuation unless the field ends with an abbreviation, an initialism, or data that ends with a mark of punctuation.

- 151   **0**⌘**a**Cambridge (Mass.)⌘**x**Schools
- 151   **0**⌘**a**Egypt⌘**x**History⌘**y**To 332 B.C.
- 151   **0**⌘**a**United States⌘**x**Economic policy⌘**y**1981-

451   **0**⌘**w**nnaa⌘**a**Chino Valley, Ariz.

A data element followed by a subject subdivision does not end with a mark of punctuation unless that portion ends with an abbreviation, initialism, or open date.

- 151   **0**⌘**a**China⌘**x**History⌘**y**Han dynasty, 202 B.C.-220 A.D.⌘**x**Bibliography

### Spacing

No spaces are used in initialisms.

- 151   **0**⌘**a**Washington (D.C.)
- 151   **0**⌘**a**China⌘**x**History⌘**y**Han dynasty, 202 B.C.-220 A.D.

One space is used between preceding and succeeding initials if an abbreviation consists of more than a single letter.

- 151   **0**⌘**a**Vienna (W. Va.)
- 151   **0**⌘**a**Adelaide (S. Aust.)

A data element that contains an open-ended date ends with one space when it is followed by a subject subdivision.

- 151   **0**⌘**a**United States⌘**x**Foreign relations⌘**y**1981- ⌘**x**Periodicals

### Display Constant

- *[dash associated with the content of subfield ⌘x, ⌘y, or ⌘z]*

The dash (-) that precedes a subject subdivision in an extended subject heading is not carried in the USMARC record. It may be system generated as a display constant associated with the content of subfield ⌘x, ⌘y, or ⌘z.

*Content designated field:*

- 151   **0**⌘**a**United States⌘**x**Boundaries⌘**z**Canada

*Display example:*

United States—Boundaries—Canada

---

**RELATED USMARC DOCUMENT/FIELD**

Tracing and Reference Fields—General Information

---

**CONTENT DESIGNATOR HISTORY**

*#b Name following place as entry element [OBSOLETE]*

Subfield #b was made obsolete in 1987. A city section name entered under the name of a jurisdiction is contained in an X10 field. Records created before this change may contain an X51 field with a subfield #b for this type of name.





## 151 Heading--Geographic Name (NR)

### FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

This field contains a geographic name used as a heading in an established heading record (008/09, Kind of record, code a or f), a subdivision record (008/09, code d), or a reference record (008/09, code b, c, or g). In an established heading record or a subdivision record, field 151 contains the established form of a name. In records for references, this field contains an unestablished form of a name.

Guidelines for applying the content designators defined for field 151, input conventions, and national-level record requirements are given in the *X51 Geographic Names--General Information* section.

### ■ EXAMPLES

- 151    #0#aNorth End (Boston, Mass.)
  - 151    #0#ATramayes (France : Canton)
  - 151    #0#AGreat Lakes
  - 151    #0#AMississippi River
  - 151    #0#AGulf Stream
  - 151    #0#ATropics
  - 151    #0#AVenus (Planet)
  - 151    #0#AGreen River (Ky. : River)
  - 151    #0#AGreen River (Wyo.-Utah)
  - 151    #0#AAtlantic Wall (France and Belgium)
  - 151    #0#ADeveloping countries
  - 151    #0#AFort Alexander Indian Reserve (Man.)
  - 151    #0#AArlington National Cemetery (Va.)
  - 151    #0#AChorweiler (Cologne, Germany)
  - 151    #0#AUnited States#xForeign relations#zSoviet Union
- 

### RELATED USMARC DOCUMENT/FIELD

X51 Geographic Names--General Information







# Tracing and Reference Fields—General Information

		<i>National Level Requirement</i>
	<i>Tracing fields</i>	
4XX	See From Tracings (R)	A
5XX	See Also From Tracings (R)	A
	‡i Reference instruction phrase (NR)	A
	‡w Control subfield (NR)	A
	/0 Special relationship	A
	a Earlier heading	O
	b Later heading	O
	d Acronym	O
	f Musical composition	O
	g Broader term	O
	h Narrower term	O
	i Reference instruction phrase in subfield ‡i	O
	n Not applicable	O
	/1 Tracing use restriction	O
	a Name reference structure only	O
	b Subject reference structure only	O
	c Series reference structure only	O
	d Name and subject reference structures	O
	e Name and series reference structures	O
	f Subject and series reference structures	O
	g Name, subject, and series reference structures	O
	n Not applicable	O
	/2 Earlier form of heading	O
	a Pre-AACR 2 form of heading (national name authority file)	O
	e Earlier established form of heading (national authority file)	O
	o Earlier established form of heading (other authority file)	O
	n Not applicable	O
	/3 Reference display	O
	a Reference not displayed	O
	b Reference not displayed, field 664 used	O
	c Reference not displayed, field 663 used	O
	d Reference not displayed, field 665 used	O
	n Not applicable	O
	‡5 Institution to which field applies (NR)	A
	<i>Reference fields</i>	
260	Complex See Reference—Subject (R)	A
360	Complex See Also Reference—Subject (R)	A
663	Complex See Also Reference—Name (NR)	O
664	Complex See Reference—Name (NR)	O
665	History Reference (NR)	O
666	General Explanatory Reference—Name (NR)	O

## Tracings and References

### DEFINITION AND SCOPE

A cross reference leads from an unestablished heading to an established heading (see reference) or from an established heading to other established headings (see also reference). Actual cross references are generally not carried explicitly in authority records. Instead, variant form and related headings are carried in authority records in either *tracing* or *reference note* fields. Cross reference displays may be generated by combining the contents of a tracing or a reference note field and the 1XX field of a record.

**Tracing fields** lead directly from one heading to a single other heading. A 4XX See From Tracing field leads from an unestablished heading to an established heading. A 5XX See Also From Tracing field leads from an established heading to another established heading. Cross reference displays generated from the tracing fields are called *simple cross references*. In a simple cross reference display, the content of the 4XX or 5XX field is the *heading referred from*, and, following a reference instruction phrase, the content of the 1XX field is the *heading referred to*. In the tracing fields, the reference instruction phrase may be implicitly associated with either the field tag or a code in subfield #w/0 (Special relationship). In unusual cases, the reference instruction phrase may be carried explicitly in subfield #i (Reference instruction phrase).

100 10#aDe Angelini, Anna  
400 10#aAngelini, Anna de  
[Reference instruction phrase is associated with field tag 400.]

*Cross reference display example:*

Angelini, Anna de  
search under: De Angelini, Anna

The 4XX and 5XX fields are used only in established heading records (008/09, Kind of record, code a or f).

**Reference note fields** lead from one heading to one or more other headings. A reference note field is used when more complex reference instruction is needed than can be conveyed by one or more simple cross references generated from 4XX and/or 5XX tracing fields. Cross reference displays constructed from the reference note fields are *complex cross references*. In a complex cross reference display, the content of the 1XX field of a record is the *heading referred from*, and, following a reference instruction phrase, the reference note field contains the *heading(s) referred to*. In fields 260 and 360, the complete reference instruction may be a combination of a phrase implicitly associated with the field tag and explicit text in subfield #i (Explanatory text). In fields 663, 664, 665, and 666, the reference instruction text is contained in subfield #a (Explanatory text).

150 #0#AAmateurs' manuals  
260 #b#isubdivision#AAmateurs' manuals#iunder subjects, e.g.  
#aRadio-Amateurs' manuals  
[Reference instruction phrase is associated with field tag 260 and is also explicit in 260#i.]

## *Cross reference display example:*

Amateurs' manuals

search under: subdivision Amateurs' manuals under subjects, e.g.

Radio—Amateurs' manuals

\*\*\*\*\*

100 10#Arlen, Harold, #d1905-#tBloomer girl

664 #b#AFor collections beginning with this title search under #bArlen, Harold,  
1905-#tMusical comedies. Selections

[Reference instruction phrase is explicit in field 664#A.]

## *Cross reference display example:*

Arlen, Harold, 1905- Bloomer girl

For collections beginning with this title search under: Arlen Harold,

1905- Musical comedies. Selections

There are two types of reference note fields: 1) those used in established heading records (008/09, code a or f); and 2) those used in reference records (008/09, code b, c, or g). Fields 360, 663, and 665 are used in established heading records to lead from an established heading to other established headings. Fields 260, 664, and 666 are used in reference records to lead from an unestablished heading to established headings.

Current cataloging practice does not encourage the use of a reference note field if cross references generated from tracings in one or more 4XX and/or 5XX fields will provide satisfactory user guidance. For example, instead of carrying a 665 field in each of the established heading records involved in corporate body name changes, each name is traced in a 4XX or 5XX field. The earlier or later name relationship between each 4XX or 5XX field and the 1XX field is indicated by a code in subfield #w/0 (Special relationship).

## GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

Guidelines for applying subfields #i (Reference instruction phrase), #w (Control subject), and #5 (Institution to which field applies) in the 4XX and 5XX fields and examples of simple cross reference displays are provided in this section. Guidelines for applying the content designators for the name/term, title, and subject subdivision portions of the 4XX and 5XX tracing fields and for subfield #6 (Linkage) are provided in the *General Information* sections for each type of heading (X00 Personal Names; X10 Corporate Names; X11 Meeting Names; X30 Uniform Titles; X50 Topical Terms; X51 Geographic Names).

Examples of complex cross reference displays that may be generated from fields 260, 360, 663, 664, 665, and 666 are also provided in this section. Guidelines for applying the content designators for these fields are provided in the individual field descriptions.

## Alternate Graphic Representation

Subfield #6 (Linkage) is defined for all of the tracing and reference fields. The description of subfield #6 in field 663 (Complex See Also Reference—Name) also applies to each of these fields. It will be added to the other fields when they are reissued for other changes.



# Tracings and References

## ■ TRACING FIELDS--SIMPLE CROSS REFERENCES

Example cross references are generated for display from tracing fields. The following description related to the tracing fields is arranged by the source of the reference instruction phrase used in the cross reference: tag related, subfield  $\neq i$ , and subfield  $\neq w$ . The character positions defined for subfield  $\neq w$  are also described here.

### Tag Related Reference Instruction Phrase

---

A reference instruction phrase such as *see:* or *search under:* may be implicitly associated with a 4XX tracing field tag in an established heading record and may be used to generate a display of a cross reference. A reference instruction phrase such as *see also:* or *search also under:* may be implicitly associated with a 5XX tracing field in an established heading record and may be used to generate a display of a cross reference.

100 10 $\neq a$ Arief, Barda Nawawi, $\neq d$ 1943-  
400 00 $\neq a$ Barda Nawawi Arief, $\neq d$ 1943-

*Cross reference display example:*

Barda Nawawi Arief, 1943-  
search under: Arief, Barda Nawawi, 1943-

### $\neq i$ - Reference instruction phrase

---

Subfield  $\neq i$  contains a special reference instruction phrase that may be used in a cross reference display. When a tracing field contains subfield  $\neq i$ , control subfield  $\neq w/0$  contains code  $i$  (Reference instruction phrase in subfield  $\neq i$ ). Code  $i$  indicates that the generation of a tag related reference instruction phrase in a cross reference display should be suppressed. The content of subfield  $\neq i$  is the reference instruction phrase to be used in the cross reference display.

151  $\neq 0$  $\neq a$ Sri Lanka  
451  $\neq 0$  $\neq wib$  $\neq a$ Ceylon $\neq i$ For subject entries search under  
551  $\neq 0$  $\neq waa$  $\neq a$ Ceylon  
[Two cross references are required because of varying subject and name reference structures.]

*Cross reference from field 451 display example:*

Ceylon  
For subject entries search under: Sri Lanka

*Cross reference from field 551 display example:*

Ceylon  
search also under later heading: Sri Lanka

### $\neq w$ - Control subfield

---

Subfield  $\neq w$  contains up to four character positions (designated as  $\neq w/0$ ,  $\neq w/1$ , etc.) that indicate whether special instructions apply to the display of the 4XX or 5XX heading and whether a tracing is restricted to the reference structure of a particular type of authority. Subfield  $\neq w$  need not be used if none of the characteristics is applicable. Because the definitions of the codes in subfield  $\neq w$  are dependent on the character position in which they occur, the coding of any character position mandates that each preceding character position contains a code or a fill character ( $\neq$ ); succeeding character positions need not be used. For example, if  $\neq w/0$  and  $\neq w/1$  are not applicable but  $\neq w/2$  is applicable, then  $\neq w/0$  and  $\neq w/1$  each contain code  $n$  (Not applicable) or a fill character ( $\neq$ ).

## **≠w/0 - Special relationship**

Subfield ≠w/0 contains a one-character code that describes a relationship between a 1XX heading and a 4XX or 5XX heading that is more specific than the relationship implicit in the tag. The codes may be used to generate a special reference instruction phrase in a cross reference display.

### **a - Earlier heading**

Code a indicates that the established heading in the tracing field is an earlier name for the 1XX heading. The code may be used to generate a special reference instruction phrase such as *search also under the later heading:* in a cross reference display.

110 10 ≠aMissouri. ≠bState Highway Patrol. ≠bCriminal Records  
Division

510 10 ≠wa ≠aMissouri. ≠bState Highway Patrol. ≠bCriminal Records  
Section

*[The division was formerly called a section.]*

*Cross reference display example:*

Missouri. State Highway Patrol. Criminal Records Section  
search also under the later heading: Missouri. State  
Highway Patrol. Criminal Records Division

### **b - Later heading**

Code b indicates that the heading in the tracing field is a later name for the 1XX heading. The code may be used to generate a special reference instruction phrase such as *search also under the earlier heading:* in a cross reference display.

110 10 ≠aMissouri. ≠bState Highway Patrol. ≠bCriminal Records  
Section

510 10 ≠wb ≠aMissouri. ≠bState Highway Patrol. ≠bCriminal Records  
Division

*[The section is currently called a division.]*

*Cross reference display example:*

Missouri. State Highway Patrol. Criminal Records Division  
search also under the earlier heading: Missouri. State  
Highway Patrol. Criminal Records Section

## Tracings and References

### d - Acronym

Code d indicates that the heading in the tracing field is an acronym for the 1XX heading. The code may be used to generate a special reference instruction phrase such as *search under the full form of the heading*: in a cross reference display.

110 20#ªAssociação Brasileira para o Desenvolvimento das  
Indústrias de Base  
410 20#wd#ªAbdib

*Cross reference display example:*

Abdib

search under the full form of the heading: Associação  
Brasileira para o Desenvolvimento das Indústrias de Base

### f - Musical composition

Code f indicates that the heading in the tracing field is for a literary work upon which the musical composition in the 1XX heading field is based. The code may be used to generate a special reference instruction phrase such as *for a musical composition based on this work, search also under*: in a cross reference display. References for this type of relationship are not used in AACR 2 formulated tracing fields. They may occur in pre-AACR 2 formulated 5XX See Also From Tracing fields.

100 10#ªDebussy, Claude,#d1862-1918.#tChute de la maison Usher  
500 10#wf#ªPoe, Edgar Allan,#d1809-1849.#tFall of the house of  
Usher

*Cross reference display example:*

Poe, Edgar Allan, 1809-1849. Fall of the house of Usher

for a musical composition based on this work, search also  
under: Debussy, Claude, 1862-1918. Chute de la maison Usher

### g - Broader term

Code g indicates that the heading in the tracing field is a broader term than the 1XX heading. The code may be used to generate a special reference instruction phrase such as *search also under the narrower term*: in a cross reference display.

150 #0#ªToes  
550 #0#wg#ªFoot

*Cross reference display example:*

Foot

search also under the narrower term: Toes

## **h - Narrower term**

Code h indicates that the heading in the tracing field is a narrower term than the 1XX heading. The code may be used to generate a special reference instruction phrase such as *search also under the broader term:* in a cross reference display.

150 #0#aFoot

550 #w#wh#aToes

*Cross reference display example:*  
Toes

search also under the broader term: Foot

## **i - Reference instruction phrase in subfield #i**

Code i is used in conjunction with subfield #i (Reference instruction phrase). Guidelines for applying code i are given under the description of subfield #i.

## **n - Not applicable**

Code n indicates that the relationship between the heading in the tracing field and the 1XX heading is not one of the special relationships for which other codes are defined in subfield #w/0. A tag related reference instruction phrase such as *search under:* or *search also under:* may be used in a cross reference display from the related heading. If code n is applicable, subfield #w/0 need not be coded unless a subsequent character position is required.

## **#w/1 - Tracing use restriction**

Subfield #w/1 contains a one-character code that specifies the authority reference structure in which the use of a 4XX or 5XX tracing to generate a cross reference is appropriate. When the tracing reference structure use differs from the 1XX heading use, a tracing use restriction code in subfield #w/1 enables suppression or generation of the cross reference as required for the type of reference structure.

**a - Name reference structure only**

**b - Subject reference structure only**

**c - Series reference structure only**

**d - Name and subject reference structures**

**e - Name and series reference structures**

**f - Subject and series reference structures**

**g - Name, subject, and series reference structures**

**n - Not applicable**

Code n indicates that the authority structure use is the same as the 1XX heading bibliographic record use coded in 008/14-16. If code n is applicable, subfield #w/1 need not be coded unless a subsequent character position is required.

## Tracings and References

### ‡w/2 - Earlier form of heading

Subfield ‡w/2 contains a one-character code that indicates whether the 4XX tracing is an earlier form in which the name or subject was established either in the relevant national authority file or in an authority file other than the national authority file.

- **Precedence of codes**—When more than one code applies to a 4XX tracing, the following table is used to determine the precedence status of each code. Preference is given to codes higher on the lists. The *Names* column covers records for names formulated according to descriptive cataloging rules (008/10, not code n). The *Subjects* column covers records for subjects formulated according to subject heading system/thesaurus conventions (008/11, not code n; 008/10, code n).

<u>Names</u>	<u>Subjects</u>
n Not applicable	n Not applicable
a Pre-AACR 2 form of heading (national name authority file)	e Earlier established form of heading (national authority file)
e Earlier established form of heading (national authority file)	o Earlier established form of heading (other authority file)
o Earlier established form of heading (other authority file)	

**a - Pre-AACR 2 form of heading (national name authority file)**

Code a indicates that the unestablished heading in the tracing field is a form of the 1XX name heading that was established in the national name authority file under pre-AACR 2 descriptive cataloging rules and was the established heading at the time of the changeover to the AACR 2 rules in 1981.

100 10‡aCallaghan, Bede,‡cSir,‡d1912-  
400 10‡wnna‡aCallaghan, Bede Bertrand,‡cSir,‡d1912-

*Cross reference display example:*

Callaghan, Bede Bertrand, Sir, 1912-

Search under the later form of the heading: Callaghan,  
Bede, Sir, 1912-

**e - Earlier established form of heading (national authority file)**

Code e, in a record containing a 1XX name or subject heading, indicates that the unestablished heading in the tracing field is a form of the heading that was formerly established in the relevant national authority file under a situation other than that specified

## Tracings and References

by code a. For example, code e is used when the 4XX tracing is an earlier form of a 1XX topical subject term heading that was formerly the established form in the national authority file. It is also used when the tracing is a pre-AACR 2 form of a name, name/title, or uniform title heading that had been established earlier in the national authority file but was not the established heading at the time of the changeover to the AACR 2 rules.

150 ⚭aMargarine

450 ⚭wnne⚭aOleomargarine

151 ⚭aBoston (England)

451 ⚭wnne⚭aBoston (Lincolnshire)

### o - Earlier established form of heading (other authority file)

Code o indicates that the unestablished heading in the tracing field is an earlier form of the 1XX name or subject heading that was formerly established in an authority file other than the relevant national authority file.

### n - Not applicable

Code n indicates that the tracing does not contain a formerly established form of the 1XX heading. If code n is applicable, subfield ⚭w/2 need not be coded unless a subsequent character position is required.

### ⚭w/3 - Reference display

Subfield ⚭w/3 contains a one-character code that enables the generation or suppression of a cross reference from a 4XX or 5XX field.

#### a - Reference not displayed

Code a indicates that the generation of a cross reference display from a tracing field should be suppressed. Code a is used when the reason for suppression is not covered by code b, c, or d.

110 20⚭aEntomological Society of Karachi

510 20⚭wanna⚭aKarachi Entomological Society

*[Cross reference is suppressed because heading has not been used.]*

#### b - Reference not displayed, field 664 used

Code b indicates that the generation of a cross reference display from a tracing field in an established heading record (008/09, Kind of record, code a) should be suppressed because of the existence of a separate reference record (008/09, code c) containing field 664 (Complex See Reference--Name).

See the field 664 description for examples of subfield ⚭w/3 containing code b in tracing fields in established heading records. See the *Reference Fields--Complex References* description in this section for examples of cross reference displays generated from field 664.

## Tracings and References

### c - Reference not displayed, field 663 used

Code c indicates that the generation of a cross reference display from a tracing field in an established heading record (008/09, Kind of record, code a) should be suppressed because the record also contains a 663 field (Complex See Also Reference-Name).

See the field 663 description for examples of subfield  $\#w/3$  containing code c in tracing fields in established heading records. See the *Reference Fields-Complex Cross References* description in this section for examples of cross reference displays generated from field 663.

### d - Reference not displayed, field 665 used

Code d indicates that the generation of a cross reference display from a tracing field in an established heading record (008/09, Kind of record, code a) should be suppressed because the record also contains a 665 field (History Reference).

See the field 665 description for examples of subfield  $\#w/3$  containing code d in tracing fields in established heading records. See the *Reference Field-Complex Cross References* description in this section for examples of cross reference displays generated from field 665.

### n - Not applicable

Code n indicates that there is no reference display restriction on the tracing field. If code n is applicable, subfield  $\#w/3$  need not be coded.

### $\#5$ - Institution to which field applies

Subfield  $\#5$  contains the National Union Catalog (NUC) symbol of the organization that has added to an existing national authority file record a 4XX or 5XX tracing field containing a variant form of the 1XX heading or another heading related to the 1XX heading. It identifies an institution-specific tracing that may or may not apply to a universal use of the authority record. (The NUC symbol is an authoritative-agency data element. The Library of Congress maintains the *Symbols of American Libraries* and is the authoritative agency.) Subfield  $\#5$  is always the last subfield in the field.

040  $\#aDLC\#cDLC$

100  $\#aBrown, George Douglas, \#d1869-1902$

400  $\#aKing, Kennedy \#5NNU$

670  $\#aHis The house with green shutters, 1985; \#bt.p. (George Douglas Brown)$

[Tracing for pseudonym added to a national authority file record by New York University.]

## ■ REFERENCE FIELDS--COMPLEX CROSS REFERENCES

Complex cross references are carried directly in records as reference note fields. The following description is arranged by the source of the reference instruction phrase: tag related (with subfield  $\#i$ ) and subfield  $\#a$ .

## Tag related reference instruction phrase with subfield #i

A 260 field in a reference record may be used to generate a display of a cross reference with a reference instruction phrase such as *see*: or *search under*:. A 360 field in an established heading record may be used to generate a cross reference with a reference instruction phrase such as *see also*: or *search also under*:. The text in subfield #i (Explanatory text) augments the tag related instruction phrase.

### 260 Complex See Reference-Subject:

008/09 b [reference record (untraced reference)]

150 #a Catalogue . . .

260 ##iSubject headings beginning with the word #aCatalog

### Cross reference display example:

Catalogue . . .

search under: Subject headings beginning with the word Catalog

\*\*\*\*\*

### 360 Complex See Also Reference-Subject:

008/09 a [established heading record]

100 00#aMary, #cBlessed Virgin, Saint #xApparitions and miracles

360 ##inames of particular apparitions and miracles, e.g. #aFatima, Our Lady of

### Cross reference display example:

Mary, Blessed Virgin, Saint-Apparitions and miracles

search also under: names of particular apparitions and miracles, e.g. Fatima, Our Lady of

## #a - Explanatory text

Subfield #a contains a reference instruction phrase in reference fields 663, 664, 665, and 666.

### 663 Complex See Also Reference-Name:

008/09 a [established heading record]

100 10#aJapp, Alexander H. #q(Alexander Hay), #d1839-1905

663 ##aFor works of this author written under pseudonyms, search also under #bGray, E. Condor, 1839-1905 and #bPage, H. A., 1839-1905

### Cross reference display example:

Japp, Alexander H. (Alexander Hay), 1839-1905

For works of this author written under pseudonyms, search also

under: Gray, E. Condor, 1839-1905 and Page, H. A., 1839-1905

[The cross references from Gray and Page are similarly constructed.]

\*\*\*\*\*



## Tracings and References

### 664 Complex See Reference--Name:

008/09 c [reference record (traced reference)]

100 10# aReger, Max# d1873-1916.# tDies irae

664 \$b# aFor this movement included in the composer's unfinished Requiem search under# bReger, Max, 1873-1916.# tRequiem (Mass)

#### Cross reference display example:

Reger, Max, 1873-1916. Dies irae

For this movement included in the composer's unfinished Requiem search under: Reger, Max, 1873-1916. Requiem (Mass)

\*\*\*\*\*

### 666 General Explanatory Reference--Name:

008/09 b [reference record (untraced reference)]

110 20# aAktiebolaget . . .

666 \$b# aNames of corporate bodies beginning with this word are entered under the next word in the name.

#### Cross reference display example:

Aktiebolaget . . .

Names of corporate bodies beginning with this word are entered under the next word in the name.

\*\*\*\*\*

### 665 History Reference:

008/09 a [established heading record]

110 10# aConnecticut.# bDept. of Social Services

665 \$b# aIn Jan. 1979 the Connecticut Dept. of Social Services split to form the Dept. of Human Resources and the Dept. of Income Maintenance. # aWorks by these bodies are found under the following headings according to the name used at the time of publication: # aConnecticut Dept. of Social Services.# aConnecticut. Dept. of Human Resources.# aConnecticut. Dept. of Income Maintenance.# aSUBJECT ENTRY: # aWorks about these bodies are entered under one or more of the names resulting from the separation. Works limited in coverage to the pre-separation period are entered under the name of the original body.

#### Cross reference display example:

Connecticut. Dept. of Social Services

In Jan. 1979 the Connecticut Dept. of Social Services split to form the Dept. of Human Resources and the Dept. of Income Maintenance. Works by these bodies are found under the following headings according to the name used at the time of publication:

Connecticut. Dept. of Social Services

Connecticut. Dept. of Human Resources

Connecticut. Dept. of Income Maintenance

SUBJECT ENTRY: Works about these bodies are entered under one or more of the names resulting from the separation. Works limited in coverage to the pre-separation period are entered under the name of the original body.  
[The cross references from the other corporate names are similarly constructed.]

### INPUT CONVENTIONS

The general input conventions for the 4XX and 5XX tracing fields are provided in the *General Information* sections for each type of heading (X00 Personal Names; X10 Corporate Names; X11 Meeting Names; X30 Uniform Titles; X50 Topical Terms; X51 Geographic Names.) The input conventions for the Reference fields are provided in the description of each field.

### Display Constants for Cross References

In the 4XX and 5XX tracing fields, reference instruction phrases such as those listed below are not carried in the USMARC record. They may be system generated as display constants associated with the code in subfield  $\neq$ w/0 or /2 or the field tag.

#### Subfield $\neq$ w/0 code related:

- a search also under [see also] the later heading:
- b search also under [see also] the earlier heading:
- d search under [see] the full form of the heading:
- g search also under [see also] the narrower term:
- h search also under [see also] the broader term:
- n [*A tag-related reference instruction phrase may be used.*]

#### Subfield $\neq$ w/2 code related:

- a search under [see] the later form of heading:

#### Tag-related:

see:  
see also:  
search under:  
search also under:

In reference fields 260 and 360, the complete reference instruction phrase, such as *see*, *see also*, *search under*, *search also under* (text).

---

### RELATED USMARC DOCUMENT/FIELD

*Symbols of American Libraries*



**260 Complex See Reference—Subject (R)****A**Indicators

First Undefined  
 ⌀ Undefined

*M**M*

Second Undefined  
 ⌀ Undefined

*M**M*Subfield Codes

‡a Heading referred to (R)  
 ‡i Explanatory text (R)

*M**M***FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE**

This field contains the *explanatory text* and the *headings referred to* that are required when relationships exist between an unestablished subject and established subjects that cannot be adequately conveyed by one or more simple cross references generated from 4XX See From Tracing fields in established heading records. The field is appropriate only in reference records (008/09, Kind of record, code b, c, or g) for subjects.

The 1XX field in the record contains the unestablished subject heading referred from. Field 260 contains the explanatory text for the see reference and the established headings referred to. The unestablished form of the heading contained in field 1XX of the reference record may either be traced in a 4XX field or noted in a 681 field (Subject Example Tracing Note) in the record for each established heading referred to in the 260 field.

A cross reference display may be constructed from the 1XX and 260 fields of the reference record. The subfield coding allows variation in the appearance of the display reference, e.g., the data in subfield ‡a may be highlighted.

**GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS****■ INDICATORS**

Both indicator positions are undefined; each contains a blank (⌀).

Subfield #a contains an established heading to which the unestablished form in field 1XX of the record refers. The headings referred to may be complete established headings or a part of an established heading, such as a subject subdivision or a partial heading with generalized usage descriptors enclosed in brackets. No subelements of the headings referred to are separately subfield coded. Adjacent headings referred to may be contained in a single subfield #a.

Subfield `#i` contains the explanatory text of the see reference. The text may be broken up by subfield `#a` data and may be only a connector term, such as *e.g.*, or *and*.

\*\*\*\*\*

008/09 a [established heading record]  
150 ~~W0~~ aSpanish language+ xProvincialisms+ zSouthwestern States  
681 ~~W0~~ iExample under reference from+ aChicano language

Reference records must contain a Leader, a Directory, and the following variable fields: 001 (Control Number), 005 (Date and Time of Latest Transaction), 008 (Field-Length Data Elements), 040 (Cataloging Source), and 1XX (Heading).

**Display Constants**

see:               *[associated with field tag]*  
search under:   *[associated with field tag]*

A reference instruction phrase such as *see:* or *search under:* is not carried in the USMARC record. Such a phrase may be system generated as a display constant associated with the field tag. Examples of cross reference displays are provided in the *Tracing and Reference Fields—General Information* section.

---

**RELATED USMARC DOCUMENT/FIELD**

681 Subject Example Tracing Note  
Tracing and Reference Fields—General Information



**360 Complex See Also Reference—Subject (R)**

A

Indicators

<u>First</u>	Undefined	M
Ø	Undefined	M
<u>Second</u>	Undefined	M
Ø	Undefined	M

Subfield Codes

‡a	Heading referred to (R)	M
‡i	Explanatory text (R)	M

**FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE**

This field contains the *explanatory text* and the *headings referred to* that are required when relationships exist between an established subject and other established subjects that cannot be adequately conveyed by one or more simple cross references generated from 5XX See Also From Tracing fields. The field is appropriate only in established heading records (008/09, Kind of record, code a or f) for subjects.

The 1XX field in the record contains an established subject heading referred from. Field 360 contains the explanatory text for the see also reference and the other established headings referred to. The heading in the 1XX field is generally not traced in a 5XX field in the records for the subject headings referred to in field 360. Instead, the 1XX heading is noted in a 681 field (Subject Example Tracing Note) in the record for each subject heading referred to in the 360 field.

A cross reference display may be constructed from the 1XX field in the record. The subfield coding allows variation in the appearance of the display. e.g., the data in subfield ‡a may be highlighted.

**GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DE****■ INDICATORS**

Both indicator positions are undefined; eac



## ■ SUBFIELD CODES

## ‡a - Heading referred to

Subfield ‡a contains the related established headings to which the heading in field 1XX of the record refers. The headings referred to may be complete established headings or a part of an established heading, such as a subject subdivision or a partial heading with generalized usage descriptors enclosed in brackets. No subelements of the headings referred to are separately subfield coded. Adjacent headings referred to may be contained in a single subfield ‡a.

## ‡i - Explanatory text

Subfield ‡i contains the explanatory text of the see also reference. The text may be broken up by subfield ‡a data and may be only a connector term, such as *e.g.* or *and*.

008/09 a *[established heading record]*

100 00‡aMary,‡cBlessed Virgin, Saint‡xApparitions and miracles

360 ‡‡‡inames of particular apparitions and miracles, e.g.‡aFatima,  
Our Lady of

008/09 a *[established heading record]*

150 ‡0‡aFatima, Our Lady of

681 ‡‡‡iExample under‡aMary, Blessed Virgin, Saint—Apparitions and  
miracles

\*\*\*\*\*

008/09 a *[established heading record]*

130 ‡0‡aBible‡xComparative studies

360 ‡‡‡isubdivision‡aRelation to [the Old Testament, Matthew, Psalms,  
etc.]‡iunder the Bible and parts of the Bible, e.g.‡aBible. N.T.—  
Relation to the Old Testament; Bible. N.T. Matthew—Relation  
to Psalms; Bible. O.T. Psalms—Relation to Mark;‡ietc.

008/09 a *[established heading record]*

130 ‡0‡aBible.‡pN.T.‡xRelation to the Old Testament

681 ‡‡‡iExample under‡aBible—Comparative studies  
*[The same 681 field is used in the records for the other subject  
headings referred to in the 360 field.]*

## INPUT CONVENTIONS

### Display Constants

see also:           *[associated with the field tag]*  
search also under: *[associated with the field tag]*

A reference instruction phrase such as *see also:* or *search also under:* is not carried in the USMARC record. Such a phrase may be system generated as a display constant associated with the field tag. Examples of cross reference displays are provided in the *Tracing and Reference Fields—General Information* section.

---

### RELATED USMARC DOCUMENT/FIELD

681 Subject Example Tracing Note  
Tracing and Reference Fields—General Information



## 400 See From Tracing—Personal Name (R)

### FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

This field contains a tracing for a personal name *see from reference*. It is used in established heading records (008/09, Kind of record, code a or f) to trace a see from reference from a personal name not used to an established heading.

The content designators used in the name, title, and subject subdivision portions of field 400 are the same as those defined for fields 100 (Heading—Personal Name) and 500 (See Also From Tracing—Personal Name). Guidelines for applying these content designators for field 400, input conventions, and national level record requirements are given in the *X00 Personal Names—General Information* section.

The tracing subfields #w (Control subfield) and #i (Reference instruction phrase) are defined only for use in fields 400 and 500. Guidelines for applying these two subfield codes and national level record requirements are given in the *Tracing and Reference Fields—General Information* section.

### ■ EXAMPLES

100 00#aBhagata Singha,#d1921-  
400 10#aSingh, Bhagat,#c1921-

100 10#aBeethoven, Ludwig van,#d1770-1827.#tConcertos,#mviolin,  
orchestra,#nop. 61,#rD major  
400 10#aBeethoven, Ludwig van,#d1770-1827.#tKonzert für Violine und  
Orchester D-Dur op. 61

100 00#aJesus Christ#xHistory of doctrines#yEarly church, ca. 30-600  
400 00#aJesus Christ#xInterpretations, New Testament

100 30#aAnjou, House of  
400 30#aAngið, House of

### RELATED USMARC DOCUMENT/FIELD

X00 Personal Names—General Information  
Tracing and Reference Fields—General Information



## 410 See From Tracing—Corporate Name (R)

### FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

This field contains a tracing for a corporate name *see from reference*. It is used in established heading records (008/09, Kind of record, code a or f) to trace a see from reference from a corporate name not used to an established heading.

The content designators used in the name, title, and subject subdivision portions of field 410 are the same as those defined for fields 110 (Heading—Corporate Name) and 510 (See Also From Tracing—Corporate Name). Guidelines for applying these content designators for field 410, input conventions, and national level record requirements are given in the *X10 Corporate Names—General Information* section.

The tracing subfields #w (Control subfield) and #i (Reference instruction phrase) are defined only for use in fields 410 and 510. Guidelines for applying these two subfield codes and national level record requirements are given in the *Tracing and Reference Fields—General Information* section.

### ■ EXAMPLES

- 110 10#aHonduras.#bOficina de Estudios Territoriales
- 410 10#aHonduras.#bEstudios Territoriales, Oficina de
  
- 110 10#aVenezuela.#tReforma del control de cambio no. 2.#lEnglish & Spanish
- 410 10#aVenezuela.#tAmendment of exchange agreement no. 2
  
- 151 10#aChinatown (San Francisco, Calif.)
- 410 10#aSan Francisco (Calif.).#bChinatown
  
- 110 20#aConföderation Iranischer Studenten (N.U.)
- 410 20#aCISNU
- 410 20#wanna#aConföderation Iranischer Studenten
  
- 110 20#aLherminier (Firm)
- 410 20#aPierre Lherminier (Firm)
  
- 130 10#aLienzo Totomixtlahuaca
- 410 20#aCentro de Estudios de Historia de México.#kManuscript.#sCódice  
Conдумex

### RELATED USMARC DOCUMENT/FIELD

X10 Corporate Names—General Information  
Tracing and Reference Fields—General Information



## 411 See From Tracing—Meeting Name (R)

### FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

This field contains a tracing for a meeting name *see from reference*. It is used in established heading records (008/09, Kind of record, code a or f) to trace a see from reference from a meeting name not used to an established heading.

The content designators used in the name, title, and subject subdivision portions of field 411 are the same as those defined for fields 111 (Heading—Meeting Name) and 511 (See Also From Tracing—Meeting Name). Guidelines for applying these content designators for field 411, input conventions, and national level record requirements are given in the *X11 Meeting Names—General Information* section.

The tracing subfields #w (Control subfield) and #i (Reference instruction phrase) are defined only for use in fields 411 and 511. Guidelines for applying these two subfield codes and national level record requirements are given in the *Tracing and Reference Fields—General Information* section.

### ■ EXAMPLES

111 20#aInternational Symposium on Laser Anemometry  
411 20#aSymposium on Laser Anemometry, International

111 20#aBayreuther Festspiele.#eOrchester  
411 10#wnaa#aBayreuth, Ger. (City).#qFestspiele.#eOrchester

111 20#aJakob-Stainer-Tagung#d(1983 :#cInnsbruck, Austria)  
411 20#aJakob-Stainer-Symposium#d(1983 :#cInnsbruck, Austria)

111 20#aInternational Population Conference#d(1959 :#cVienna, Austria).  
#eWorking Committee of the Conference  
411 20#aInternational Population Conference#d(1959 :#cVienna, Austria).  
#eArbeitsausschuss des Kongresses

130 00#aPublications of the Carlsberg Expedition to Phoenicia  
411 20#aCarlsberg Expedition to Phoenicia#d(1958-1959).#tPublications of the  
Carlsberg Expedition to Phoenicia

### RELATED USMARC DOCUMENT/FIELD

X11 Meeting Names—General Information  
Tracing and Reference Fields—General Information





## 430 See From Tracing—Uniform Title (R)

### FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

This field contains a tracing for a uniform title *see from reference*. It is used in established heading records (008/09, Kind of record, code a or f) to trace a see from reference from a uniform title not used to an established heading.

The content designators used in the title and subject subdivision portions of field 430 are the same as those defined for fields 130 (Heading—Uniform Title) and 530 (See Also From Tracing—Uniform Title). Guidelines for applying these content designators for field 430, input conventions, and national level record requirements are given in the *X30 Uniform Titles—General Information* section.

The tracing subfields #w (Control subfield) and #i (Reference instruction phrase) are defined only for use in fields 430 and 530. Guidelines for applying these two subfield codes and national level record requirements are given in the *Tracing and Reference Fields—General Information* section.

### ■ EXAMPLES

130 #0#aCollection Les Grandes familles industrielles

430 #0#aGrandes familles industrielles

100 10#aLewis, C. S.#q(Clive Staples),#d1898-1963.#tChronicles of Narnia  
(Collier Books (Firm))

430 #0#aChronicles of Narnia (Collier Books (Firm))

130 #0#aThémis.#pGestion

430 #0#aGestion (Presses universitaires de France)

130 #0#aBible#xInfluence#xCivilization, Medieval

430 #0#aBible#xInfluence#yMiddle Ages

150 #0#aIran in the Koran

430 #0#aKoran#zIran

### RELATED USMARC DOCUMENT/FIELD

X30 Uniform Titles—General Information

Tracing and Reference Fields—General Information



## 450 See From Tracing—Topical Term (R)

### FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

This field contains a tracing for a topical term *see from reference*. It is used in established heading records (008/09, Kind of record, code a or f) to trace a see from reference from a topical heading not used to an established heading.

The content designators used in the main term and subject subdivision portions of field 450 are the same as those defined for fields 150 (Heading—Topical Term) and 550 (See Also From Tracing—Topical Term). Guidelines for applying these content designators for field 450, input conventions, and national level record requirements are given in the *X50 Topical Terms—General Information* section.

The tracing subfields #w (Control subfield) and #i (Reference instruction phrase) are defined only for use in fields 450 and 550. Guidelines for applying these two subfield codes and national level record requirements are given in the *Tracing and Reference Fields—General Information* section.

### ■ EXAMPLES

- 150 #0#aAfrican drama (English)
  - 450 #0#aEnglish drama#xAfrican authors
  
  - 150 #0#aMusic#xTheory#y15th century
  - 450 #0#aMusic#y15th century#xTheory
  
  - 150 #0#aGrammar, Comparative and general#xExclamations
  - 450 #0#aExclamations (Linguistics)
- 

### RELATED USMARC DOCUMENT/FIELD

- X50 Topical Terms—General Information
- Tracing and Reference Fields—General Information



## 451 See From Tracing—Geographic Name (R)

### FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

This field contains a tracing for a geographic name *see from reference*. It is used in established heading records (008/09, Kind of record, code a or f) to trace a *see from reference* from a geographic name not used to an established heading.

The content designators used in the name and subject subdivision portions of field 451 are the same as those defined for fields 151 (Heading—Geographic Name) and 551 (See Also From Tracing—Geographic Name). Guidelines for applying these content designators for field 451, input conventions, and national level record requirements are given in the *X51 Geographic Names—General Information* section.

The tracing subfields  $\dagger w$  (Control subfield) and  $\dagger i$  (Reference instruction phrase) are defined only for use in fields 451 and 551. Guidelines for applying these two subfield codes and national level record requirements are given in the *Tracing and Reference Fields—General Information* section.

### ■ EXAMPLES

151	$\dagger 0 \dagger a$ Ursa Major
451	$\dagger 0 \dagger a$ Dipper (Constellation)
151	$\dagger 0 \dagger a$ Adirondack Mountains (N.Y.)
451	$\dagger 0 \dagger a$ Adirondacks (N.Y.)
151	$\dagger 0 \dagger a$ Fort Lesley J. McNair (Washington, D.C.)
451	$\dagger 0 \dagger a$ Washington Barracks (Washington, D.C.)
151	$\dagger 0 \dagger a$ Medina (Ohio)
451	$\dagger 0 \dagger wnnaa \dagger a$ Medina, Ohio

---

### RELATED USMARC DOCUMENT/FIELD

X51 Geographic Names—General Information  
Tracing and Reference Fields—General Information



## 500 See Also From Tracing—Personal Name (R)

### FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

This field contains a tracing for a personal name *see also from reference*. It is used in established heading records (008/09, Kind of record, code a or f) to trace a see also from reference from an established personal name to a related established heading.

The content designators used in the name, title, and subject subdivision portions of field 500 are the same as those defined for fields 100 (Heading—Personal Name) and 400 (See From Tracing—Personal Name). Guidelines for applying these content designators for field 500, input conventions, and national level record requirements are given in the *X00 Personal Names—General Information* section.

The tracing subfields #w (Control subfield) and #i (Reference instruction phrase) are defined only for use in fields 400 and 500. Guidelines for applying these two subfield codes and national level record requirements are given in the *Tracing and Reference Fields—General Information* section.

### ■ EXAMPLES

```

110 20#aCorinthian Hall (Kansas City, Mo.)
500 10#wg#aLong, Robert Alexander,#d1850-1934#xHomes and
      haunts#zMissouri

100 10#aFauré, Gabriel,#d1845-1924.#tBallades,#mpiano,#nop. 19
500 10#aFauré, Gabriel,#d1845-1924.#tBallades,#mpiano orchestra,#nop. 19

100 30#aVan Horn family
500 30#aHorn family

```

---

### RELATED USMARC DOCUMENT/FIELD

X00 Personal Names—General Information  
 Tracing and Reference Fields—General Information





## 510 See Also From Tracing—Corporate Name (R)

### FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

This field contains a tracing for a corporate name *see also from reference*. It is used in established heading records (008/09, Kind of record, code a or f) to trace a see also from reference from an established corporate name to a related established heading.

The content designators used in the name, title, and subject subdivision portions of field 510 are the same as those defined for fields 110 (Heading—Corporate Name) and 410 (See From Tracing—Corporate Name). Guidelines for applying these content designators for field 510, input conventions, and national level record requirements are given in the *X10 Corporate Names—General Information* section.

The tracing subfields #w (Control subfield) and #i (Reference instruction phrase) are defined only for use in fields 410 and 510. Guidelines for applying these two subfield codes and national level record requirements are given in the *Tracing and Reference Fields—General Information* section.

### ■ EXAMPLES

- 110 20#aOklahoma Council on Juvenile Justice
  - 510 20#wb#aOklahoma Council on Juvenile Delinquency
  
  - 110 20#aAssociation for Computing Machinery.#bSpecial Interest Group on  
Personal Computing
  - 510 20#wb#aAssociation for Computing Machinery.#bSpecial Interest Group on  
Small and Personal Computing Systems and Applications
  
  - 110 10#aMaryland.#bAir Management Administration
  - 510 10#wa#aMaryland.#bAir Quality Programs
- 

### RELATED USMARC DOCUMENT/FIELD

X10 Corporate Names—General Information  
Tracing and Reference Fields—General Information



## 511 See Also From Tracing—Meeting Name (R)

### FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

This field contains a tracing for a meeting name *see also from reference*. It is used in established heading records (008/09, Kind of record, code a or f) to trace a see also from reference from an established meeting name to a related established heading.

The content designators used in the name, title, and subject subdivision portions of field 511 are the same as those defined for fields 111 (Heading—Meeting Name) and 411 (See From Tracing—Meeting Name). Guidelines for applying these content designators for field 511, input conventions, and national level record requirements are given in the *X11 Meeting Names—General Information* section.

The tracing subfields #w (Control subfield) and #i (Reference instruction phrase) are defined only for use in fields 411 and 511. Guidelines for applying these two subfield codes and national level record requirements are given in the *Tracing and Reference Fields—General Information* section.

### ■ EXAMPLES

- 111 20#aInternational Drip Irrigation Congress
  - 511 20#w#aInternational Drip Irrigation Meeting
  - 511 20#wb#aInternational Drip/Trickle Irrigation Congress
  
  - 111 20#aCongrès européen de droit rural
  - 511 20#w#aColloque européen de droit rural
  
  - 111 20#aEntretiens de Bichat
  - 511 20#wb#aEntretiens de Bichat Pitié-Salpêtrière
  
  - 110 10#aUnited States.#bDelegation to the Mexico-United States  
Interparliamentary Conference, 19th, 1979, Mexico City and Ixtapa,  
Mexico
  - 511 20#aMexico-United States Interparliamentary Conference.#eDelegations
- 

### RELATED USMARC DOCUMENT/FIELD

X11 Meeting Names—General Information  
Tracing and Reference Fields—General Information



## 530 See Also From Tracing—Uniform Title (R)

### FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

This field contains a tracing for a uniform title *see also from reference*. It is used in established heading records (008/09, Kind of record, code a or f) to trace a see also from reference from an established uniform title to a related established heading.

The content designators used in the title and subject subdivision portions of field 530 are the same as those defined for fields 130 (Heading—Uniform Title) and 430 (See From Tracing—Uniform Title). Guidelines for applying these content designators for field 530, input conventions, and national level record requirements are given in the *X30 Uniform Titles—General Information* section.

The tracing subfields *+*w (Control subfield) and *+*i (Reference instruction phrase) are defined only for use in fields 430 and 530. Guidelines for applying these two subfield codes and national level record requirements are given in the *Tracing and Reference Fields—General Information* section.

### ■ EXAMPLES

130 *00#aHabakkuk commentary*

530 *00#aDead Sea scrolls*

130 *00#aOECD reviews of national policy for education*

530 *00#aReviews of national policies for education*

| 130 *00#aData report (Maryland. Air Quality Programs)*

| 530 *00#wb#aData report (Maryland. Air Management Administration)*

130 *00#aDossiers Cinéma d'aujourd'hui*

530 *00#aCollection Cinéma d'aujourd'hui.#pDossiers*

130 *00#aPublicaciones del Archivo Histórico de la Provincia de Buenos Aires.#pDocumentos del archivo*

530 *00#wb#aPublicaciones del Archivo Histórico de la Provincia de "Ricardo Levene."#nIII.#pDocumentos del archivo*

150 *00#aGods, Vedic*

530 *00#wg#aVedas#xCriticism, interpretation, etc.*

---

### RELATED USMARC DOCUMENT/FIELD

X30 Uniform Titles—General Information

Tracing and Reference Fields—General Inform



## 550 See Also From Tracing—Topical Term (R)

### FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

This field contains a tracing for a topical term *see also from reference*. It is used in established heading records (008/09, Kind of record, code a or f) to trace a see also from reference from an established topical heading to a related established heading.

The content designators used in the main term and subject subdivision portions of field 550 are the same as those defined for fields 150 (Heading—Topical Term) and 450 (See From Tracing—Topical Term). Guidelines for applying these content designators for field 550, input conventions, and national level record requirements are given in the *X50 Topical Terms—General Information* section.

The tracing subfields  $\dagger w$  (Control subfield) and  $\dagger i$  (Reference instruction phrase) are defined only for use in fields 450 and 550. Guidelines for applying these two subfield codes and national level record requirements are given in the *Tracing and Reference Fields—General Information* section.

### ■ EXAMPLES

150  $\dagger 0\dagger a$ Tritheism

550  $\dagger 0\dagger wg\dagger a$ God

150  $\dagger 0\dagger a$ Sand Creek, Battle of, 1864

550  $\dagger 0\dagger wg\dagger a$ Indians of North America $\dagger x$ Wars $\dagger y$ 1862-1865

---

### RELATED USMARC DOCUMENT/FIELD

X50 Topical Terms—General Information

Tracing and Reference Fields—General Information





## 551 See Also From Tracing—Geographic Name (R)

### FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

This field contains a tracing for a geographic name *see also from reference*. It is used in established heading records (008/09, Kind of record, code a or f) to trace a see also from reference from an established geographic name to a related established heading.

The content designators used in the name and subject subdivision portions of field 551 are the same as those defined for fields 151 (Heading—Geographic Name) and 451 (See From Tracing—Geographic Name). Guidelines for applying these content designators for field 551, input conventions, and national level record requirements are given in the *X51 Geographic Names—General Information* section.

The tracing subfields #w (Control subfield) and #i (Reference instruction phrase) are defined only for use in fields 451 and 551. Guidelines for applying these two subfield codes and national level record requirements are given in the *Tracing and Reference Fields—General Information* section.

### ■ EXAMPLES

151    #0#aBuenos Aires (Argentina)  
 551    #0#aBelgrano (Buenos Aires, Argentina)

151    #0#aChelsea (London, England)  
 551    #0#aKensington and Chelsea (London, England)  
 551    #0#aLondon (England)

151    #0#aBarents Sea  
 551    #0#wg#aArctic Ocean

---

### RELATED USMARC DOCUMENT/FIELD

X51 Geographic Names—General Information  
 Tracings and References—General Information



**64X Series Treatment—General Information**

	<i>National</i>	<i>Level</i>
	<i>Requirement</i>	
640 Series Dates of Publication and/or Volume Designation (R)		<i>A</i>
641 Series Numbering Peculiarities (R)		<i>O</i>
642 Series Numbering Example (R)		<i>A</i>
643 Series Place and Publisher/Issuing Body (R)		<i>O</i>
644 Series Analysis Practice (R)		<i>O</i>
645 Series Tracing Practice (R)		<i>O</i>
646 Series Classification Practice (R)		<i>O</i>

---

**DEFINITION AND SCOPE**

The 64X fields contain information concerning the treatment of a 1XX series heading when that heading is used in bibliographic records. Other series treatment information is contained in the fixed-length data elements of field 008 and in link, standard number, and call number fields in the 01X-09X fields.



**642 Series Numbering Example (R)**

A

Indicators

<u>First</u>	Undefined	
Ø	Undefined	M
		M
<u>Second</u>	Undefined	
Ø	Undefined	M
		M

Subfield Codes

‡a	Series numbering example (NR)		M
‡d	Volumes/dates to which series numbering example applies (NR)	(current)	O
		(earlier)	M
‡5	Institution/copy to which field applies (R)		M

**FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE**

This field contains the series numbering example that is to be followed in the volume number/sequential designation portion of a series added entry tracing in bibliographic records for individual issues of the series named in the 1XX field of an established heading record for a series (008/09, Kind of record, code a). When the form of the numbering varies within a series, field 642 is repeated to provide series numbering examples for the different ranges of volumes/dates. Different series numbering examples for different organizations and/or different copies or sets within the same organization are also contained in separate 642 fields.

Field 642 is used only when a numbered series (008/13, Numbered/unnumbered series, code a or c) is to be traced in bibliographic records (645, Series Tracing Practice, subfield ‡a, code t). Irregularities in series numbering are contained in field 641 (Series Numbering Peculiarities).

**GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS****■ INDICATORS**

Both indicator positions are undefined; each contains a blank (Ø).

## ■ SUBFIELD CODES

## ‡a - Series numbering example

Subfield ‡a contains an example of the form of the series numbering that is to be used in a tracing for a series added entry in bibliographic records for individual issues of a series.

Series numbering examples for variations in the form of the numbering for different ranges of volumes/dates or for different organizations are contained in separate 642 fields.

130 ‡0‡aJEB (Series)  
642 ‡‡‡a79/2‡5DLC

130 ‡0‡aReport (Alaska. Dept. of Transportation and Public Facilities)  
642 ‡‡‡ano. AK-RD-86-14‡5DI

## ‡d - Volumes/dates to which series numbering example applies

Subfield ‡d contains a statement describing the applicability of the series numbering example. Subfield ‡d is used only when the series numbering example contained in subfield ‡a does not apply to all items in the series.

130 ‡0‡aOccasional paper (Howard University. Mental Health Research and Development Center)  
642 ‡‡‡ano. 19‡ditems published <1982 >‡5DLC  
642 ‡‡‡av. 3, no. 4‡ditems published before <1979 >‡5DLC

## ‡5 - Institution/copy to which field applies

Subfield ‡5 contains the National Union Catalog (NUC) symbol of the organization that uses the series numbering example contained in subfield ‡a. The NUC symbol for each organization using the series numbering example is contained in a separate subfield ‡5. An NUC symbol may be followed by copy or set identification. Administrative unit or special collection identification may be given in parentheses after the copy information. Each copy or set identification for multiple copies within a single organization follows the organization's NUC symbol contained in a separate subfield ‡5. (The NUC symbol is an authoritative-agency data element. The Library of Congress maintains the *Symbols of American Libraries* and is the authoritative agency.)

130 ‡0‡aMemoirs of the Peabody Museum of American Archaeology and Ethnology, Harvard University  
642 ‡‡‡avol. 6‡5DLC‡5DLC photo-offset reprint  
  
130 ‡0‡aOccasional paper (McGill University. Centre for East Asian Studies)  
642 ‡‡‡ano. 4‡5DLC‡5MH

---

**644 Series Analysis Practice (R)**

O

Indicators

First Undefined  
 Ø Undefined

M

M

Second Undefined  
 Ø Undefined

M

M

Subfield Codes

‡a Series analysis practice (NR)  
 ‡b Exceptions to analysis practice (NR)  
 ‡d Volumes/dates to which analysis practice  
     applies (NR)  
 ‡5 Institution/copy to which field applies (R)

M

A

(current) O

(earlier) M

M

**FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE**

This field contains a one-character code that indicates a specific organization's analysis practice for a series named in the 1XX field of an established heading record for a series (008/09, Kind of record, code a). The code specifies whether all, some, or none of the volumes of a series are analyzed for bibliographic records. The field may also contain the volumes/dates and/or the institution/copy identification to which the practice applies. Field 644 is not used to indicate that a series-like phrase (008/12, Type of series, code c) is not analyzed. Varying analysis practices for different ranges of volumes/dates within a series, for different copies or sets within the same organization, or for different organizations are contained in separate 644 fields.

**GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DES****■ INDICATORS**

Both indicator positions are undefined; each

**■ SUBFIELD CODES**

‡a - Series tracing practice  
 Subfield ‡a contains a one-character code series.

f - Analyzed in full  
 p - Analyzed in part  
 n - Not analyzed



Varying analysis practices are contained in separate 644 fields.

130 00#Munkavédelem, szociálpolitika  
644 00#af#5DLC

130 00#Rapports des campagnes à la mer  
644 00#ap#5DLC

130 00#Monographs of the Society for Research in Child Development  
644 00#an#dv. 49-#5DLC  
644 00#af#dv. 1-48#5DLC

#### #b - Exceptions to analysis practice

Subfield #b contains a statement identifying those items in the series to which the analysis practice code contained in subfield #a does not apply. The analysis practice for the "excepted" items may be recorded in a separate 644 field. Subfield #b is used only when the analysis practice code contained in subfield #a does not apply to all items in the series.

130 00#Eastern European economics  
644 00#an#except v. 10, no. 1-3, v. 19, no. 4#5DLC

#### #d - Volumes/dates to which tracing practice applies

Subfield #d contains a statement identifying those items in the series to which the analysis practice applies. Subfield #d is used only when the analysis practice contained in subfield #a does not apply to all items in the series.

130 00#Horizons in biochemistry and biophysics  
644 00#af#danalyzable parts#5DLC

#### #5 - Institution/copy to which field applies

Subfield #5 contains the National Union Catalog (NUC) symbol of the organization that uses the analysis practice contained in subfield #a. The NUC symbol for each organization using the analysis practice is contained in a separate subfield #5. An NUC symbol may be followed by copy or set identification. Administrative unit or special collection identification may be given in parentheses after the copy information. Each copy or set identification for multiple copies within a single organization follows the organization's NUC symbol contained in a separate subfield #5. (The NUC symbol is an authoritative-agency data element. The Library of Congress maintains the *Symbols of American Libraries* and is the authoritative agency.)

130 00#Archives d'études orientales  
644 00#af#5DLC#5DLC photo-offset reprint

130 00#Colección R  
644 00#af#5DLC#5MH

## INPUT CONVENTIONS

## Punctuation

Field 644 does not end with a period as a mark of punctuation unless the field ends with an abbreviation, an initialism, or other data that ends with a period.

644 ~~bb#ap#5~~DLC photo-offset reprint

## Capitalization

The code in subfield #a is input in lowercase.

644 ~~bb~~ap=5UnM

## Spacing

One space separates terms/abbreviations and numeric/alphabetic designations.

644 ~~bb~~af**except** no. 6d5DLC

Three spaces represent the part of an open-entry numbering designation in subfield #d when it is preceded or followed by additional subfield #d data.

644 b7af d<1984- >5DLC

644 ~~bb~~≠ap≠d< -1980>≠5DLC

644 bbbanbv. 49-5DLC

## Order

The 644 field for *current* analysis practice precedes the 644 field for *earlier* practice.

644 ~~bb#an#dv. 49-#5DLC~~

644 ~~bb~~afdv. 1-48#5DLC

## Display Constants

```

: Analyzed in full      [associated with the c
: Analyzed in part     [associated with the c
: Not analyzed         [associated with the c
Applies to:            [associated with the c
( ... )                [parentheses associat

```

Phrases such as *Analyzed in full*, *Analyzed in part*, *Not analyzed*, etc., are not in the USMARC record. They may be system generated or may be added by the library. The code contained in subfield #a.

A phrase such as *Applies to:* is not carried in the USMARC record. It may be system generated as a display constant associated with the content of subfield #d.

*Content designated field:*

644 \$f\$af\$danalyzable parts\$5DLC

*Display example:*

f: Analyzed in full Applies to: analyzable parts (DLC)

Parentheses enclosing the NUC symbol are not carried in the USMARC record. They may be system generated as a display constant associated with the content of each subfield #5.

*Content designated field:*

644 \$f\$af\$5DLC\$5MH

*Display example:*

f: Analyzed in full (DLC) (MH)

---

## OTHER RELATED DOCUMENT

*Symbols of American Libraries*

**645 Series Tracing Practice (R)**

O

Indicators

<u>First</u>	Undefined		M
ø	Undefined		M
<u>Second</u>	Undefined		M
ø	Undefined		M

Subfield Codes

#a	Series tracing practice (NR)		M
#d	Volumes/dates to which tracing practice applies (NR)	(current)	O
		(earlier)	M
#5	Institution/copy to which field applies (R)		M

**FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE**

This field contains a one-character code that indicates a specific organization's tracing practice for a series named in the 1XX field of an established heading record for a series (008/09, Kind of record, code a). The code specifies whether the series is used as a series added entry or as an untraced series note in bibliographic records. The field may also contain the volumes/dates and/or the institution/copy identification to which the tracing practice applies. Field 645 is not used to indicate that a series-like phrase (008/12, Type of series, code c) is not traced. Varying tracing practices for different ranges of volumes/dates within a series, for different copies or sets within the same organization, or for different organizations are contained in separate 645 fields.

**GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS****■ INDICATORS**

Both indicator positions are undefined; each

**■ SUBFIELD CODES****#a - Series tracing practice**

Subfield #a contains a one-character code that indicates the series added entry tracing practice in bibliographic records.

**t** - Traced as a series added entry

**n** - Not traced as a series added entry

## 645

Varying tracing practices are contained in separate 645 fields.

130 00#Berkeley-Duke occasional papers on the second economy in the USSR  
645 00#at#5DLC

130 00#Series "Motywacje"  
645 00#an#5DLC

### #d - Volumes/dates to which tracing practice applies

Subfield #d contains a statement identifying those items in the series to which the tracing practice applies. Subfield #d is used only when the tracing practice contained in subfield #a does not apply to all items in the series.

130 00#Biblioteca del cielo  
645 00#at#ditems cataloged after Dec. 31, 1980#5DLC  
645 00#an#ditems cataloged before Jan. 1, 1981#5DLC

### #5 - Institution/copy to which field applies

Subfield #5 contains the National Union Catalog (NUC) symbol of the organization that uses the tracing practice contained in subfield #a. The NUC symbol for each organization using the series tracing practice is contained in a separate subfield #5. An NUC symbol may be followed by copy or set identification. Administrative unit or special collection identification may be given in parentheses after the copy information. Each copy or set identification for multiple copies within a single organization follows the organization's NUC symbol contained in a separate subfield #5. (The NUC symbol is an authoritative-agency data element. The Library of Congress maintains the *Symbols of American Libraries* and is the authoritative agency.)

130 00#Point de vue (Yaoundé, Cameroon)  
645 00#an#5DLC

130 00#Colección R  
645 00#an#5DLC#5MH

---

## INPUT CONVENTIONS

### Punctuation

Field 645 does not end with a period as a mark of punctuation unless the field ends with an abbreviation, an initialism, or other data that ends with a period.

645 00#at#5DLC photo-offset reprint

**646 Series Classification Practice (R)**

O

Indicators

<u>First</u>	Undefined		
Ø	Undefined		M
			M

<u>Second</u>	Undefined		
Ø	Undefined		M
			M

Subfield Codes

‡a	Series classification practice (NR)		M
‡d	Volumes/dates to which classification practice applies (NR)	(current)	O
		(earlier)	M
‡5	Institution/copy to which field applies (R)		M

**FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE**

This field contains a one-character code that indicates a specific organization's classification practice for a series named in the 1XX field of an established heading record for a series (008/09, Kind of record, code a). The code specifies whether the volumes in the series are classified as a collection, with the main series, or separately. The field may also contain the volumes/dates and/or the institution/copy identification to which the classification practice applies. Field 646 is not used to indicate that a series-like phrase (008/12, Type of series, code c) is not classified. Varying classification practices for different ranges of volumes/dates within a series, for different copies or sets within the same organization, or for different organizations are contained in separate 646 fields.

**GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS****■ INDICATORS**

Both indicator positions are undefined; each contains a blank (Ø).

**■ SUBFIELD CODES****‡a - Series classification practice**

Subfield ‡a contains a one-character code that indicates the classification practice for a series.

**s - Volumes are classified separately**

Code s indicates that no classification number is assigned to the series because each volume in the series is classified separately.

**c - Volumes are classified as a collection**

**m - Volumes are classified with main or other series**

Codes c and m indicate that a classification number is assigned to the series. The call number for the series is contained in one of the call number fields (050, 060, 070, 082) or in a locally defined call number field (09X) in the established series heading record.

Varying classification practices are contained in separate 646 fields.

130 00#aBibliothèque des "Temps nouveau" (Series)  
646 00#as#5DLC

*[No class number assigned to series classified separately.]*

100 00#aDostoyevsky, Fyodor,#d1821-1881.#tWorks.#f1972  
646 00#ac#5DLC

050 00#aPG3325#b.A1 1972

130 00#aTrudy Instituta éksperimental'noï meteorologii.#pSeriâ "Fizika nizhnei  
atmosfery"

646 00#am#5DLC

050 00#aQC851#.L455 subser.

130 00#aTechnical report (Cooperative National Park Resources Studies Unit,  
Hawaii)

646 00#as#5DLC

646 00#ac#5DI

090 00#aQH198.H3#bC66#5DI

**#d - Volumes/dates to which classification practice applies**

Subfield #d contains a statement identifying those items in the series to which the classification practice applies. Subfield #d is used only when the classification practice contained in subfield #a does not apply to all items of the series.

130 00#aMonographs of the Society for Research in Child Development  
646 00#ac#dv. 1-35, v. 49-#5DLC

646 00#as#dv. 36-48#5DLC

050 00#aLB1103#b.S6#dv. 1-35, v. 49-

**#5 - Institution/copy to which field applies**

Subfield #5 contains the National Union Catalog (NUC) symbol of the organization that uses the classification practice contained in subfield #a. The NUC symbol for each organization using the classification practice is contained in a separate subfield #5. An NUC symbol may be followed by copy or set identification. Administrative unit or special collection identification may be given in parentheses after the copy information. Each copy or set identification for multiple copies within a single organization follows the organization's NUC symbol contained in a separate subfield #5. (The NUC symbol is an authoritative-agency data element. The Library of Congress maintains the *Symbols of American Libraries* and is the authoritative agency.)

130 00#aI.U.B. symposium series

646 00#as#5DLC#5ICU

**66X-68X Notes—General Information***National Level  
Requirement*

667 Name Usage or Scope Note (R)	O
670 Source Data Found (R)	A
675 Source Data Not Found (NR)	O
678 Epitome (NR)	O
680 Subject Scope Note (R)	O
681 Subject Example Tracing Note (R)	O
682 Deleted Heading Information (NR)	O

---

**DEFINITION AND SCOPE**

The 66X-68X fields contain information that is primarily intended to guide catalogers. These notes often are not written in a form adequate for public user display. Field 680 (Subject Scope Note) is an exception to this general practice in that it is intended for display to public catalog users in addition to guiding catalogers.





**663 Complex See Also Reference--Name (NR)**Indicators

First    Undefined  
 ␣        Undefined

O

M

M

Second   Undefined  
 ␣        Undefined

M

M

Subfield Codes

␣a    Explanatory text (R)  
 ␣b    Heading referred to (R)  
 ␣t    Title referred to (R)  
 ␣6    Linkage (NR)

M

M

A

A

**FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE**

This field contains the *explanatory text* and the *headings referred to* that are required when relationships exist between an established name and other established names that cannot be adequately conveyed by one or more simple cross references generated from 5XX See Also From Tracing fields. The field is appropriate only in established heading records (008/09, Kind of record, code a) for names.

The 1XX field in the record contains an established heading referred from. Field 663 contains the explanatory text for the see also reference and the other established headings referred to. The established heading in field 1XX is also traced in a 5XX field in a record for each of the established headings referred to in field 663. Subfield ␣w/3 (Reference display) in each of the 5XX fields contains code c (Reference not displayed, field 663 used). Code c indicates that the generation of a simple cross reference from the 5XX field should be suppressed.

A cross reference may be constructed from the 1XX and 663 fields. A reference instruction phrase is incorporated into the text of subfield ␣a. Examples of complex cross reference displays are provided in the *Tracing and Reference Fields--General Information* section.

**GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS****■ INDICATORS**

Both indicator positions are undefined; each contains a blank (␣).

## ■ SUBFIELD CODES

## ‡a - Explanatory text

Subfield ‡a contains the explanatory text of the see also reference. The text includes a reference instruction phrase such as *see also* or *search also under*.

## ‡b - Heading referred to

Subfield ‡b contains the related established headings to which the heading in field 1XX of the record refers. Except for subfield ‡t, no subelements within the heading referred to are separately subfield coded. Each separate heading referred to is contained in a separate subfield ‡b.

## ‡t - Title referred to

Subfield ‡t contains the title portion of a name/title heading referred to.

The following example reflects the 663 fields and the corresponding 5XX tracing fields in the established heading records for an author who writes under his real name (Alexander H. Japp) and two pseudonyms (E. Condor Gray and H. A. Page):

```

008/09  a  [established heading record]
100      10‡aJapp, Alexander H.‡q(Alexander Hay),‡d1839-1905
500      10‡wnnnc‡aGray, E. Condor,‡d1839-1905
500      10‡wnnnc‡aPage, H. A.,‡d1839-1905
663      ‖‡aFor works of this author written under pseudonyms, search also under
          ‡bGray, E. Condor, 1839-1905 and‡bPage, H. A., 1839-1905

008/09  a  [established heading record]
100      10‡aGray, E. Condor,‡d1839-1905
500      10‡wnnnc‡aJapp, Alexander H.‡q(Alexander Hay),‡d1839-1905
500      10‡wnnnc‡aPage, H. A.,‡d1839-1905
663      ‖‡aFor works of this author written under his real name, search
          also under‡bJapp, Alexander H. (Alexander Hay), 1839-1905.‡aFor works
          written under another pseudonym, search also under‡bPage, H. A., 1839-1905

008/09  a  [established heading record]
100      10‡aPage, H. A.,‡d1839-1905
500      10‡wnnnc‡aJapp, Alexander H.‡q(Alexander Hay),‡d1839-1905
500      10‡wnnnc‡aGray, E. Condor,‡d1839-1905
663      ‖‡aFor works of this author written under his real name, search also under
          ‡bJapp, Alexander H. (Alexander Hay), 1839-1905.‡aFor works
          written under another pseudonym, search also under‡bGray, E. Condor,
          1839-1905

```

## ‡6 - Linkage

Subfield ‡6 contains data that link pairs of fields that are alternate graphic representations of each other. It contains the tag number of an associated field and an occurrence number. A complete description of subfield ‡6 and guidelines for applying it are provided in the *880 Alternate Graphic Representation* section.

## INPUT CONVENTIONS

### Punctuation and Spacing

The punctuation and spacing conventions described in the name heading *General Information* sections are also applicable to the Heading (#b) and Title (#t) subfields in field 663.

Field 663 does not end with a mark of punctuation unless the data ends with an abbreviation, an initial/letter, or data that ends with a mark of punctuation.

---

### RELATED USMARC DOCUMENT/FIELD

X-- Names General Information sections  
880 Alternate Graphic Representation  
Tracing and Reference Fields--General Information



**664 Complex See Reference—Name (NR)**

O

Indicators

<u>First</u>	Undefined	M
Ø	Undefined	M
<u>Second</u>	Undefined	M
Ø	Undefined	M

Subfield Codes

‡a	Explanatory text (R)	M
‡b	Heading referred to (R)	M
‡t	Title referred to (R)	A

**FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE**

This field contains the *explanatory text* and the *headings referred to* that are required when relationships exist between an unestablished name and one or more established names that cannot be adequately conveyed by simple cross references generated from 4XX See From Tracing fields in the established heading records. The field is appropriate only in reference records (008/09, Kind of record, code c) for names.

The 1XX field in the record contains an unestablished name referred from. Field 664 contains the explanatory text for the see reference and the established headings referred to. The unestablished heading in field 1XX is also traced in a 4XX field in a record for each of the established headings referred to in field 664. Subfield ‡w/3 (Reference display) in each of the 4XX fields contains code b (Reference not displayed, field 664 used). Code b indicates that the generation of a simple cross reference from the 4XX field should be suppressed.

A cross reference may be constructed from the 1XX and 664 fields. A reference instruction phrase is incorporated into the text of subfield ‡a. Examples of complex cross reference displays are provided in the *Tracing and Reference Fields—General Information* section.

**GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS****■ INDICATORS**

Both indicator positions are undefined; each contains a blank (Ø).

## ■ SUBFIELD CODES

## #a - Explanatory text

Subfield #a contains the explanatory text of the see reference. The text includes a reference instruction phrase such as *see:* or *search under:*.

## #b - Heading referred to

Subfield #b contains the established headings to which the heading in field 1XX of the record refers. Except for subfield #t, no subelements within the heading referred to are separately subfield coded. Each heading referred to is contained in a separate subfield #b.

## #t - Title referred to

Subfield #t contains the title portion of a name/title heading referred to. Each title referred to under a single name is contained in a separate subfield #t.

008/09 c [reference record (traced reference)]  
 100 10#aReger, Max,#d1873-1916.#tDies irae  
 664 10#aFor this movement included in the composer's unfinished  
 Requiem search under#bReger, Max, 1873-1916.#tRequiem (Mass)

008/09 a [established heading record]  
 100 10#aReger, Max,#d1873-1916.#tRequiem (Mass)  
 400 10#wnnnb#aReger, Max,#d1873-1916.#tDies irae

\*\*\*\*\*

008/09 c [reference record (traced reference)]  
 100 10#aMahfouz, Naguib  
 664 10#asearch under#bMahfuz, Najib, 1882-#bMahfuz,  
 Najib, 1912-

008/09 a [established heading record]  
 100 10#aMahfuz, Najib,#d1882-  
 400 10#wnnnb#aMahfouz, Naguib

008/09 a [established heading record]  
 100 10#aMahfuz, Najib,#d1912-  
 400 10#wnnnb#aMahfouz, Naguib

## INPUT CONVENTIONS

## Reference Record Fields

Reference records must contain a Leader, a Directory, and the following variable fields: 001 (Control Number), 005 (Date and Time of Latest Transaction), 008 (Fixed-Length Data Elements), 040 (Cataloging Source), and 1XX (Heading).

**Punctuation and Spacing**

The punctuation and spacing conventions described in the name heading *General Information* sections are also applicable to the Heading (#b) and Title (#t) subfields in field 664.

Field 664 does not end with a mark of punctuation (i.e., a period (.), a question mark (?), an exclamation mark (!), or a hyphen (-)), unless the data ends with an abbreviation, an initial/letter, or data that ends with a mark of punctuation.

---

**RELATED USMARC DOCUMENT/FIELD**

X-- Names General Information sections  
Tracing and Reference Fields—General Information





**665 History Reference (NR)**

O

Indicators

First    Undefined  
 Ø        Undefined

M

M

Second   Undefined  
 Ø        Undefined

M

M

Subfield Codes

‡a    History reference (R)

M

**FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE**

This field contains the text for a history reference for names. It is used when more information is needed about the relationships that exist among three or more established names (usually corporate names) than can be adequately conveyed by simple cross references generated from 5XX See Also From Tracing fields in the established heading records. The 665 field may also contain text describing the subject entry treatment for works about the various related headings. The field is appropriate only in established heading records (008/09, Kind of record, code a).

The 1XX field in the record contains an established heading referred from. Field 665 contains the history of the name changes and the other established headings referred to. The established heading in field 1XX is also traced in a 5XX field in the established heading records for the headings referred to in field 665. Subfield ‡w/3 (Reference display) in each of the tracing fields contains code d (Reference not displayed, field 665 used). Code d indicates that the generation of a simple cross reference from the 5XX field should be suppressed.

A cross reference may be constructed from the 1XX and 665 fields. A reference instruction phrase is incorporated into the text of subfield ‡a. Examples of complex cross reference displays are provided in the *Tracing and Reference Fields—General Information* section.

**GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS****■ INDICATORS**

Both indicator positions are undefined; each contains a blank (Ø).

## ■ SUBFIELD CODE

## ‡a - History reference

Subfield ‡a contains text describing the relationships and the headings to which the heading in field 1XX of the record refers. No subelements within the headings referred to are separately subfield coded.

Subfield ‡a may be repeated to allow the generation of paragraphs and/or a list of the headings in a cross reference display.

008/09 a *[established heading record]*

110 10‡aConnecticut.‡bDept. of Social Services

510 10‡wnnnd‡aConnecticut.‡bDept. of Human Resources

510 10‡wnnnd‡aConnecticut.‡bDept. of Income Maintenance

665 ~~10~~‡aIn Jan. 1979 the Connecticut Dept. of Social Services split to form the Dept. of Human Resources and the Dept. of Income Maintenance.‡aWorks by these bodies are found under the following headings according to the name used at the time of publication:‡aConnecticut. Dept. of Social Services. ‡aConnecticut. Dept. of Human Resources.‡aConnecticut. Dept. of Income Maintenance.‡aSUBJECT ENTRY: Works about these bodies are entered under one or more of the names resulting from the separation. Works limited in coverage to the pre-separation period are entered under the name of the original body.

008/09 a *[established heading record]*

110 10‡aConnecticut.‡bDept. of Human Resources

510 10‡wnnnd‡aConnecticut.‡bDept. of Social Services

510 10‡wnnnd‡aConnecticut.‡bDept. of Income Maintenance

665 ~~10~~‡aIn Jan. 1979 the Connecticut Dept. of Social Services split to form the Dept. of Human Resources and the Dept. of Income Maintenance.‡aWorks by these bodies are found under the following headings according to the name used at the time of publication:‡aConnecticut. Dept. of Social Services. ‡aConnecticut. Dept. of Human Resources.‡a Connecticut. Dept. of Income Maintenance.‡aSUBJECT ENTRY: Works about these bodies are entered under one or more of the names resulting from the separation. Works limited in coverage to the pre-separation period are entered under the name of the original body.

- 008/09 a *[established heading record]*  
 110 10#aConnecticut.#bDept. of Income Maintenance  
 510 10#wnnnd#aConnecticut.#bDept. of Social Services  
 510 10#wnnnd#aConnecticut.#bDept. of Human Resources  
 665 ¶#aIn Jan. 1979 the Connecticut Dept. of Social Services split to form the Dept. of Human Resources and the Dept. of Income Maintenance.#aWorks by these bodies are found under the following headings according to the name used at the time of publication:#aConnecticut. Dept. of Social Services.  
 #aConnecticut. Dept. of Human Resources.#aConnecticut. Dept. of Income Maintenance.#aSUBJECT ENTRY: Works about these bodies are entered under one or more of the names resulting from the separation. Works limited in coverage to the pre-separation period are entered under the name of the original body.
- 

#### RELATED USMARC DOCUMENT/FIELD

Tracing and Reference Fields—General Information



**666 General Explanatory Reference—Name (NR)** *O*Indicators

<u>First</u>	Undefined	<i>M</i>
Ø	Undefined	<i>M</i>
<u>Second</u>	Undefined	<i>M</i>
Ø	Undefined	<i>M</i>

Subfield Codes

‡a	General explanatory reference (R)	<i>M</i>
----	-----------------------------------	----------

---

**FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE**

This field contains text that explains how names having a common characteristic (e.g., surnames with separately written prefixes) are entered in a file. The field is appropriate only in reference records (008/09, Kind of record, code b).

The 1XX field in the record contains the unestablished data element referred from. Field 666 contains the explanatory information. The heading in the 1XX field is not traced in a 4XX field in any established heading record for names beginning with the specified characteristic.

A cross reference display may be constructed from the 1XX and 666 fields of the reference record. A reference instruction phrase is incorporated into the text of subfield ‡a. Examples of complex cross reference displays are provided in the *Tracing and Reference Fields—General Information* section.

---

**GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS****■ INDICATORS**

Both indicator positions are undefined; each contains a blank (Ø).

## UBFIELD CODE

### - General explanatory reference

Subfield #a contains the text of the explanatory reference.

008/09 b *[reference record (untraced reference)]*

100 00#aDe la

666 ¶¶#aNNames beginning with this prefix are also entered under La (e.g., La Bretèque, Pierre de) or under the name following the prefix (e.g., Torre, Marie de la)

008/09 b *[reference record (untraced reference)]*

110 20#aAktiebolaget . . .

666 ¶¶#aNNames of corporate bodies beginning with this word are entered under the next word in the name.

## UT CONVENTIONS

### Reference Record Fields

Reference records must contain a Leader, a Directory, and the following variable fields: 001 (Control Number), 005 (Date and Time of Latest Transaction), 008 (Fixed-Length Data Elements), 040 (Cataloging Source), and 1XX (Heading).

### Situation

If 666 ends with a period unless the data ends with another mark of punctuation such as a closing parenthesis.

## ATTACHED USMARC DOCUMENT/FIELD

### Tracing and Reference Fields—General Information

## 640 Series Dates of Publication and/or Volume Designation (R)

A

### Indicators

<u>First</u>	Note format style	M
0	Formatted style	A
1	Unformatted style	A
<u>Second</u>	Undefined	M
Ø	Undefined	M

### Subfield Codes

⌘a	Dates of publication and/or volume designation (NR)	M
⌘z	Source of information (NR)	A

## FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

This field contains the beginning/ending date(s) of publication and/or the extent of volumes within a series named in the 1XX field of an established heading record for a series (008/09, Kind of record, code a). It may also contain a citation for the source of the information. The information may be recorded in either a formatted or an unformatted style.

The volume designation information in this field is not an example of the form of series numbering that may be used in a bibliographic record. That information is contained in field 642 (Series Numbering Example). Report year coverage and numbering peculiarities information is contained in field 641 (Series Numbering Peculiarities).

## GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

### ■ INDICATORS

#### First Indicator - Note format style

The first indicator position contains a value that specifies whether the information in subfield ⌘a is in a formatted or an unformatted style note.

#### 0 - Formatted style

Value 0 indicates that subfield ⌘a contains a formatted style note.

640 0⌘av. 1- Apr. 1970-

640 0⌘a1972-



## 1 - Unformatted style

Value 1 indicates that subfield #a contains an unformatted style note.

640 1#Vols. published for the years 1953-1966

640 1#Complete in 10 v.

## Second Indicator - Undefined

The second indicator position is undefined and contains a blank ( ).

## ■ SUBFIELD CODES

## #a - Dates of publication and/or volume designation

Subfield #a contains a designation of the beginning/ending date(s) of publication and/or the extent of volumes within a series.

640 1#Complete in 15 v.

640 1#Vols. published for the years 1864-1910

## #z - Source of information

Subfield #z contains a citation for the source of the information contained in subfield #a.

640 1#Calendar year 1982 pub. in 1983#zp. 3

640 1#Vol. 1 pub. in 1954#zp. 2 of cov., v. 15

640 1#Projected in 6 v.#zv. 1, p. 316

## INPUT CONVENTIONS

## Punctuation

In the following punctuation conventions, *mark of punctuation* is a period (.), a question mark (?), an exclamation mark (!), or a hyphen (-).

Subfield #a does not end with a mark of punctuation unless the subfield ends with an abbreviation, an initialism, or other data that ends with a mark of punctuation.

640 1#Began pub. in 1978#zOCLC 8253525

640 1#Complete in 18 v.#zv. 1, series t.p.

Field 640 does not end with a mark of punctuation unless the field ends with an abbreviation, an initialism, or other data that ends with a mark of punctuation.

640 1#Planned in 2 v.#zv. 2, CIP info. Vol. 2 pub. in 1985

640 1#Complete in 22 v.#zv. 3, pref.

640 1#Ceased with 2 (1964)

640 0#av. 1- Apr. 1970-

### Spacing

One space separates terms/abbreviations and numeric/alphabetic designations.

640 1~~0~~~~1~~~~2~~~~3~~~~4~~~~5~~~~6~~~~7~~~~8~~~~9~~~~A~~~~B~~~~C~~~~D~~~~E~~~~F~~~~G~~~~H~~~~I~~~~J~~~~K~~~~L~~~~M~~~~N~~~~O~~~~P~~~~Q~~~~R~~~~S~~~~T~~~~U~~~~V~~~~W~~~~X~~~~Y~~~~Z~~~~a~~~~b~~~~c~~~~d~~~~e~~~~f~~~~g~~~~h~~~~i~~~~j~~~~k~~~~l~~~~m~~~~n~~~~o~~~~p~~~~q~~~~r~~~~s~~~~t~~~~u~~~~v~~~~w~~~~x~~~~y~~~~z~~~~0~~~~1~~~~2~~~~3~~~~4~~~~5~~~~6~~~~7~~~~8~~~~9~~~~A~~~~B~~~~C~~~~D~~~~E~~~~F~~~~G~~~~H~~~~I~~~~J~~~~K~~~~L~~~~M~~~~N~~~~O~~~~P~~~~Q~~~~R~~~~S~~~~T~~~~U~~~~V~~~~W~~~~X~~~~Y~~~~Z~~~~a~~~~b~~~~c~~~~d~~~~e~~~~f~~~~g~~~~h~~~~i~~~~j~~~~k~~~~l~~~~m~~~~n~~~~o~~~~p~~~~q~~~~r~~~~s~~~~t~~~~u~~~~v~~~~w~~~~x~~~~y~~~~z~~ Complete in 16 v.~~0~~~~1~~~~2~~~~3~~~~4~~~~5~~~~6~~~~7~~~~8~~~~9~~~~A~~~~B~~~~C~~~~D~~~~E~~~~F~~~~G~~~~H~~~~I~~~~J~~~~K~~~~L~~~~M~~~~N~~~~O~~~~P~~~~Q~~~~R~~~~S~~~~T~~~~U~~~~V~~~~W~~~~X~~~~Y~~~~Z~~~~a~~~~b~~~~c~~~~d~~~~e~~~~f~~~~g~~~~h~~~~i~~~~j~~~~k~~~~l~~~~m~~~~n~~~~o~~~~p~~~~q~~~~r~~~~s~~~~t~~~~u~~~~v~~~~w~~~~x~~~~y~~~~z~~ 1, introd.

In a formatted style note, three spaces represent the missing part of an open-entry numbering designation followed by additional subfield ~~a~~ data.

640 ~~0~~~~1~~~~2~~~~3~~~~4~~~~5~~~~6~~~~7~~~~8~~~~9~~~~A~~~~B~~~~C~~~~D~~~~E~~~~F~~~~G~~~~H~~~~I~~~~J~~~~K~~~~L~~~~M~~~~N~~~~O~~~~P~~~~Q~~~~R~~~~S~~~~T~~~~U~~~~V~~~~W~~~~X~~~~Y~~~~Z~~~~a~~~~b~~~~c~~~~d~~~~e~~~~f~~~~g~~~~h~~~~i~~~~j~~~~k~~~~l~~~~m~~~~n~~~~o~~~~p~~~~q~~~~r~~~~s~~~~t~~~~u~~~~v~~~~w~~~~x~~~~y~~~~z~~ 1- Apr. 1970-

### Display Constant

—Cf. [*associated with the content of subfield ~~z~~*]

The instruction term —Cf. is not carried in the USMARC record. It may be system generated as a display constant associated with the content of subfield ~~z~~.

*Content designated field:*

640 1~~0~~~~1~~~~2~~~~3~~~~4~~~~5~~~~6~~~~7~~~~8~~~~9~~~~A~~~~B~~~~C~~~~D~~~~E~~~~F~~~~G~~~~H~~~~I~~~~J~~~~K~~~~L~~~~M~~~~N~~~~O~~~~P~~~~Q~~~~R~~~~S~~~~T~~~~U~~~~V~~~~W~~~~X~~~~Y~~~~Z~~~~a~~~~b~~~~c~~~~d~~~~e~~~~f~~~~g~~~~h~~~~i~~~~j~~~~k~~~~l~~~~m~~~~n~~~~o~~~~p~~~~q~~~~r~~~~s~~~~t~~~~u~~~~v~~~~w~~~~x~~~~y~~~~z~~ Calendar year 1982 pub. in 1983~~0~~~~1~~~~2~~~~3~~~~4~~~~5~~~~6~~~~7~~~~8~~~~9~~~~A~~~~B~~~~C~~~~D~~~~E~~~~F~~~~G~~~~H~~~~I~~~~J~~~~K~~~~L~~~~M~~~~N~~~~O~~~~P~~~~Q~~~~R~~~~S~~~~T~~~~U~~~~V~~~~W~~~~X~~~~Y~~~~Z~~~~a~~~~b~~~~c~~~~d~~~~e~~~~f~~~~g~~~~h~~~~i~~~~j~~~~k~~~~l~~~~m~~~~n~~~~o~~~~p~~~~q~~~~r~~~~s~~~~t~~~~u~~~~v~~~~w~~~~x~~~~y~~~~z~~ 3

*Display example:*

Calendar year 1982 pub. in 1983—Cf. p. 3

### RELATED USMARC DOCUMENT/FIELD

641 Series Numbering Peculiarities

642 Series Numbering Example







## 64X Series Treatment—General Information

	<i>National Level Requirement</i>
640 Series Dates of Publication and/or Volume Designation (R)	<i>A</i>
641 Series Numbering Peculiarities (R)	<i>O</i>
642 Series Numbering Example (R)	<i>A</i>
643 Series Place and Publisher/Issuing Body (R)	<i>O</i>
644 Series Analysis Practice (R)	<i>O</i>
645 Series Tracing Practice (R)	<i>O</i>
646 Series Classification Practice (R)	<i>O</i>

---

## DEFINITION AND SCOPE

The 64X fields contain information concerning the treatment of a 1XX series heading when that heading is used in bibliographic records. Other series treatment information is contained in the fixed-length data elements of field 008 and in link, standard number, and call number fields in the 01X-09X fields.

| Alternate Graphic Representation

Subfield #6 (Linkage) is defined for all of the series treatment fields. The description of subfield #6 in field 640 also applies to each of these fields. It will be added to the other 64X field descriptions when they are reissued for other changes.



**640 Series Dates of Publication and/or Volume  
Designation (R)***A*IndicatorsFirst Note format style

0 Formatted style

1 Unformatted style

*M**A**A*Second Undefined

b Undefined

*M**M*Subfield Codes

‡a Dates of publication and/or volume designation (NR)

‡z Source of information (NR)

‡6 Linkage (NR)

*M**A**A***FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE**

This field contains the beginning/ending date(s) of publication and/or the extent of volumes within a series named in the 1XX field of an established heading record for a series (008/09, Kind of record, code a). It may also contain a citation for the source of the information. The information may be recorded in either a formatted or an unformatted style.

The volume designation information in this field is not an example of the form of series numbering that may be used in a bibliographic record. That information is contained in field 642 (Series Numbering Example). Report year coverage and numbering peculiarities information is contained in field 641 (Series Numbering Peculiarities).

**GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS****■ INDICATORS****First Indicator - Note format style \_\_\_\_\_**

The first indicator position contains a value that is in a formatted or an unformatted style note.

**0 - Formatted style**

Value 0 indicates that subfield ‡a contains a

640 0b‡av. 1- Apr. 1970-

640 0b‡a1972-



## 640

### 1 - Unformatted style

Value 1 indicates that subfield  $\#a$  contains an unformatted style note.

640 1 $\#a$ Vols. published for the years 1953-1966

640 1 $\#a$ Complete in 10 v.

### Second Indicator - Undefined

---

The second indicator position is undefined and contains a blank ( $\emptyset$ ).

## ■ SUBFIELD CODES

### $\#a$ - Dates of publication and/or volume designation

Subfield  $\#a$  contains a designation of the beginning/ending date(s) of publication and/or the extent of volumes within a series.

640 1 $\#a$ Complete in 15 v.

640 1 $\#a$ Vols. published for the years 1864-1910

### $\#z$ - Source of information

Subfield  $\#z$  contains a citation for the source of the information contained in subfield  $\#a$ .

640 1 $\#a$ Calendar year 1982 pub. in 1983 $\#z$ p. 3

640 1 $\#a$ Vol. 1 pub. in 1954 $\#z$ p. 2 of cov., v. 15

640 1 $\#a$ Projected in 6 v. $\#z$ v. 1, p. 316

### | $\#6$ - Linkage

Subfield  $\#6$  contains data that link pairs of fields that are alternate graphic representations of each other. It contains the tag number of an associated field and an occurrence number. A complete description of subfield  $\#6$  and guidelines for applying it are provided in the *880 Alternate Graphic Representation* section.

---

## VENTIONS

on unless the subfield ends with an abbreviation, an  
unctuation.

525

Field 640 does not end with a mark of punctuation unless the field ends with an abbreviation, an initialism, or other data that ends with a mark of punctuation.

- 640 1b#aPlanned in 2 v.#zv. 2, CIP info. Vol. 2 pub. in 1985
- 640 1b#aComplete in 22 v.#zv. 3, pref.
- 640 1b#aCeased with 2 (1964)
- 640 0b#av. 1- Apr. 1970-

### Spacing

One space separates terms/abbreviations and numeric/alphabetic designations.

- 640 1b#aComplete in 16 v.#zv. 1, introd.

In a formatted style note, three spaces represent the missing part of an open-entry numbering designation followed by additional subfield #a data.

- | 640 0b#av. 1- Apr. 1970-

### Display Constant

-Cf. *[associated with the content of subfield #z]*

The instruction term -Cf. is not carried in the USMARC record. It may be system generated as a display constant associated with the content of subfield #z.

*Content designated field:*

- 640 1b#aCalendar year 1982 pub. in 1983#zp. 3

*Display example:*

Calendar year 1982 pub. in 1983-Cf. p. 3

### RELATED USMARC DOCUMENT/FIELD

- 641 Series Numbering Peculiarities
- 642 Series Numbering Example
- 880 Alternate Graphic Representation



**641 Series Numbering Peculiarities (R)**

O

Indicators

<u>First</u>	Undefined	M
Ø	Undefined	M
<u>Second</u>	Undefined	M
Ø	Undefined	M

Subfield Codes

‡a	Numbering peculiarities note (NR)	M
‡z	Source of information (NR)	A

**FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE**

This field contains a note describing irregularities in the report year coverage and/or numbering of a series named in the 1XX field of an established heading record for a series (008/09, Kind of record, code a). It may also contain a citation for the source of the information. Distinct items of information are contained in separate 641 fields. When field 641 is used, field 008/13 (Numbered/unnumbered series) contains code a or c.

Changes or variations in a series numbering that is to be used in a bibliographic record are contained in field 642 (Series Numbering Example). The extent of volumes within a series is contained in field 640 (Series Dates of Publication and/or Volume Designation).

**GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS****■ INDICATORS**

Both indicator positions are undefined; each contains a blank (Ø).

**■ SUBFIELD CODES****‡a - Numbering peculiarities note**

Subfield ‡a contains a note describing irregularities in the report year coverage and/or numbering of a series. Information such as double numbering, the existence of issues not included in the regular series numbering, items not published, combined issues or volumes, and numbering that does not begin with number one may be described in this subfield.

641 ØØ‡aEach issue covers: Apr. 1-Mar. 31

- 641  $\backslash\backslash\#a$ Some items issued: with numeric/alpha or alpha numeric designation (447P; X042); some with double numbering (3092R-3092T); and some with numeric sub-subdivision (825/1)
- 641  $\backslash\backslash\#a$ Introd. and concluding vols. unnumb.
- 641  $\backslash\backslash\#a$ Numbering begins with no. 3

#### $\#z$ - Source of information

Subfield  $\#z$  contains a citation for the source of the information contained in subfield  $\#a$ .

- 641  $\backslash\backslash\#a$ Double numbering discontinued with t. 179 $\#zt$ . 179, t.p.
- 641  $\backslash\backslash\#a$ No. 7 never published $\#zno$ . 11, t.p. verso
- 641  $\backslash\backslash\#a$ Numbering does not begin with v. 1 $\#z$ LC data base, 8-5-85
- 641  $\backslash\backslash\#a$ Publication suspended 1922-29 $\#z$ Union list of serials

## INPUT CONVENTIONS

### Punctuation

In the following punctuation conventions, *mark of punctuation* is a period (.), a question mark (?), an exclamation mark (!), or a hyphen (-).

Subfield  $\#a$  does not end with a mark of punctuation unless the subfield ends with an abbreviation, an initialism, or other data that ends with a mark of punctuation.

- 641  $\backslash\backslash\#a$ Vol. numbering irregular; v. 4 omitted; v. 5 repeated $\#zpub$ . letter 7 Nov.  
76
- 641  $\backslash\backslash\#a$ Numbering begins with v. 10; items published before 1980 unnumb.  
 $\#z$ Deut. Bibl.

Field 641 does not end with a mark of punctuation unless the field ends with an abbreviation, an initialism, or other data that ends with a mark of punctuation.

- 641  $\backslash\backslash\#a$ Vol. 25 never published $\#zcall$  to publisher 1/22/82
- 641  $\backslash\backslash\#a$ Numbering repeats each year $\#z$ examination of vols.
- 641  $\backslash\backslash\#a$ Vols. for the 8th-19th annual meetings called also v. 7-17 (9th and 10th issues combined as v. 8)
- 641  $\backslash\backslash\#a$ Publications designated 1st-67th, 1878-1946; 68th ed.- 1947-
- 641  $\backslash\backslash\#a$ No more published?

### Spacing

One space separates terms/abbreviations and numeric/alphabetic designations.

- 641  $\backslash\backslash\#a$ New series v. 2 (Sept.-Dec. 1837) not issued

Three spaces represent the missing part of an open-entry numbering designation in subfield #a when it is followed by additional subfield #a data.

641 ~~008/13~~#aReports for 1938- end June 30; 1981- end Sept. 30

### Display Constant

—Cf. *[associated with the content of subfield #z]*

The instruction term —Cf. is not carried in the USMARC record. It may be system generated as a display constant associated with the content of subfield #z.

*Content designated field:*

641 ~~008/13~~#aNo. 7 never published#zno. 11, t.p. verso

*Display example:*

No. 7 never published—Cf. no. 11, t.p. verso

---

### RELATED USMARC DOCUMENT/FIELD

- 008/13 Numbered/unnumbered series
- 640 Series Dates of Publication and/or Volume Designation
- 642 Series Numbering Example



642 Series Numbering Example (R)

A

Indicators

<u>First</u>	Undefined	<i>M</i>
Ø	Undefined	<i>M</i>
<u>Second</u>	Undefined	<i>M</i>
Ø	Undefined	<i>M</i>

Subfield Codes

≠a	Series numbering example (NR)	<i>M</i>
≠d	Volumes/dates to which series numbering example applies (NR)	(current) <i>O</i> (earlier) <i>M</i>
≠5	Institution/copy to which field applies (R)	<i>M</i>

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

This field contains the series numbering example that is to be followed in the volume number/sequential designation portion of a series added entry tracing in bibliographic records for individual issues of the series named in the 1XX field of an established heading record for a series (008/09, Kind of record, code a). When the form of the numbering varies within a series, field 642 is repeated to provide series numbering examples for the different ranges of volumes/dates. Different series numbering examples for different organizations and/or different copies or sets within the same organization are also contained in separate 642 fields.

Field 642 is used only when a numbered series (008/13, Numbered/unnumbered series, code a or c) is to be traced in bibliographic records (645, Series Tracing Practice, subfield ≠a, code t). Irregularities in series numbering are contained in field 641 (Series Numbering Peculiarities).

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DI

■ INDICATORS

Both indicator positions are undefined; ea



## ■ SUBFIELD CODES

## ‡a - Series numbering example

Subfield ‡a contains an example of the form of the series numbering that is to be used in a tracing for a series added entry in bibliographic records for individual issues of a series.

Series numbering examples for variations in the form of the numbering for different ranges of volumes/dates or for different organizations are contained in separate 642 fields.

130 ‡0‡aJEB (Series)  
642 ‡‡‡a79/2‡5DLC

130 ‡0‡aReport (Alaska. Dept. of Transportation and Public Facilities)  
642 ‡‡‡ano. AK-RD-86-14‡5DI

## ‡d - Volumes/dates to which series numbering example applies

Subfield ‡d contains a statement describing the applicability of the series numbering example. Subfield ‡d is used only when the series numbering example contained in subfield ‡a does not apply to all items in the series.

130 ‡0‡aOccasional paper (Howard University. Mental Health Research and Development Center)  
642 ‡‡‡ano. 19‡ditems published <1982 >‡5DLC  
642 ‡‡‡av. 3, no. 4‡ditems published before <1979 >‡5DLC

## ‡5 - Institution/copy to which field applies

Subfield ‡5 contains the National Union Catalog (NUC) symbol of the organization that uses the series numbering example contained in subfield ‡a. The NUC symbol for each organization using the series numbering example is contained in a separate subfield ‡5. An NUC symbol may be followed by copy or set identification. Administrative unit or special collection identification may be given in parentheses after the copy information. Each copy or set identification for multiple copies within a single organization follows the organization's NUC symbol contained in a separate subfield ‡5. (The NUC symbol is an authoritative-agency data element. The Library of Congress maintains the *Symbols of American Libraries* and is the authoritative agency.)

130 ‡0‡aMemoirs of the Peabody Museum of American Archaeology and Ethnology, Harvard University  
642 ‡‡‡avol. 6‡5DLC‡5DLC photo-offset reprint

130 ‡0‡aOccasional paper (McGill University. Centre for East Asian Studies)  
642 ‡‡‡ano. 4‡5DLC‡5MH

## INPUT CONVENTIONS

### Punctuation

Field 642 does not end with a period as a mark of punctuation unless the subfield ends with an abbreviation, an initialism, or other data that ends with a period.

642 642E35DLC photo-offset reprint

### Capitalization

The capitalization of the NUC symbol characters strictly follows that found in *Symbols of American Libraries*.

### Spacing

One space separates terms/abbreviation and numeric/alphabetic designations.

642 642apublicação no. 135DLC

Three spaces represent the missing part of a open-entry numbering designation in subfield #d when it is followed by additional subfield #d data.

642 642ano. 19#ditems published <1982 >#5DLC

### Order

The 642 field for a *current* series numbering example precedes the 642 field for an *earlier* series numbering example.

642 642ano. 19#ditems published <1982 >#5DLC

642 642avo. 3, no. 4#ditems published before <1979 >#5DLC

### Display Constants

Form of number in series a.e.:	[associated with the content of subfield #a]
Applies to:	[associated with the content of subfield #d]
( ... )	[parentheses associated with the content of subfield #5]

Phrases such as *Form of number in series a.e.:* and *Applies to:* are not carried in the USMARC record. They may be system generated as display constants associated with the content of subfields #a and #d, respectively.

Parentheses enclosing the NUC symbol are not carried in the USMARC record. They may be system generated as a display constant associated with the content of subfield #5.

*Content designated field:*

642 ~~008~~#av. 3, no. 4#ditems published before <1979 >#5DLC

*Display example:*

Form of number in series a.e.: v. 3, no. 4 Applies to: items  
published before <1979 > (DLC)

---

**RELATED USMARC DOCUMENT/FIELD**

008/13 Numbered/unnumbered series

641 Series Numbering Peculiarities

642 Series Tracing Practice

*USMARC Format for Bibliographic Data:* 4XX (Series Statement) and 8XX (Series  
Added Entry) fields, subfield #v (Volume number/sequential designation)

**OTHER RELATED DOCUMENT**

*Symbols of American Libraries*

**643 Series Place and Publisher/Issuing Body (R)**

O

Indicators

<u>First</u>	Undefined	M
Ø	Undefined	M
<u>Second</u>	Undefined	M
Ø	Undefined	M

Subfield Codes

‡a	Place (R)	M
‡b	Publisher/issuing body (R)	M
‡d	Volumes/dates to which place and publisher/issuing body apply (NR)	(current) O (earlier) M

**FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE**

This field contains the place of publication and the name of the publisher/issuing body of the series named in the 1XX field of an established heading record for a series (008/09, Kind of record, code a). The field may also contain the volumes/dates to which the publication information applies. Multiple place and publisher/issuing body information may be contained in the field if each is appropriate to the series during a particular range of dates/volumes. Multiple place and publisher/issuing body information for different ranges of volumes/dates are contained in separate 643 fields.

**GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS****■ INDICATORS**

Both indicator positions are undefined; eac

**■ SUBFIELD CODES****‡a - Place**

Subfield ‡a contains a place of publication appropriate to a series during a particular range of dates/volumes. Place of publication is contained in separate 643 fields.

130 Ø0‡aColección Tesi  
643 ØØ‡aQuito‡bs.n.

130 \$0\$aStudies in sociology (Manchester University Press)  
 643 \$1\$aLondon, England\$aDover, N.H.\$bManchester University Press

#### **#b - Publisher/issuing body**

Subfield #b contains the name of the publisher or issuing body for the series. When multiple publisher/issuing body names are appropriate to a series during a particular range of dates/volumes, each is contained in a separate subfield #b. Publisher/issuing body information for different ranges of volumes/dates is contained in separate 643 fields.

130 \$0\$aSpanish law texts  
 643 \$1\$aMadrid\$bJ. & A. Garrigues

130 \$0\$aOriginal papers (Bowling Green State University. Social Philosophy & Policy Center)  
 643 \$1\$aBowling Green, OH\$bSocial Philosophy and Policy Center\$aNew Brunswick, USA\$bTransaction Books

#### **#d - Volumes/dates to which place and publisher/issuing body apply**

Subfield #d contains a statement describing the range of volumes/dates applicable to the place and publisher/issuing body. The use of subfield #d is optional if the place and publisher/issuing body information applies to all items of the series. Each change in place and publisher/issuing body is contained in a separate 643 field.

130 \$0\$aSchriftenreihe zur europäischen Integration  
 643 \$1\$aHamburg\$bStiftung Europa-Kolleg\$bFundament-Verlag Sasse\$dBd. 4-  
 643 \$1\$aHamburg\$bChristen\$bStiftung Europa-Kolleg\$dBd. 2

## **INPUT CONVENTIONS**

### **Punctuation**

In the following punctuation conventions, *mark of punctuation* is a period (.), a question mark (?), an exclamation mark (!), or a hyphen (-).

Subfield #a does not end with a mark of punctuation unless the subfield ends with an abbreviation, an initialism, or other data that ends with a mark of punctuation.

643 \$1\$aStockholm, Sweden\$bPoststyresn\$d1964-66  
 643 \$1\$aNew York, N.Y.\$bRandom House  
 643 \$1\$aS.l.\$bs.n. (Poitiers : Imp. Aubin)  
 643 \$1\$aCardiff?\$bH.M.S.O.

Field 643 field does not end with a period unless the field ends with an abbreviation, an initialism, or other data that ends with a period.

643 \$aLondon\$bHome Office

643 \$aSt. Louis\$bCity Art Museum of St. Louis\$ditems issued after 1908

643 \$aNew York\$bGolden Press\$aRacine, Wis.\$bWestern Pub. Co.

### Spacing

One space separates term/abbreviation and numeric/alphabetic designations.

Three spaces represent the missing part of an open-entry numbering designation in subfield \$d when it is followed by additional subfield \$d data.

643 \$aNew York\$bA.R. Liss\$dnew ser., v. 1- , 1982-

### Order

The 643 field for *current* publishing information precedes the 643 field for *earlier* information.

643 \$aHamburg\$bStiftung Europa-Kolleg\$bFundament-Verlag Sasse\$dBd. 4-

643 \$aHamburg\$bChristen\$bStiftung Europa-Kolleg\$dBd. 2

### Display Constants

Applies to: *[associated with the content of subfield \$d]*

AACR 2 imprint punctuation *[associated with the content of subfields \$a and \$b]*

A phrase such as *Applies to:* is not carried in the USMARC record. It may be system generated as a display constant associated with the content of subfield \$d.

*Content designated field:*

643 \$aSt. Louis\$bCity Art Museum of St. Louis\$ditems issued after  
1908

*Display example:*

St. Louis : City Art Museum of St. Louis  
issued after 1908

The AACR 2 punctuation that is associated with imprint data elements is not carried in the USMARC record. It may be generated as display constants associated with the content of subfields #a and #b.

*Content designated field:*

643 \$b#aBowling Green, OH\$bSocial Philosophy and Policy Center#aNew Brunswick, USA\$bTransaction Books

*Display example:*

Bowling Green, OH : Social Philosophy and Policy Center ; New Brunswick, USA : Transaction Books

---

## RELATED USMARC DOCUMENT/FIELD

*USMARC Format for Bibliographic Data: 4XX (Series Statement) and 8XX (Series Added Entry) fields, subfield #v (Volume number/sequential designation)*

**644 Series Analysis Practice (R)**

O

Indicators

<u>First</u>	Undefined	M
Ø	Undefined	M
<u>Second</u>	Undefined	M
Ø	Undefined	M

Subfield Codes

‡a	Series analysis practice (NR)	M
‡b	Exceptions to analysis practice (NR)	A
‡d	Volumes/dates to which analysis practice applies (NR)	(current) O (earlier) M
‡5	Institution/copy to which field applies (R)	M

**FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE**

This field contains a one-character code that indicates a specific organization's analysis practice for a series named in the 1XX field of an established heading record for a series (008/09, Kind of record, code a). The code specifies whether all, some, or none of the volumes of a series are analyzed for bibliographic records. The field may also contain the volumes/dates and/or the institution/copy identification to which the practice applies. Field 644 is not used to indicate that a series-like phrase (008/12, Type of series, code c) is not analyzed. Varying analysis practices for different ranges of volumes/dates within a series, for different copies or sets within the same organization, or for different organizations are contained in separate 644 fields.

**GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS****■ INDICATORS**

Both indicator positions are undefined; each contains a blank (Ø).

**■ SUBFIELD CODES****‡a - Series tracing practice**

Subfield ‡a contains a one-character code that indicates the analysis practice for the series.

- f** - Analyzed in full
- p** - Analyzed in part
- n** - Not analyzed



Varying analysis practices are contained in separate 644 fields.

130 0#Munkavédelem, szociálpolitika  
644 0#af#5DLC

130 0#Rapports des campagnes à la mer  
644 0#ap#5DLC

130 0#Monographs of the Society for Research in Child Development  
644 0#an#dv. 49-#5DLC  
644 0#af#dv. 1-48#5DLC

#### #b - Exceptions to analysis practice

Subfield #b contains a statement identifying those items in the series to which the analysis practice code contained in subfield #a does not apply. The analysis practice for the "excepted" items may be recorded in a separate 644 field. Subfield #b is used only when the analysis practice code contained in subfield #a does not apply to all items in the series.

130 0#Eastern European economics  
644 0#an#except v. 10, no. 1-3, v. 19, no. 4#5DLC

#### #d - Volumes/dates to which tracing practice applies

Subfield #d contains a statement identifying those items in the series to which the analysis practice applies. Subfield #d is used only when the analysis practice contained in subfield #a does not apply to all items in the series.

130 0#Horizons in biochemistry and biophysics  
644 0#af#danalyzable parts#5DLC

#### #5 - Institution/copy to which field applies

Subfield #5 contains the National Union Catalog (NUC) symbol of the organization that uses the analysis practice contained in subfield #a. The NUC symbol for each organization using the analysis practice is contained in a separate subfield #5. An NUC symbol may be followed by copy or set identification. Administrative unit or special collection identification may be given in parentheses after the copy information. Each copy or set of a single organization follows the organization's subfield #5. (The NUC symbol is an authoritative-  
Congress maintains the *Symbols of American*  
.)

reprint

## INPUT CONVENTIONS

### Punctuation

Field 644 does not end with a period as a mark of punctuation unless the field ends with an abbreviation, an initialism, or other data that ends with a period.

644  $\text{\\$}\text{ap}\text{\$}5\text{DLC}$  photo-offset reprint

### Capitalization

The code in subfield  $\text{\$}a$  is input in lowercase. The capitalization of the NUC symbol characters strictly follows that found in *Symbols of American Libraries*.

644  $\text{\\$}\text{ap}\text{\$}5\text{UnM}$

### Spacing

One space separates terms/abbreviations and numeric/alphabetic designations.

644  $\text{\\$}\text{af}\text{\$}d\text{except no. }6\text{\$}d5\text{DLC}$

Three spaces represent the part of an open-entry numbering designation in subfield  $\text{\$}d$  when it is preceded or followed by additional subfield  $\text{\$}d$  data.

644  $\text{\\$}\text{af}\text{\$}d<1984\text{-}>\text{\$}5\text{DLC}$

644  $\text{\\$}\text{ap}\text{\$}d<\text{-}1980>\text{\$}5\text{DLC}$

644  $\text{\\$}\text{an}\text{\$}dv. 49\text{-}\text{\$}5\text{DLC}$

### Order

The 644 field for *current* analysis practice precedes the 644 field for *earlier* practice.

644  $\text{\\$}\text{an}\text{\$}dv. 49\text{-}\text{\$}5\text{DLC}$

644  $\text{\\$}\text{af}\text{\$}dv. 1\text{-}48\text{\$}5\text{DLC}$

### Display Constants

: Analyzed in full	[associated with code <i>f</i> in subfield $\text{\$}a$ ]
: Analyzed in part	[associated with code <i>p</i> in subfield $\text{\$}a$ ]
: Not analyzed	[associated with code <i>n</i> in subfield $\text{\$}a$ ]
Applies to:	[associated with the content of subfield $\text{\$}d$ ]
( ... )	[parentheses associated with the content of subfield $\text{\$}5$ ]

Phrases such as *Analyzed in full*, *Analyzed in part*, or *Not analyzed* are not carried in the USMARC record. They may be system generated as display constants associated with the code contained in subfield  $\text{\$}a$ .

## 644

A phrase such as *Applies to:* is not carried in the USMARC record. It may be system generated as a display constant associated with the content of subfield #d.

*Content designated field:*

644 \$f\$af\$danalyzable parts\$5DLC

*Display example:*

f: Analyzed in full Applies to: analyzable parts (DLC)

Parentheses enclosing the NUC symbol are not carried in the USMARC record. They may be system generated as a display constant associated with the content of each subfield #5.

*Content designated field:*

644 \$f\$af\$5DLC\$5MH

*Display example:*

f: Analyzed in full (DLC) (MH)

---

### OTHER RELATED DOCUMENT

*Symbols of American Libraries*

**645 Series Tracing Practice (R)**

O

Indicators

<u>First</u>	Undefined	<i>M</i>
Ø	Undefined	<i>M</i>
<u>Second</u>	Undefined	<i>M</i>
Ø	Undefined	<i>M</i>

Subfield Codes

‡a	Series tracing practice (NR)	<i>M</i>
‡d	Volumes/dates to which tracing practice applies (NR)	(current) <i>O</i> (earlier) <i>M</i>
‡5	Institution/copy to which field applies (R)	<i>M</i>

**FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE**

This field contains a one-character code that indicates a specific organization's tracing practice for a series named in the 1XX field of an established heading record for a series (008/09, Kind of record, code a). The code specifies whether the series is used as a series added entry or as an untraced series note in bibliographic records. The field may also contain the volumes/dates and/or the institution/copy identification to which the tracing practice applies. Field 645 is not used to indicate that a series-like phrase (008/12, Type of series, code c) is not traced. Varying tracing practices for different ranges of volumes/dates within a series, for different copies or sets within the same organization, or for different organizations are contained in separate 645 fields.

**GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS****■ INDICATORS**

Both indicator positions are undefined; each contains a blank (Ø).

**■ SUBFIELD CODES****‡a - Series tracing practice**

Subfield ‡a contains a one-character code that indicates the series added entry tracing practice in bibliographic records.

**t - Traced as a series added entry**

**n - Not traced as a series added entry**

Varying tracing practices are contained in separate 645 fields.

130 0#aBerkeley-Duke occasional papers on the second economy in the USSR  
645 0#at#5DLC

130 0#aSeria "Motywacje"  
645 0#an#5DLC

#### #d - Volumes/dates to which tracing practice applies

Subfield #d contains a statement identifying those items in the series to which the tracing practice applies. Subfield #d is used only when the tracing practice contained in subfield #a does not apply to all items in the series.

130 0#aBiblioteca del cielo  
645 0#at#ditems cataloged after Dec. 31, 1980#5DLC  
645 0#an#ditems cataloged before Jan. 1, 1981#5DLC

#### #5 - Institution/copy to which field applies

Subfield #5 contains the National Union Catalog (NUC) symbol of the organization that uses the tracing practice contained in subfield #a. The NUC symbol for each organization using the series tracing practice is contained in a separate subfield #5. An NUC symbol may be followed by copy or set identification. Administrative unit or special collection identification may be given in parentheses after the copy information. Each copy or set identification for multiple copies within a single organization follows the organization's NUC symbol contained in a separate subfield #5. (The NUC symbol is an authoritative-agency data element. The Library of Congress maintains the *Symbols of American Libraries* and is the authoritative agency.)

130 0#aPoint de vue (Yaoundé, Cameroon)  
645 0#an#5DLC

130 0#aColección R  
645 0#an#5DLC#5MH

## INPUT CONVENTIONS

### Punctuation

Field 645 does not end with a period as a mark of punctuation unless the field ends with an abbreviation, an initialism, or other data that ends with a period.

645 0#at#5DLC photo-offset reprint

## Capitalization

The code in subfield  $\#a$  is input in lowercase. The capitalization of the NUC symbol characters strictly follows that found in *Symbols of American Libraries*.

645  $\backslash\backslash\#at\#5Sd$

## Spacing

One space separates terms/abbreviations and numeric/alphabetic designations.

645  $\backslash\backslash\#an\#dBk. 1-30\#DLC$

Three spaces represent the missing part of an open-entry numbering designation in subfield  $\#d$  when it is followed by additional subfield  $\#d$  data.

645  $\backslash\backslash\#at\#d<1983- >\#5DLC$

## Order

The 645 field for *current* tracing practice precedes the 645 field for *earlier* practice.

645  $\backslash\backslash\#at\#ditems cataloged after Dec. 31, 1980\#5DLC$

645  $\backslash\backslash\#an\#ditems cataloged before Jan. 1, 1981\#5DLC$

## Display Constants

: Traced	[associated with code <i>t</i> in subfield $\#a$ ]
: Untraced	[associated with code <i>n</i> in subfield $\#a$ ]
Applies to:	[associated with the content of subfield $\#d$ ]
( ... )	[parentheses associated with the content of subfield $\#5$ ]

Terms such as *Traced* or *Untraced* are not carried in the USMARC record. They may be system generated as display constants associated with the code contained in subfield  $\#a$ .

A phrase such as *Applies to:* is not carried in the USMARC record. It may be system generated as a display constant associated with the content of subfield  $\#d$ .

### *Content designated field:*

645  $\backslash\backslash\#an\#ditems cataloged before Jan. 1, 1981\#5DLC$

### *Display example:*

n: Untraced Applies to: items cataloged before Jan. 1, 1981 (DLC)

## 645

Parentheses enclosing the NUC symbol are not carried in the USMARC record. They may be system generated as a display constant associated with the content of each subfield #5.

*Content designated field:*

645 \$b\$at\$5DLC\$5IEN

*Display example:*

t: Traced (DLC) (IEN)

---

### RELATED USMARC DOCUMENT/FIELD

*USMARC Formats for Bibliographic Data:* 4XX (Series Statement) and 8XX (Series Added Entry) fields

### OTHER RELATED DOCUMENT

*Symbols of American Libraries*

**646 Series Classification Practice (R)***O*Indicators

<u>First</u>	Undefined	<i>M</i>
Ø	Undefined	<i>M</i>
<u>Second</u>	Undefined	<i>M</i>
Ø	Undefined	<i>M</i>

Subfield Codes

≠a	Series classification practice (NR)	<i>M</i>
≠d	Volumes/dates to which classification practice applies (NR)	( <i>current</i> ) <i>O</i> ( <i>earlier</i> ) <i>M</i>
≠5	Institution/copy to which field applies (R)	<i>M</i>

**FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE**

This field contains a one-character code that indicates a specific organization's classification practice for a series named in the 1XX field of an established heading record for a series (008/09, Kind of record, code a). The code specifies whether the volumes in the series are classified as a collection, with the main series, or separately. The field may also contain the volumes/dates and/or the institution/copy identification to which the classification practice applies. Field 646 is not used to indicate that a series-like phrase (008/12, Type of series, code c) is not classified. Varying classification practices for different ranges of volumes/dates within a series, for different copies or sets within the same organization, or for different organizations are contained in separate 646 fields.

**GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS****■ INDICATORS**

Both indicator positions are undefined; eac

**■ SUBFIELD CODES**

- ≠a - **Series classification practice**  
Subfield ≠a contains a one-character code series.
- s - **Volumes are classified separately**  
Code s indicates that no classification each volume in the series is classified



**c - Volumes are classified as a collection**

**m - Volumes are classified with main or other series**

Codes c and m indicate that a classification number is assigned to the series. The call number for the series is contained in one of the call number fields (050, 060, 070, 082) or in a locally defined call number field (09X) in the established series heading record.

Varying classification practices are contained in separate 646 fields.

130 00#Bibliothèque des "Temps nouveau" (Series)

646 00#as#5DLC

*[No class number assigned to series classified separately.]*

100 00#Dostoyevsky, Fyodor,#d1821-1881.#tWorks.#f1972

646 00#ac#5DLC

050 00#PG3325#b.A1 1972

130 00#Trudy Instituta éksperimental'noï meteorologii.#pSeriã "Fizika nizhneï atmosfery"

646 00#am#5DLC

130 00#Technical report (Cooperative National Park Resources Studies Unit, Hawaii)

646 00#as#5DLC

646 00#ac#5DI

090 00#QH198.H3#bC66#5DI

**#d - Volumes/dates to which classification practice applies**

Subfield #d contains a statement identifying those items in the series to which the classification practice applies. Subfield #d is used only when the classification practice contained in subfield #a does not apply to all items of the series.

130 00#Monographs of the Society for Research in Child Development

646 00#ac#dv. 1-35, v. 49-#5DLC

646 00#as#dv. 36-48#5DLC

050 00#LB1103#b.S6#dv. 1-35, v. 49-

**#5 - Institution/copy to which field applies**

Subfield #5 contains the National Union Catalog (NUC) symbol of the organization that uses the classification practice contained in subfield #a. The NUC symbol for each organization using the classification practice is contained in a separate subfield #5. An NUC symbol may be followed by copy or set identification. Administrative unit or special collection identification may be given in parentheses after the copy information. Each copy or set identification for multiple copies within a single organization follows the organization's NUC symbol contained in a separate subfield #5. (The NUC symbol is an authoritative-agency data element. The Library of Congress maintains the *Symbols of American Libraries* and is the authoritative agency.)

130 00#I.U.B. symposium series

646 00#as#5DLC#5ICU

130 0#aAmericana Germanica  
 646 0#as#5DLC#5DLC photo-offset reprint

---

## INPUT CONVENTIONS

### Punctuation

Field 646 does not end with a period as a mark of punctuation unless the field ends with an abbreviation, an initialism, or other data that ends with a mark of punctuation.

646 0#as#5DLC photo-offset reprint

### Capitalization

The code in subfield #a is input in lowercase. The capitalization of the NUC symbol characters strictly follows that found in *Symbols of American Libraries*.

646 0#ac#5NjP

### Spacing

One space separates terms/abbreviations and numeric/alphabetic designations.

646 0#ac#dv. 1-19#5DLC

646 0#as#dv. 20-#5DLC

Three spaces represent the missing part of an open-entry numbering designation in subfield #d when it is followed by additional subfield #d data.

646 0#ac#d< -1981>#5DLC

646 0#am#d<1980- , 1983-1984>#5DLC

646 0#as#d<160- >#5DLC

### Order

The 646 field for *current* classification practice precedes the 646 field for *earlier* practice.

646 0#ac#dv. 1-35, v. 49-#5DLC

646 0#as#dv. 36-48#5DLC

## Display Constants

: Classified separately	[associated with code <i>s</i> in subfield # <i>a</i> ]
: Classified as a collection	[associated with code <i>c</i> in subfield # <i>a</i> ]
: Classified with main or other series	[associated with code <i>m</i> in subfield # <i>a</i> ]
Applies to:	[associated with the content of subfield # <i>a</i> ]
( ... )	[parentheses associated with the content of subfield # <i>5</i> ]

Phrases such as *Classified separately*, *Classified as a collection*, or *Classified with main or other series* are not carried in the USMARC record. They may be system generated as display constants associated with the code contained in subfield #*a*.

A phrase such as *Applies to:* is not carried in the USMARC record. It may be system generated as a display constant associated with the content of subfield #*d*.

*Content designated field:*

646  $\backslash s \# a \# d v. 20 - \# 5 DLC$

*Display example:*

s: Classified separately Applies to: v. 20- (DLC)

Parentheses enclosing the NUC symbol are not carried in the USMARC record. They may be system generated as a display constant associated with the content of each subfield #*5*.

*Content designated field:*

646  $\backslash s \# a \# 5 DLC \# 5 DI$

*Display example:*

c: Classified as a collection (DLC) (DI)

## RELATED USMARC DOCUMENT/FIELD

050 Library of Congress Call Number  
090 Local Call Number

## OTHER RELATED DOCUMENT

*Symbols of American Libraries*





## 66X-68X Notes – General Information

	<i>National Level Requirement</i>
667 Nonpublic General Note (R)	O
670 Source Data Found (R)	A
675 Source Data Not Found (NR)	O
678 Epitome (NR)	O
680 Public General Note (R)	O
681 Subject Example Tracing Note (R)	O
682 Deleted Heading Information (NR)	O
688 Application History Note (R)	O

---

## DEFINITION AND SCOPE

General notes are contained in field 667 (Nonpublic General Note) or 680 (Public General Note). The remaining 66X-68X fields are used for specialized information. Except for field 680, these notes often are not written in a form adequate for public display.

Alternate Graphic Representation

Subfield #6 (Linkage) is defined for all of the note fields. The description of subfield #6 in field 667 (Nonpublic General Note) also applies to each of these fields. It will be added to the other fields when they are reissued for other changes.



| **667 Nonpublic General Note (R)**

O

Indicators

First    Undefined  
 ␣        Undefined

M  
 M

Second    Undefined  
 ␣        Undefined

M  
 M

Subfield Code

␣a    Nonpublic general note (NR)  
 ␣5    Institution to which field applies (R)  
 ␣6    Linkage (NR)

M  
 A  
 A

**FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE**

This field contains a note that provides general information about a 1XX heading for which a specialized note field has not been defined. The information may be permanent or temporary and may or may not be written in a form that is adequate for public display. Each distinct item of information is contained in a separate 667 field.

A general note for public display is contained in field 680 (Public General Note).

**GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS**■ **INDICATORS**

Both indicator positions are undefined; each co

■ **SUBFIELD CODE**

␣a - Nonpublic general note

Subfield ␣a contains a nonpublic general note.

100 10␣aMozart, Wolfgang Amadeus,␣d175  
       ␣nK. 426,␣rC minor

667 ␣␣␣aLater arr. for string orchestra as p:



**‡5 - Institution to which field applies**

Subfield ‡5 contains the National Union Catalog (NUC) symbol of the organization to which the note applies. It identifies an institute-specific note that may not apply to a universal use of the heading. (The NUC symbol is an authoritative-agency data element. The Library of Congress maintains the *Symbols of American Libraries* and is the authoritative agency.) Subfield ‡5 is always the last subfield in the field.

130 \$0‡aQuarto book (Quarto Marketing Ltd.)

667 \$b‡aGive phrase as quoted note if Quarto Marketing Ltd. does not appear in the body of the description.‡5DLC

**‡6 - Linkage**

Subfield ‡6 contains data that link pairs of fields that are alternate graphic representations of each other. It contains the tag number of an associated field and an occurrence number. A complete description of subfield ‡6 and guidelines for applying it are provided in the *880 Alternate Graphic Representation* section.

**RELATED USMARC DOCUMENT/FIELD**

680 Public General Note

880 Alternate Graphic Representation

*Symbols of American Libraries*

**CONTENT DESIGNATOR HISTORY**

667 *Name Usage or Scope Note* [REDEFINED]

‡a *Usage or scope note* [REDEFINED]

In 1991, this field was redefined as a nonpublic general note and its scope was expanded for use in authority records for both names and subjects.

**670 Source Data Found (R)***A*Indicators

<u>First</u>	Undefined
Ø	Undefined

*M**M*

<u>Second</u>	Undefined
Ø	Undefined

*M**M*Subfield Codes

‡a	Source citation (NR)
‡b	Information found (NR)
‡6	Linkage (NR)

*M**A**A***FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE**

This field contains a citation for a consulted source in which information is found about the 1XX heading in an established heading record or a subdivision record (008/09, Kind of record, code a, d, or f). The field may also include the information found in the source. Each source citation is contained in a separate 670 field.

A citation for a consulted source that yielded no information about the heading is contained in field 675 (Source Data Not Found).

The citations and information in this field are often not written in a form adequate for public user display.

**GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS****■ INDICATORS**

Both indicator positions are undefined; each contains a blank (Ø).

**■ SUBFIELD CODES****‡a - Source citation**

Subfield ‡a contains a citation for a published work or a description of any source or action that provided information about the heading, e.g., a telephone call to a publisher. The citation includes enough information to identify the work, such as the author, title, and imprint date. When the author is the same as the 1XX heading, one of the following may be used in the citation: *His*, *Her*, *Author's* (gender unknown), or *Its* (not a personal name). When a 100 heading is used for more

than one person (008/32, Undifferentiated personal name, code b), subfield  $\#a$  may contain a descriptive term for an author enclosed within brackets, e.g., [Author of Ireland].

150  $\#0\#a$ Sanitation Workers Strike, Memphis, Tenn., 1968  
670  $\#b\#a$ Work cat.: Beifuss, J.T. At the river I stand, 1985

110 20 $\#a$ Oxon Hill Manor (Md.)  
670  $\#b\#a$ Phone call to National Register of Historic Places

100 10 $\#a$ Smith, Howard  
670  $\#b\#a$ [Added entry of Inside Japan]  
670  $\#b\#a$ Inside Japan, 1981: $\#b$ verso t.p. (Howard Smith)  
670  $\#b\#a$ [Author of Ireland]  
670  $\#b\#a$ His Ireland, 1974: $\#b$ t.p. (Howard Smith)

#### $\#b$ - Information found

Subfield  $\#b$  contains a parenthetical statement of the information found in the source. A statement of the location of the information within the source, such as *cover*, *t.p.*, *foreword*, may also be contained in subfield  $\#b$ . Multiple occurrences of location/information found within the same source are contained in a single subfield  $\#b$ .

100 10 $\#a$ Defoe, Daniel, $\#d$ 1661?-1731  
670  $\#b\#a$ InU/Wing STC files $\#b$ (usage: a lay-hand in the country)

110 20 $\#a$ Twin City Federal  
670  $\#b\#a$ Lund, D. A. Billions for homes, c1980: $\#b$ t.p. (TCF) verso t.p.  
(Twin City Federal) p. 11 (founded 4-2-23)

110 20 $\#a$ Bentley Historical Library  
670  $\#b\#a$ Billington, R. A. Local history is ... 1974.  
670  $\#b\#a$ Its Guide to manuscripts in the Bentley Historical Library, 1976:  
 $\#b$ t.p. (Bentley Historical Library, Michigan Historical Collections,  
Univ. of Mich.)

130  $\#0\#a$ AFRI research report  
670  $\#b\#a$ AFRI research report, no. 5 (1971): $\#b$ t.p.

#### | $\#6$ - Linkage

Subfield  $\#6$  contains data that link pairs of fields that are alternate graphic representations of each other. It contains the tag number of an associated field and an occurrence number. A complete description of subfield  $\#6$  and guidelines for applying it are provided in the *880 Alternate Graphic Representation* section.

## INPUT CONVENTIONS

### Punctuation and Spacing

Punctuation and spacing is a matter of judgment. The examples used in the *Guidelines* area reflect current Library of Congress practice.

**Order**

The first 670 field in a record should contain the citation for the work for which the 1XX heading is being established whenever there is one. Other sources may be listed in any order.

---

**RELATED USMARC DOCUMENT/FIELD**

008/32 Undifferentiated personal name  
675 Source Data Not Found  
880 Alternate Graphic Representation



**675 Source Data Not Found (NR)**

O

Indicators

<u>First</u>	Undefined
Ø	Undefined

M  
M

<u>Second</u>	Undefined
Ø	Undefined

M  
MSubfield Code

‡a	Source citation (R)
‡6	Linkage (NR)

M  
A**FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE**

This field contains a citation for a consulted source in which no information is found about the 1XX heading in an established heading record or a subdivision record (008/09, Kind of record, code a, d, or f). In unusual instances, the field may also include questionable information that is found in the source (e.g., when the name found may refer to a different person). Multiple source citations are contained in a single 675 field.

A citation for a consulted source that yielded information about the heading is contained in field 670 (Source Data Found).

The citations and information in this field are often not written in a form adequate for public user display.

**GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS****■ INDICATORS**

Both indicator positions are undefined; each contains a blank (Ø).

**■ SUBFIELD CODE****‡a - Source citation**

Subfield ‡a contains a citation for a published work or a description of any source that provided no information about the heading. Each source citation is contained in a separate subfield ‡a.

151 ØØ‡aSkarvsnes (Antarctic regions)

675 ØØ‡aLippincott;‡aRand McNally;‡aWeb. geog.;‡aRand McNally new international atlas

110 20#Ironmaster's House (Pa.)

675 ##Nat. reg. hist. pl.

100 10#Foote, Arthur, #d1853-1937. #tDuets, #mpiano, 4 hands, #nop. 21

675 ##New Grove; #aThompson, 10th ed.

100 10#Miller, M.

675 ##WW in world Jewry, 1965; #aAcademic ww, 1973-74; #aWW in educ.,  
1974

130 10#Headline series

675 ##Harsch, Joseph C. Germany at war, 1942: scr. t.p. (Headline books)

#### #6 - Linkage

Subfield #6 contains data that link pairs of fields that are alternate graphic representations of each other. It contains the tag number of an associated field and an occurrence number. A complete description of subfield #6 and guidelines for applying it are provided in the *880 Alternate Graphic Representation* section.

---

## INPUT CONVENTIONS

### Punctuation

Multiple source citations are separated from each other by a semicolon.

---

## RELATED USMARC DOCUMENT/FIELD

670 Source Data Found

880 Alternate Graphic Representation

National Level  
Requirement**678 Epitome (NR)**

O

Indicators

First Undefined  
 Ø Undefined

M

M

Second Undefined  
 Ø Undefined

M

M

Subfield Code

‡a Epitome (R)

M

**FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE**

This field contains biographical, historical, or other information about the 1XX heading in an established heading record or a subdivision record (008/09, Kind of record, code a, d, or f). For example, the information may be a summary of the essential *source data found* from a manual authority record that is being retrospectively converted to machine-readable form. Citations for sources consulted during or after the conversion of the manual record are contained in field 670 (Source Data Found) or 675 (Source Data Not Found).

The information in this field is primarily intended to guide catalogers and is often not written in a form adequate for public user display.

**GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS****■ INDICATORS**

Both indicator positions are undefined; each co

**■ SUBFIELD CODE****‡a - Epitome**

Subfield ‡a contains a summary of the essential information about the heading. Each distinct item subfield ‡a.



- 100 10#Jordan, Joseph A.  
 678 #M.D., M.R.C.O.G.;#Dept. of Obstetrics and Gynaecology, Birmingham  
 Maternity Hosp., Queen Elizabeth Medical Center, Edgbaston
- 100 10#Haupt, Georges  
 678 #ab. 1928  
 670 #His aspects of international socialism, 1871-1914;#CIP pref. (b.  
 Szatmar; wrote in Rumanian, Hungarian, Russian; moved to Paris 1958;  
 d. 1978)
- 

## INPUT CONVENTIONS

### Punctuation

Multiple distinct items of information are separated from each other by a semicolon.

---

## RELATED USMARC DOCUMENT/FIELD

- 670 Source Data Found  
 675 Source Data Not Found

## | 680 Public General Note (R)

O

Indicators

First Undefined  
 ␣ Undefined

M

M

Second Undefined  
 ␣ Undefined

M

M

Subfield Codes

⧻a Heading or subdivision term (R)  
 ⧻i Explanatory text (R)  
 ⧻5 Institution to which field applies (R)  
 ⧻6 Linkage (NR)

A

M

A

A

**FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE**

This field contains a note that provides general information about a 1XX heading for which a specialized note field has not been defined. Each distinct item of information is contained in a separate 680 field. The note is written in a form adequate for public display. A general note not for public display is contained in field 667 (Nonpublic General Note).

**GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS****■ INDICATORS**

Both indicator positions are undefined; each contains a blank (␣).

**■ SUBFIELD CODES****⧻a - Heading or subdivision term**

Subfield ⧻a contains a heading or subdivision term that is used to amplify the text of the note contained in subfield ⧻i (Explanatory text).

008/11 a [Library of Congress Subject Headings]  
 150 ␣0⧻aFire-damp  
 680 ␣␣⧻iHere are entered works on methane as a combustible gas formed  
 in coal mines. Works on methane present in a stratum of coal are  
 entered under⧻aCoalbed methane.

**‡i - Explanatory text**

Subfield ‡i contains the text of the public general note. Subfield ‡i is repeated when subfield ‡a elements are embedded in the text.

- 008/11 a *[Library of Congress Subject Headings]*  
 150 ‡aCommerce  
 360 ‡b‡i subdivision ‡aCommerce ‡i under names of countries, cities, etc., and ethnic groups.  
 680 ‡b‡i Here are entered works on trade, both foreign and domestic.  
 680 ‡b‡i For commerce of countries, cities, etc., assign headings of the type  
     [place]—Commerce, further subdivided by place, if appropriate. If so  
     subdivided, assign a second heading with the place names reversed, e.g.,  
     1. Canada—Commerce—United States. 2. United States—Commerce—Canada.
- 008/10 c *[AACR 2]*  
 110 20 ‡aWorld Bank  
 680 ‡b‡i Here are entered works on the World Bank, an entity that consists of the common  
     staff and facilities of the International Bank for Reconstruction and Development  
     and International Development Association. Works dealing with either of these latter  
     organizations are entered under the appropriate name heading.
- 008/11 c *[Medical Subject Headings]*  
 150 ‡aAmbulatory Surgery  
 680 ‡b‡i Surgery performed on an outpatient basis. May be hospital-based or performed  
     in an office or surgicenter.  
 680 ‡b‡i outpatient surg performed in MD's office, surgicenter or hosp; only /econ /methods  
     /psychol /stand /trends /util (if by MeSH definition)

**‡5 - Institution to which field applies**

Subfield ‡5 contains the National Union Catalog (NUC) symbol of the organization to which the note applies. It identifies an institution-specific note that may not apply to a universal use of the heading. (The NUC symbol is an authoritative agency data element. The Library of Congress maintains the *Symbols of American Libraries* and is the authoritative agency). Subfield ‡5 is always the last subfield in the field.

- 008/11 a *[Art and Architecture Thesaurs]*  
 150 ‡aBaroque  
 680 ‡b‡i When Baroque is combined with style, it appears in the form ‡aBaroque  
     style. ‡i May be combined with terms in the Objects facet, e.g., sculpture.  
 680 ‡b‡i May be combined with geographic name in the form ‡aBaroque sculpture—  
     Germany. ‡5CaQMCCA

**‡6 - Linkage**

Subfield ‡6 contains data that link pairs of fields that are alternate graphic representations of each other. It contains the tag number of an associated field and an occurrence number. A complete description of subfield ‡6 and guidelines for applying it are provided in the *880 Alternate Graphic Representation* section.

---

## RELATED USMARC DOCUMENT/FIELD

667 Nonpublic General Note  
880 Alternate Graphic Representation  
*Symbols of American Libraries*

---

## CONTENT DESIGNATOR HISTORY

680 *Subject Scope Note* [REDEFINED]  
    ‡a *Subject heading or subdivision term* [REDEFINED]

In 1991, this field was redefined as a public general note and its scope was expanded for use in authority records for both subjects and names.



**681 Subject Example Tracing Note (R)**Indicators

First    Undefined  
 Ø        Undefined

O

M

M

Second    Undefined  
 Ø        Undefined

M

M

Subfield Codes

‡a    Subject heading or subdivision term (R)  
 ‡i    Explanatory text (R)  
 ‡6    Linkage (NR)

M

M

A

**FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE**

This field contains a note that documents the use of the 1XX subject heading or subdivision term in an established heading record or a subdivision record (008/09, Kind of record, code a, d, or f) as an example or reference in 260 Complex See Reference, 360 Complex See Also Reference, and/or 680 Public General Note fields of another established heading or reference record. It permits the updating of the 260, 360, or 680 field when a change is made to the 1XX heading.

The information in this field is often not written in a form adequate for public user display.

**GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS****■ INDICATORS**

Both indicator positions are undefined; each contains

**■ SUBFIELD CODES****‡a - Subject heading or subdivision term**

Subfield ‡a contains the 1XX heading of the established heading or subdivision record in the 260, 360, and/or 680 fields in which an established s

008/09    a    [established heading record]

151        Ø0 ‡aUnited States ‡xHistory ‡yQueen Ann

681        ØØ ‡iExample under ‡aWar

008/09 a *[established heading record]*  
 150 00#aWar  
 360 00#isubdivision#aClaims#iunder specific wars; and specific wars, battles, etc., e.g.#aRusso-Japanese War, 1904-1905; United States--History--Queen Anne's War, 1702-1713; Gettysburg, Battle of, 1863

#### #i - Explanatory text

Subfield #i contains text, such as *Example under [...]* and *Note under [...]*, that indicates how the established subject heading is used in the record for the heading referred to in subfield #a.

008/09 a *[established heading record]*  
 110 20#aLeague of Nations#xOfficials and employees  
 681 00#iExample under reference from#aOfficials and employees  
 681 00#iNote under#aPublic officers

008/09 b *[reference record (untraced reference)]*  
 150 00#aOfficials and employees  
 260 00#isubdivision#aOfficials and employees#iunder names of individual government agencies, names of colleges and universities, names of countries, cities etc.; and under certain subjects, e.g.#aCourts--Officials and employees; League of Nations--Officials and employees; State governments--Officials and employees; Trade-unions--Officials and employees

008/09 a *[established heading record]*  
 150 00#aPublic officers  
 680 00#iHere are entered general works. Works on public officers of a particular jurisdiction are entered under the heading for the jurisdiction with subdivision#aOfficials and employees, #i.e.g.#aLeague of Nations--Officials and employees; United States--Officials and employees

#### #6 - Linkage

Subfield #6 contains data that link pairs of fields that are alternate graphic representations of each other. It contains the tag number of an associated field and an occurrence number. A complete description of subfield #6 and guidelines for applying it are provided in the 880 *Alternate Graphic Representation* section.

#### RELATED USMARC DOCUMENT/FIELD

260 Complex See Reference--Subject  
 360 Complex See Also Reference--Subject  
 680 Public General Note  
 880 Alternate Graphic Representation

682 Deleted Heading Information (NR)

O

Indicators

<u>First</u>	Undefined	M
Ø	Undefined	M
<u>Second</u>	Undefined	M
Ø	Undefined	M

Subfield Codes

#i	Explanatory text (R)	M
#a	Replacement heading (R)	A

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

This field contains text that explains why an established heading record or a subdivision record (008, Kind of record, code a, d, or f) has been deleted from an authority file. The field may also contain the replacement heading(s). Field 682 is appropriate only when Leader/05 (Record status) contains code d (Record deleted, other).

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

■ INDICATORS

Both indicator positions are undefined; each contains a blank (Ø).

■ SUBFIELD CODES

#a - Replacement heading

Subfield #a contains the heading that replaces heading is contained in a separate subfield #a.

Leader/5 d [Deleted (other)]  
 150 Ø0#aPaleontologists, American, [Ger  
 682 ØØ#iThis heading has been replaced  
 #aPaleontologists—[place]#i for w  
 records are not made.



## #i - Explanatory text

Subfield #i contains the explanatory text of the note. The text may be broken up by subfield #a data and may be only a connector term, such as *and*.

Leader/5 d *[Deleted (other)]*

110 10#aUnited States.#bEmbassy.#bJapan

682 ~~##~~#iThis heading has been removed from the subject authority file  
because it is not a valid AACR 2 heading.

Leader/5 d *[Deleted (other)]*

151 ~~##~~0#aValley Forge National Historical Park (Pa.)

682 ~~##~~#iThis heading has been removed from the subject authority file  
because it is covered by an identical heading in the name  
authority file (n81-18255).

---

## RELATED USMARC DOCUMENT/FIELD

Leader/05 Record status

## | 688 Application History Note (R)

O

Indicators

First Undefined  
 Ø Undefined

M  
 M

Second Undefined  
 Ø Undefined

M  
 M

Subfield Codes

‡a Application history note (NR)  
 ‡5 Institution to which field applies (R)  
 ‡6 Linkage (NR)

M  
 A  
 A

## FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

This field contains information that documents changes in the application of the 1XX heading. The field may contain such historical information as when a topical term or a geographic name became valid for subject purposes, earlier forms of the heading, and the period during which each earlier form was valid.

## GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

## ■ INDICATORS

Both indicator positions are undefined; each contains a blank (Ø).

## ■ SUBFIELD CODES

‡a - Application history note

Subfield ‡a contains an application history note.

008/11 c [Medical Subject Headings]  
 150 Ø‡aCyclohexanones  
 688 ØØ‡i(91)75; was see under CYCLOHEXANES 1975-90

008/11 r [Art and Architecture Thesaurus]  
 150 Ø‡acollage  
 450 Ø‡acollage technique  
 680 ØØ‡iUse for the technique of making compositions in two dimensions or very low relief by gluing paper, fabrics, photographs or other materials onto a flat surface. If heavy three-dimensional objects dominate, use "assemblage." If the constituent fragments form a somewhat unified image, use "montage."

008/11 a [*Library of Congress Subject Headings*]  
 150 0#Child abuse  
 450 0#women#Cruelty to children  
 688 0#stab. 1975; heading was: Cruelty to children [1952-1965]

#### #5 - Institution to which field applies

Subfield #5 contains the National Union Catalog (NUC) symbol of the organization to which the note applies. It identifies an institution-specific note that may not apply to a universal application history for the heading. (The NUC symbol is an authoritative-agency data element. The Library of Congress maintains the *Symbols of American Libraries* is the authoritative agency.) Subfield #5 is always the last subfield in the field.

#### #6 - Linkage

Subfield #6 contains data that link pairs of fields that are alternate graphic representations of each other. It contains the tag number of an associated field and an occurrence number. A complete description of subfield #6 and guidelines for applying it are provided in the *880 Alternate Graphic Representation* section.

---

## INPUT CONVENTIONS

### Punctuation and Spacing

Punctuation and spacing are matters of judgment.

---

## RELATED USMARC DOCUMENT/FIELD

880 Alternate Graphic Representation  
*Symbols of American Libraries*

**0 Alternate Graphic Representation (R)***A*Indicators1st Same as associated field*M*2nd Same as associated field*M*Field Codes

⌘6 Linkage (NR)

*M*

⌘a-z Same as associated field

*M*⌘0-5, Same as associated field  
7-9*M***FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE**

This field contains the fully content-designated alternate graphic representation of data that is contained in another field of the same record. Field 880 is linked to the associated roman-character field subfield ⌘6 (Linkage). A subfield ⌘6 in the associated field links that field to the 880 field. When associated field does not exist in the record, field 880 is constructed as if it did and a reserved occurrence number is used to indicate this special situation. The data in field 880 need not be totally in roman alphabet.

**GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS**

Field 880 and the associated field both contain a subfield ⌘6 (Linkage). Separate guidelines are provided in this section for applying subfield ⌘6 in field 880 and in associated fields.

**INDICATORS** [*Field 880*]

The indicators in field 880 have the same meaning as in field 0 and are not described in this section. See the description of field 0.

**SUBFIELD CODES** [*Field 880*]

The subfields in field 880 are the same as those in field 0 (Linkage). Only subfield ⌘6, which for the 880 field is used to link to the associated field, is described in this section. For a description of all other subfields, see the description of field 0.

### ‡6 - Linkage [In field 880]

Subfield ‡6 contains a linking tag and an occurrence number that link the 880 field to the associated roman-character field. In field 880, subfield ‡6 also contains a code that identifies the first alternate graphic character set encountered in a left-to-right scan of the field. It may also contain a code signaling that the orientation for a display of the field is right to left. In field 880, subfield ‡6 is structured as follows:

<linking tag>-<occurrence number>/<identification of alternate graphic character set>/<field orientation code>

Subfield ‡6 is always the first subfield in the field.

**Linking tag and occurrence number** – The *linking tag* part contains the tag number of the associated field and is always three characters in length. This is followed immediately by a hyphen and the two-digit *occurrence number* part. A different occurrence number is assigned to each set of associated fields within a single record. The function of an occurrence number is to permit the matching of the associated fields, not to sequence the fields within the record. An occurrence number may be assigned at random for each associated fields set. An occurrence number of less than two digits is right justified and the unused position contains a zero. When there is no associated field to which field 880 is linked, the occurrence number in subfield ‡6 is 00. The linking tag part will contain the tag the associated field would have had if it had existed in the record.

100 10‡6880-01‡aHeading in roman form

880 10‡6100-01/(2/t‡aHeading in Hebrew script linked to associated field

880 ‡6675-00/(2/r‡aSource citation in Hebrew script

[The second 880 field is not linked to an associated field. The occurrence number is 00.]

**Identification of alternate graphic character set** – The occurrence number is followed immediately by a slash (/) and the *identification of alternate graphic character set*. This code identifies the first alternate character set encountered in a left-to-right scan of the field. It consists of the Intermediate and Final characters of the standard escape sequence that designates the alternate graphic character set. This code is also carried in field 066‡c (Character Sets Present, Alternate graphic character set identification). (See *USMARC Specifications for Record Structure, Character Sets, Tapes* for a description of the Intermediate and Final characters of the standard escape sequences used in USMARC records).

880 10‡6100-01/(2/r‡aHeading in Hebrew script

[The (2 identifies the Basic Hebrew character set.)]

**Orientation code** – In a USMARC record, the contents of field 880 are always recorded in their logical order, from the first character to the last, regardless of field orientation. For a display of the field, the default field orientation is left to right. When the field contains text that has a right-to-left orientation, the identification of the alternate graphic character set part is followed by a slash (/) and the *field orientation code*. The USMARC field orientation code is the letter r. When the text does not have a right-to-left orientation, the field orientation code and the preceding slash are omitted. (See *USMARC Specifications for Record Structure, Character Sets, Tapes* for a detailed description of field orientation.)

880 ‡6675-00/(2/r‡aSource citation in Hebrew script

[The r indicates the right-to-left orientation of the Hebrew script.]

## ■ SUBFIELD CODES [Associated fields]

A subfield #6 (Linkage), which contains two elements, is added to an associated field to link it to the alternate graphic representation in a field 880. The subfield #6 in the associated field is described in this section.

### #6 - Linkage [In associated fields]

Subfield #6 contains a linking tag and an occurrence number that link an associated roman field to the 880 field that contains the same data in nonroman characters. In associated roman fields, subfield #6 is structured as follows:

<linking tag>-<occurrence number>

Subfield #6 is always the first subfield in the field.

**Linking tag and occurrence number** – The *linking tag* part contains field tag 880. This is followed immediately by a hyphen and the two-digit *occurrence number* part. A different occurrence number is assigned to each set of associated fields within a single record. The function of an occurrence number is to permit the matching of the associated fields, not to sequence the fields within the record. An occurrence number may be assigned at random for each associated fields set. An occurrence number of less than two digits is right justified and the unused position contains a zero.

100 10#6880-01#aHeading in roman form  
880 10#6100-01/(N#aHeading in Cyrillic script

## ■ EXAMPLES:

Although not shown in the examples, the nonroman character strings within each 880 field are preceded and followed by the appropriate escape sequences that control the character sets in a record. These escape sequences are specified and illustrated in the *USMARC Specifications for Record Structure, Character Sets, Tapes*.

066 \$b#c(N  
100 10#6880-01#aZem (sovskiĭ, I. I.#q(Izaliĭ Iosifovich)  
880 10#6100-01/(N#aЗемцовский, И. И.Е#q(Иза́лий Иосифович)

066 \$b#c(2  
100 00#aGreenhauff, Charles  
400 10#6880-01#aGrinhof, Yehoshu'a  
880 10#6400-01/(2/r#aגרינהאָף, ירחשע  
[The r in field 880#6 indicates the right-to-left orientation of the Hebrew script.]

Cross reference display example:

גרינהאָף, ירחשע  
search under: Greenhauff, Charles

## RELATED USMARC DOCUMENT/FIELD

066 Character Sets Present  
USMARC Authority fields for which subfield #6 is defined  
*USMARC Specifications for Record Structure, Character Sets, Tapes*



## **APPENDIXES**

- A - Table of Content Designators**
- B - Obsolete and Previously Used Content Designators**
- C - Summary of Data Coding Interdependencies**
- D - Full Record Examples**
- E - Alphabetical List of Ambiguous Headings**
- F - Initial Definite and Indefinite Articles**
- G - Content Designator Terminology Changes**









## Table of Content Designators

National Level  
Requirement

<b>LEADER</b>		<i>M</i>
00-04	Logical record length	<i>M</i>
05	Record status	<i>M</i>
	a Increase in encoding level	<i>A</i>
	c Corrected or revised	<i>A</i>
	d Deleted (other)	<i>A</i>
	n New	<i>A</i>
	s Deleted; heading split into two or more headings	<i>A</i>
	x Deleted; heading replaced by another heading	<i>A</i>
06	Type of record	<i>M</i>
	z Authority data	<i>M</i>
07-09	Undefined character positions	<i>M</i>
10	Indicator count	<i>M</i>
11	Subfield code count	<i>M</i>
12-16	Base address of data	<i>M</i>
17	Encoding level	<i>M</i>
	n Complete authority record	<i>A</i>
	o Incomplete authority record	<i>A</i>
18-19	Undefined character positions	<i>M</i>
20-23	Entry map	<i>M</i>
20	Length of the length-of-field portion	<i>M</i>
21	Length of the starting-character-position portion	<i>M</i>
22	Length of the implementation-defined portion	<i>M</i>
23	Undefined Entry map character position	<i>M</i>
<b>DIRECTORY</b>		<i>M</i>
00-02	Tag	<i>M</i>
03-06	Field length	<i>M</i>
07-11	Starting character position	<i>M</i>
001	<b>CONTROL NUMBER (NR)</b>	<i>M</i>
	This field has no indicators or subfield codes.	
005	<b>DATE AND TIME OF LATEST TRANSACTION (NR)</b>	<i>M</i>
	This field has no indicators or subfield codes.	
008	<b>FIXED-LENGTH DATA ELEMENTS (NR)</b>	<i>M</i>
00-05	Date entered on file	<i>M</i>
06	Direct/indirect geographic subdivision	<i>O</i>
	Ø Not subdivided geographically	<i>O</i>
	d Subdivided geographically—direct	<i>O</i>
	i Subdivided geographically—indirect	<i>O</i>
	n Not applicable	<i>O</i>

## Appendix A

### National Level Requirement

008/07	Romanization scheme	<i>O</i>
	a International standard	<i>O</i>
	b National standard	<i>O</i>
	c National library association standard	<i>O</i>
	d National library or bibliographic agency standard	<i>O</i>
	e Local standard	<i>O</i>
	f Standard of unknown origin	<i>O</i>
	g Conventional romanization or conventional form of name in language of cataloging agency	<i>O</i>
	n Not applicable	<i>O</i>
08	Undefined character position	<i>O</i>
09	Kind of record	<i>M</i>
	a Established heading record	<i>A</i>
	b Reference record (untraced reference)	<i>A</i>
	c Reference record (traced reference)	<i>A</i>
	d Subdivision record	<i>A</i>
	e Node label record	<i>A</i>
	f Established heading and subdivision record	<i>A</i>
	g Reference and subdivision record	<i>A</i>
10	Descriptive cataloging rules	<i>M</i>
	a Earlier rules	<i>A</i>
	b AACR 1	<i>A</i>
	c AACR 2	<i>A</i>
	d AACR 2 compatible heading	<i>A</i>
	z Other	<i>A</i>
	n Not applicable	<i>A</i>
11	Subject heading system/thesaurus	<i>M</i>
	a Library of Congress Subject Headings	<i>A</i>
	b LC subject headings for children's literature	<i>A</i>
	c Medical Subject Headings	<i>A</i>
	d National Agricultural Library subject authority file	<i>A</i>
	k Canadian Subject Headings	<i>A</i>
	r Art and Architecture Thesaurus	<i>A</i>
	v Répertoire des vedettes-matière	<i>A</i>
	z Other	<i>A</i>
	n Not applicable	<i>A</i>
12	Type of series	<i>M</i>
	a Monographic series	<i>A</i>
	b Multipart item	<i>A</i>
	c Series-like phrase	<i>A</i>
	z Other	<i>A</i>
	n Not applicable	<i>A</i>
13	Numbered/unnumbered series	<i>M</i>
	a Numbered series	<i>A</i>
	b Unnumbered series	<i>A</i>
	c Series numbering varies	<i>A</i>
	n Not applicable	<i>A</i>

## Appendix A

### *National Level Requirement*

008/14	Heading use—main or added entry	<i>M</i>
	a Heading is appropriate for use as main or added entry	<i>A</i>
	b Heading is not appropriate for use as main or added entry	<i>A</i>
15	Heading use—subject added entry	<i>M</i>
	a Heading is appropriate for use as subject added entry	<i>A</i>
	b Heading is not appropriate for use as subject added entry	<i>A</i>
16	Heading use—series added entry	<i>M</i>
	a Heading is appropriate for use as series added entry	<i>A</i>
	b Heading is not appropriate for use as series added entry	<i>A</i>
17	Type of subject subdivision	<i>O</i>
	a Topical	<i>O</i>
	b Form	<i>O</i>
	c Chronological	<i>O</i>
	d Geographic	<i>O</i>
	e Language	<i>O</i>
	n Not applicable	<i>O</i>
18-27	Undefined character positions	<i>O</i>
28	Type of government agency	<i>O</i>
	b Not a government agency	<i>O</i>
	a Autonomous or semi-autonomous component of the Soviet Union, Yugoslavia, or Malaysia	<i>O</i>
	c Multilocal	<i>O</i>
	f Federal/national	<i>O</i>
	i International intergovernmental	<i>O</i>
	l Local	<i>O</i>
	m Multistate	<i>O</i>
	o Government agency—type undetermined	<i>O</i>
	s State, provincial, territorial, dependent, etc.	<i>O</i>
	z Other type of government agency	<i>O</i>
	u Unknown if heading is government agency	<i>O</i>
29	Reference evaluation	<i>M</i>
	a Tracings are consistent with the heading	
	b Tracings are not necessarily consistent with the heading	
	n Not applicable	
30	Undefined character position	
31	Record update in process	
	a Record can be used	
	b Record is being updated	
32	Undifferentiated personal name	
	a Differentiated personal name	
	b Undifferentiated personal name	
	n Not applicable	

## Appendix A

### National Level Requirement

008/33	Level of establishment	<i>M</i>
	a Fully established heading	<i>A</i>
	b Memorandum	<i>A</i>
	c Provisional	<i>A</i>
	d Preliminary	<i>A</i>
	n Not applicable	<i>A</i>
34-37	Undefined character positions	<i>O</i>
38	Modified record	<i>O</i>
	␣ Not modified	<i>O</i>
	s Shortened	<i>O</i>
	x Missing characters	<i>O</i>
39	Cataloging source	<i>M</i>
	␣ Library of Congress	<i>A</i>
	a National Agricultural Library	<i>A</i>
	b National Library of Medicine	<i>A</i>
	c Library of Congress cooperative cataloging program	<i>A</i>
	d Other sources	<i>A</i>
	u Unknown	<i>A</i>
010	<b>LIBRARY OF CONGRESS CONTROL NUMBER (NR)</b>	<i>A</i>
	<u>Indicators</u> Undefined	<i>M</i>
	<u>Subfield Codes</u>	
	␣a LC Control number (NR)	<i>O</i>
	␣z Cancelled/invalid LC control number (R)	<i>M</i>
014	<b>LINK TO BIBLIOGRAPHIC RECORD FOR SERIAL OR MULTIPART ITEM (R)</b>	<i>O</i>
	<u>Indicators</u> Undefined	<i>M</i>
	<u>Subfield Codes</u>	
	␣a Control number of related bibliographic record (NR)	<i>M</i>
	␣6 Linkage (NR)	<i>A</i>
020	<b>INTERNATIONAL STANDARD BOOK NUMBER (R)</b>	<i>A</i>
	<u>Indicators</u> Undefined	<i>M</i>
	<u>Subfield Codes</u>	
	␣a International Standard Book Number (NR)	<i>A</i>
	␣c Terms of availability (NR)	<i>O</i>
	␣z Cancelled/invalid ISBN (R)	<i>A</i>
	␣6 Linkage (NR)	<i>A</i>
022	<b>INTERNATIONAL STANDARD SERIAL NUMBER (R)</b>	<i>A</i>
	<u>Indicators</u> Undefined	<i>M</i>
	<u>Subfield Codes</u>	
	␣a International Standard Serial Number (NR)	<i>A</i>
	␣y Incorrect ISSN (R)	<i>A</i>
	␣z Cancelled ISSN (R)	<i>A</i>
	␣6 Linkage (NR)	<i>A</i>

## Appendix A

*National Level  
Requirement*

035	SYSTEM CONTROL NUMBER (R)	<i>O</i>
	<u>Indicators</u> Undefined	<i>M</i>
	<u>Subfield Codes</u>	
	‡a System control number (NR)	<i>M</i>
	‡z Cancelled/invalid system control number (R)	<i>A</i>
	‡6 Linkage (NR)	<i>A</i>
040	CATALOGING SOURCE (NR)	<i>M</i>
	<u>Indicators</u> Undefined	<i>M</i>
	<u>Subfield Codes</u>	
	‡a Original cataloging agency (NR)	<i>M</i>
	‡b Language of cataloging (NR)	<i>O</i>
	‡c Transcribing agency (NR)	<i>M</i>
	‡d Modifying agency (R)	<i>A</i>
	‡f Subject heading/thesaurus conventions (NR)	<i>A</i>
042	AUTHENTICATION CODE (NR)	<i>O</i>
	<u>Indicators</u> Undefined	<i>M</i>
	<u>Subfield Code</u>	
	‡a Authentication code (R)	<i>M</i>
043	GEOGRAPHIC AREA CODE (NR)	<i>O</i>
	<u>Indicators</u> Undefined	<i>M</i>
	<u>Subfield Code</u>	
	‡a Geographic area code (R)	<i>M</i>
045	TIME PERIOD OF HEADING (NR)	<i>O</i>
	<u>Indicators</u>	
	First Type of time period in subfield ‡b or ‡c	<i>M</i>
	‡ Subfield ‡b or ‡c not present	<i>A</i>
	0 Single date/time	<i>A</i>
	1 Multiple single dates/times	<i>A</i>
	2 Range of dates/times	<i>A</i>
	Second Undefined	<i>M</i>
	<u>Subfield Codes</u>	
	‡a Time period code (R)	<i>A</i>
	‡b Formatted 9999 B.C. through A.D. time period (R)	<i>A</i>
	‡c Formatted pre-9999 B.C. time period (R)	<i>A</i>
050	LIBRARY OF CONGRESS CALL NUMBER (R)	<i>O</i>
	<u>Indicators</u>	<i>M</i>
	First Undefined	<i>M</i>
	Second Source of call number	<i>M</i>
	0 Assigned by LC	<i>A</i>
	4 Assigned by agency other than LC	<i>A</i>



## Appendix A

		<i>National Level Requirement</i>
	<u>Subfield Codes</u>	
	‡a Classification number (NR)	<i>M</i>
	‡b Item number (NR)	<i>A</i>
	‡d Volumes/dates to which call number applies (NR)	( <i>current</i> ) <i>O</i>
		( <i>earlier</i> ) <i>M</i>
	‡5 Institution to which field applies (R)	<i>A</i>
	‡6 Linkage (NR)	<i>A</i>
052	<b>GEOGRAPHIC CLASSIFICATION CODE (R)</b>	<i>O</i>
	<u>Indicators</u> Undefined	<i>M</i>
	<u>Subfield Codes</u>	
	‡a Geographic classification area code (NR)	<i>M</i>
	‡b Geographic classification subarea code (R)	<i>A</i>
053	<b>LC CLASSIFICATION NUMBER (R)</b>	<i>O</i>
	<u>Indicators</u> Undefined	<i>M</i>
	<u>Subfield Codes</u>	
	‡a Classification number—single number or beginning number of a range (NR)	<i>M</i>
	‡b Classification number—end number of a range (NR)	<i>A</i>
	‡c Explanatory term (NR)	<i>A</i>
060	<b>NATIONAL LIBRARY OF MEDICINE CALL NUMBER (R)</b>	<i>O</i>
	<u>Indicators</u>	
	First Undefined	<i>M</i>
	Second Source of call number	<i>M</i>
	0 Assigned by NLM	<i>A</i>
	4 Assigned by agency other than NLM	<i>A</i>
	<u>Subfield Codes</u>	
	‡a Classification number (NR)	<i>M</i>
	‡b Item number (NR)	<i>A</i>
	‡d Volumes/dates to which call number applies (NR)	( <i>current</i> ) <i>O</i>
		( <i>earlier</i> ) <i>M</i>
	‡5 Institution to which field applies (R)	<i>A</i>
	‡6 Linkage (NR)	<i>A</i>
066	<b>CHARACTER SETS PRESENT (NR)</b>	<i>A</i>
	<u>Indicators</u>	
	First Undefined	<i>M</i>
	<u>Subfield Codes</u>	
	‡a Non-ASCII G0 default character set designation (NR)	<i>O</i>
	‡b Non-ANSEL G1 default character set designation (NR)	<i>O</i>
	‡c Alternate graphic character set identification (R)	<i>M</i>
070	<b>NATIONAL AGRICULTURAL LIBRARY CALL NUMBER (R)</b>	<i>O</i>
	<u>Indicators</u> Undefined	
	<u>Subfield Codes</u>	
	‡a Classification number (NR)	<i>M</i>
	‡b Item number (NR)	<i>A</i>
	‡d Volumes/dates to which call number applies (NR)	( <i>current</i> ) <i>O</i>
		( <i>earlier</i> ) <i>M</i>
	‡6 Linkage (NR)	<i>A</i>

# Appendix A

National Level  
Requirement

072	<b>SUBJECT CATEGORY CODE (R)</b>	<i>O</i>
	<u>Indicators</u>	<i>M</i>
	First Undefined	<i>M</i>
	Second Code source	<i>A</i>
	# No information provided	<i>A</i>
	0 National Agricultural Library subject category code list	<i>A</i>
	7 Code source specified in subfield #2	
	<u>Subfield Codes</u>	<i>M</i>
	#a Subject category code (NR)	<i>A</i>
	#x Subject category code subdivision (R)	<i>A</i>
	#2 Code source (NR)	<i>A</i>
	#6 Linkage (NR)	
073	<b>SUBDIVISION USAGE (NR)</b>	<i>O</i>
	<u>Indicators</u> Undefined	<i>M</i>
	<u>Subfield Codes</u>	<i>M</i>
	#a Subdivision usage (R)	<i>M</i>
	#z Source (NR)	<i>A</i>
	#6 Linkage (NR)	
082	<b>DEWEY DECIMAL CALL NUMBER (R)</b>	<i>O</i>
	<u>Indicators</u>	<i>M</i>
	First Type of edition	<i>A</i>
	0 Full edition	<i>A</i>
	1 Abridged edition	<i>M</i>
	Second Source of call number	<i>A</i>
	0 Assigned by LC	<i>A</i>
	4 Assigned by agency other than LC	
	<u>Subfield Codes</u>	<i>M</i>
	#a Classification number (NR)	<i>A</i>
	#b Item number (NR)	<i>O</i>
	#d Volumes/dates to which call number applies (NR)	<i>M</i>
		<i>(current)</i>
		<i>(earlier)</i>
	#2 Edition number (NR)	<i>M</i>
	#5 Institution to which field applies (R)	<i>A</i>
	#6 Linkage (NR)	<i>A</i>
083	<b>DEWEY DECIMAL CLASSIFICATION NUMBER (R)</b>	<i>O</i>
	<u>Indicators</u>	<i>M</i>
	First Type of edition	<i>A</i>
	0 Full edition	<i>A</i>
	1 Abridged edition	<i>M</i>
	Second Undefined	
	<u>Subfield Codes</u>	<i>M</i>
	#a Classification number—single number or beginning number of a range (NR)	<i>A</i>
	#b Classification number—end number of a range (NR)	<i>A</i>
	#c Explanatory term (NR)	<i>M</i>
	#2 Edition number (NR)	<i>A</i>
	#6 Linkage (NR)	

1

## Appendix A

### National Level Requirement

#f	Date of a work (NR)	A
#g	Miscellaneous information (NR)	A
#h	Medium (NR)	O
#k	Form subheading (R)	A
#l	Language of a work (NR)	A
#m	Medium of performance for music (R)	A
#n	Number of part/section/meeting (R)	A
#o	Arranged statement for music (NR)	A
#p	Name of part/section of a work (R)	A
#r	Key for music (NR)	A
#s	Version (NR)	A
#t	Title of a work (NR)	A
#x	General subdivision (R)	A
#y	Chronological subdivision (R)	A
#z	Geographic subdivision (R)	A
#6	Linkage (NR)	A
111	HEADING-MEETING NAME (NR)	A
	<u>Indicators</u>	
	First Type of meeting name entry element	M
	0 Inverted name	A
	1 Jurisdiction name	A
	2 Name in direct order	A
	Second Nonfiling characters	M
	0-9 Number of nonfiling characters present	M
	<u>Subfield Codes</u>	
#a	Meeting name or jurisdiction name as entry element (NR)	M
#c	Location of meeting (NR)	A
#d	Date of meeting (NR)	A
#e	Subordinate unit (R)	A
#f	Date of a work (NR)	A
#g	Miscellaneous information (NR)	A
#h	Medium (NR)	O
#k	Form subheading (R)	A
#l	Language of a work (NR)	A
#n	Number of part/section/meeting (R)	A
#p	Name of part/section of a work (R)	A
#q	Name of meeting following jurisdiction name entry element (NR)	A
#s	Version (NR)	A
#t	Title of a work (NR)	A
#x	General subdivision (R)	A
#y	Chronological subdivision (R)	A
#z	Geographic subdivision (R)	A
#6	Linkage (NR)	A

## Appendix A

		<i>National Level Requirement</i>
<b>130</b>	<b>HEADING--UNIFORM TITLE (NR)</b>	<i>A</i>
	<u>Indicators</u>	
	First Undefined	<i>M</i>
	Second Nonfiling characters	<i>M</i>
	0-9 Number of nonfiling characters present	<i>M</i>
	<u>Subfield Codes</u>	
	#a Uniform title (NR)	<i>M</i>
	#d Date of treaty signing (R)	<i>A</i>
	#f Date of a work (NR)	<i>A</i>
	#g Miscellaneous information (NR)	<i>A</i>
	#h Medium (NR)	<i>O</i>
	#k Form subheading (R)	<i>A</i>
	#l Language of a work (NR)	<i>A</i>
	#m Medium of performance for music (R)	<i>A</i>
	#n Number of part/section of a work (R)	<i>A</i>
	#o Arranged statement for music (NR)	<i>A</i>
	#p Name of part/section of a work (R)	<i>A</i>
	#r Key for music (NR)	<i>A</i>
	#s Version (NR)	<i>A</i>
	#t Title of a work (NR)	<i>A</i>
	#x General subdivision (R)	<i>A</i>
	#y Chronological subdivision (R)	<i>A</i>
	#z Geographic subdivision (R)	<i>A</i>
	#6 Linkage (NR)	<i>A</i>
<b>150</b>	<b>HEADING--TOPICAL TERM (NR)</b>	<i>A</i>
	<u>Indicators</u>	
	First Undefined	<i>M</i>
	Second Nonfiling characters	<i>M</i>
	0-9 Number of nonfiling characters present	<i>M</i>
	<u>Subfield Codes</u>	
	#a Topical term or geographic name as entry element (NR)	<i>M</i>
	#b Topical term following geographic name as entry element (NR)	<i>A</i>
	#x General subdivision (R)	<i>A</i>
	#y Chronological subdivision (R)	<i>A</i>
	#z Geographic subdivision (R)	<i>A</i>
	#6 Linkage (NR)	<i>A</i>
<b>151</b>	<b>HEADING--GEOGRAPHIC NAME (NR)</b>	<i>A</i>
	<u>Indicators</u>	
	First Undefined	<i>M</i>
	Second Nonfiling characters	<i>M</i>
	0-9 Number of nonfiling characters present	<i>M</i>
	<u>Subfield Codes</u>	
	#a Geographic name (NR)	<i>M</i>
	#x General subdivision (R)	<i>A</i>
	#y Chronological subdivision (R)	<i>A</i>
	#z Geographic subdivision (R)	<i>A</i>
	#6 Linkage (NR)	<i>A</i>

# Appendix A

National Level  
Requirement

260	COMPLEX SEE REFERENCE--SUBJECT (R)	A
	<u>Indicators</u> Undefined	M
	<u>Subfield Codes</u>	
	‡a Heading referred to (R)	M
	‡i Explanatory text (R)	M
	‡6 Linkage (NR)	A
360	COMPLEX SEE ALSO REFERENCE--SUBJECT (R)	A
	<u>Indicators</u> Undefined	M
	<u>Subfield Codes</u>	
	‡a Heading referred to (R)	M
	‡i Explanatory text (R)	M
	‡6 Linkage (NR)	A
TRACING FIELDS		
	‡i Text of reference instruction phrase (NR)	A
	‡w Control subfield (NR)	A
	/0 Special relationship	O
	a Earlier heading	O
	b Later heading	O
	d Acronym	O
	f Musical composition	O
	g Broader term	O
	h Narrower term	O
	i Reference instruction phrase in subfield ‡i	O
	n Not applicable	O
	/1 Tracing use restriction	O
	a Name reference structure only	O
	b Subject reference structure only	O
	c Series reference structure only	O
	d Name and subject reference structures	O
	e Name and series reference structures	O
	f Subject and series reference structures	O
	g Name, subject, and series reference structures	O
	n Not applicable	O
	/2 Earlier form of heading	O
	a Pre-AACR 2 form of heading (national name authority file)	O
	e Earlier established form of heading (national authority file)	O
	o Earlier established form of heading (other authority file)	O
	n Not applicable	O
	/3 Reference display	O
	a Reference not displayed	O
	b Reference not displayed, field 664 used	O
	c Reference not displayed, field 663 used	O
	d Reference not displayed, field 665 used	O
	n Not applicable	O
	‡5 Institution to which field applies (R)	A

## Appendix A

		<i>National Level Requirement</i>
400	SEE FROM TRACING--PERSONAL NAME (R) <i>[see 100 and Tracing Fields]</i>	<i>A</i>
410	SEE FROM TRACING--CORPORATE NAME (R) <i>[see 110 and Tracing Fields]</i>	<i>A</i>
411	SEE FROM TRACING--MEETING NAME (R) <i>[see 111 and Tracing Fields]</i>	<i>A</i>
430	SEE FROM TRACING--UNIFORM TITLE (R) <i>[see 130 and Tracing Fields]</i>	<i>A</i>
450	SEE FROM TRACING--TOPICAL TERM (R) <i>[see 150 and Tracing Fields]</i>	<i>A</i>
451	SEE FROM TRACING--GEOGRAPHIC NAME (R) <i>[see 151 and Tracing Fields]</i>	<i>A</i>
500	SEE ALSO FROM TRACING--PERSONAL NAME (R) <i>[see 100 and Tracing Fields]</i>	<i>A</i>
510	SEE ALSO FROM TRACING--CORPORATE NAME (R) <i>[see 110 and Tracing Fields]</i>	<i>A</i>
511	SEE ALSO FROM TRACING--MEETING NAME (R) <i>[see 111 and Tracing Fields]</i>	<i>A</i>
530	SEE ALSO FROM TRACING--UNIFORM TITLE (R) <i>[see 130 and Tracing Fields]</i>	<i>A</i>
550	SEE ALSO FROM TRACING--TOPICAL TERM (R) <i>[see 150 and Tracing Fields]</i>	<i>A</i>
551	SEE ALSO FROM TRACING--GEOGRAPHIC NAME (R) <i>[see 151 and Tracing Fields]</i>	<i>A</i>
640	SERIES DATES OF PUBLICATION AND/OR VOLUME DESIGNATION (R)	<i>A</i>
	<u>Indicators</u>	
	First Note format style	<i>M</i>
	0 Formatted style	<i>A</i>
	1 Unformatted style	<i>A</i>
	Second Undefined	<i>M</i>
	<u>Subfield Codes</u>	
	#a Dates of publication and/or volume designation (NR)	<i>M</i>
	#z Source of information (NR)	<i>A</i>
	#6 Linkage (NR)	<i>A</i>

## Appendix A

National Level  
Requirement

641	<b>SERIES NUMBERING PECULIARITIES (R)</b> <u>Indicators</u> Undefined <u>Subfield Codes</u>	O M
	‡a Numbering peculiarities note (NR)	M
	‡z Source of information (NR)	A
	‡6 Linkage (NR)	A
642	<b>SERIES NUMBERING EXAMPLE (R)</b> <u>Indicators</u> Undefined <u>Subfield Codes</u>	A M
	‡a Series numbering example (NR)	M
	‡d Volumes/dates to which series numbering example applies (NR)	(current) O (earlier) M
	‡5 Institution/copy to which field applies (R)	M
	‡6 Linkage (NR)	A
643	<b>SERIES PLACE AND PUBLISHER/ISSUING BODY (R)</b> <u>Indicators</u> Undefined <u>Subfield Codes</u>	O M
	‡a Place (R)	M
	‡b Publisher/issuing body (R)	M
	‡d Volumes/dates to which place and publisher/issuing body apply (NR)	(current) O (earlier) M
	‡6 Linkage (NR)	A
644	<b>SERIES ANALYSIS PRACTICE (R)</b> <u>Indicators</u> Undefined <u>Subfield Codes</u>	O M
	‡a Series analysis practice (NR)	M
	f Analyzed in full	
	p Analyzed in part	
	n Not analyzed	
	‡b Exceptions to analysis practice (NR)	A
	‡d Volumes/dates to which analysis practice applies (NR)	(current) O (earlier) M
	‡5 Institution/copy to which field applies (R)	M
	‡6 Linkage (NR)	A
645	<b>SERIES TRACING PRACTICE (R)</b> <u>Indicators</u> Undefined <u>Subfield Codes</u>	O M
	‡a Series tracing practice (NR)	M
	t Traced as a series added entry	
	n Not traced as a series added entry	
	‡d Volumes/dates to which tracing practice applies (NR)	(current) O (earlier) M
	‡5 Institution/copy to which field applies (R)	M
	‡6 Linkage (NR)	A



## Appendix A

		National Level Requirement
646	<b>SERIES CLASSIFICATION PRACTICE (R)</b>	
	<u>Indicators</u> Undefined	O
	<u>Subfield Codes</u>	M
	‡a Series classification practice (NR)	M
	‡c Volumes are classified as a collection	
	‡m Volumes are classified with main or other series	
	‡s Volumes are classified separately	
	‡d Volumes/dates to which classification practice applies (NR)	(current) O
	‡5 Institution/copy to which field applies (R)	(earlier) M
	‡6 Linkage (NR)	M
		A
663	<b>COMPLEX SEE ALSO REFERENCE-NAME (NR)</b>	
	<u>Indicators</u> Undefined	O
	<u>Subfield Codes</u>	M
	‡a Explanatory text (R)	M
	‡b Heading referred to (R)	M
	‡t Title referred to (R)	A
	‡6 Linkage (NR)	A
		A
664	<b>COMPLEX SEE REFERENCE-NAME (R)</b>	
	<u>Indicators</u> Undefined	O
	<u>Subfield Codes</u>	M
	‡a Explanatory text (R)	M
	‡b Heading referred to (R)	M
	‡t Title referred to (R)	A
	‡6 Linkage (NR)	A
		A
665	<b>IIISTORY REFERENCE (NR)</b>	
	<u>Indicators</u> Undefined	O
	<u>Subfield Codes</u>	M
	‡a History reference (R)	M
	‡6 Linkage (NR)	A
		A
666	<b>GENERAL EXPLANATORY REFERENCE-NAME (NR)</b>	
	<u>Indicators</u> Undefined	O
	<u>Subfield Codes</u>	M
	‡a General explanatory reference (R)	M
	‡6 Linkage (NR)	A
		A
667	<b>NONPUBLIC GENERAL NOTE (R)</b>	
	<u>Indicators</u> Undefined	O
	<u>Subfield Codes</u>	M
	‡a Nonpublic general note (NR)	M
	‡5 Institution to which field applies (R)	A
	‡6 Linkage (NR)	A
		A
670	<b>SOURCE DATA FOUND (R)</b>	
	<u>Indicators</u> Undefined	A
	<u>Subfield Codes</u>	M
	‡a Source citation (NR)	M
	‡b Information found (NR)	A
	‡6 Linkage (NR)	A
		A

## Appendix A

National Level  
Requirement

675	<b>SOURCE DATA NOT FOUND (NR)</b>		O
		<u>Indicators</u> Undefined	M
	<u>Subfield Codes</u>		
		#a Source citation (R)	M
		#6 Linkage (NR)	A
678	<b>EPITOME (NR)</b>		O
		<u>Indicators</u> Undefined	M
	<u>Subfield Codes</u>		
		#a Epitome (R)	M
		#6 Linkage (NR)	A
680	<b>PUBLIC GENERAL NOTE (R)</b>		O
		<u>Indicators</u> Undefined	M
	<u>Subfield Codes</u>		
		#a Heading or subdivision term (R)	A
		#i Explanatory text (R)	M
		#5 Institution to which field applies (R)	A
		#6 Linkage (NR)	A
681	<b>SUBJECT EXAMPLE TRACING NOTE (R)</b>		O
		<u>Indicators</u> Undefined	M
	<u>Subfield Codes</u>		
		#a Subject heading or subdivision term (R)	M
		#i Explanatory text (R)	M
		#6 Linkage (NR)	A
682	<b>DELETED HEADING INFORMATION (NR)</b>		O
		<u>Indicators</u> Undefined	M
	<u>Subfield Codes</u>		
		#a Replacement heading (R)	A
		#i Explanatory text (R)	M
		#6 Linkage (NR)	A
688	<b>APPLICATION HISTORY NOTE (R)</b>		O
		<u>Indicators</u> Undefined	M
	<u>Subfield Codes</u>		
		#a Application history note (NR)	M
		#5 Institution to which field applies (R)	A
		#6 Linkage (NR)	A
880	<b>ALTERNATE GRAPHIC REPRESENTATION (R)</b>		A
		<u>Indicators</u> Same as associated field	M
	<u>Subfield Codes</u>		
		#a-z Same as associated field	M
		#0-5,7-9 Same as associated field	M
		#6 Linkage (NR)	M







## Obsolete and Previously Used Content Designators

This appendix contains two lists. The first contains content designators that were once defined but are not currently defined in *USMARC Format for Authority Data*. These content designators should not occur in any USMARC records. The second list contains content designators that were previously used in older authority records but are not used in current records. These content designators are defined in *USMARC Format for Authority Data*, but the description contains a restricted use statement.

---

### OBSOLETE CONTENT DESIGNATORS

#### ■ LEADER

- /07 Bibliographic level  
 Defined codes were: t, Name/title heading; u, Uniform title heading; x, Name heading; y, Subject heading. This character position is currently undefined.

#### ■ VARIABLE CONTROL FIELDS

- 002 Subrecord Linkage Field  
 This field tag is currently undefined.
- 008 Fixed-Length Data Elements
- 008/11-13 Site number for fields  
 These character positions are currently defined as: /11, Subject heading system/thesaurus; /12, Type of series; /13, Numbered/unnumbered series.
- 008/14 Author aspect of heading  
 Character position is currently named *Heading use—main or added entry*. Codes ø (Undetermined), u (Unknown), and c (Heading is appropriate for use as a main or added entry) are obsolete. The meaning of code c is incorporated into the current definition of code a.
- 008/15 Subject aspect of heading  
 Character position is currently named *Heading use—subject added entry*. Codes ø (Undetermined), u (Unknown), and c (Heading is appropriate for use as a subject) are obsolete. The meaning of code c is incorporated into the current definition of code a.

## Appendix B

- 008/16 Series aspect of heading  
Character position is currently named *Heading use—series added entry*. Codes  $\emptyset$  (Undetermined), u (Unknown), and c (Heading is appropriate for use as a series) are obsolete. The meaning of code c is incorporated into the current definition of code a.
- 008/34 Heading used in LC  
Defined codes were: a, In LC; b, Not in LC. This character position is currently undefined.
- 008/35-37 Language of heading code  
These character positions were undefined in 1986. Records created prior to 1986 may contain a hyphen (-) or a fill character (|) in each of these three character positions.

### ■ VARIABLE DATA FIELDS

010-681 All variable data fields

$\#w$  - Control subfield

The 24-character (00-23), fixed-length subfield  $\#w$  occurring in all of the variable data fields (010-681) is currently defined as a 1- to 4-character (0-3), variable-length subfield optionally used only in 4XX and 5XX tracing fields.

	<u>Obsolete</u>	<u>Current</u>
/00	Status	Special relationship in 4XX and 5XX fields
/01	Site number	Tracing use restriction in 4XX and 5XX fields
/02	Site number (cont'd.)	Earlier form of heading in 4XX and 5XX fields
/03	Site number (cont'd.)	Reference display in 4XX and 5XX fields
/04-09	Date of last transaction	
/10	Distribution	
/11	Cataloging source code	
/12	Rules (Names)	008/10 Cataloging rules and $\#w/2$ , Earlier form of heading
/13	Inclusion for printing (Names)	
/14	Tracing information indicator	$\#w/0$ Special relationship
/15	Reference generation indicator	$\#w/3$ Reference display
/16	Romanization scheme	008/07 Romanization scheme
/17-19	Language tables	
/20	Rules (Subjects)	008/11 Subject heading system/thesaurus
/21	Inclusion for printing (Subjects)	
/22	Relator terms	
/23	Tracing use indicator	$\#w/1$ Tracing use restriction

- 013    Link to Bibliographic Records  
       This field tag is currently undefined.
  
  - 110    Heading—Corporate Name
  - 410    See From Tracing—Corporate Name
  - 510    See Also From Tracing—Corporate Name  
       #u - Nonprinting subject
  
  - 111    Heading—Meeting Name
  - 411    See From Tracing—Meeting Name
  - 511    See Also From Tracing—Meeting Name  
       #b - Number of conference  
       Subfield #n (Number of part/section/meeting) is used in both current and retro-  
       spectively converted records.
  
  - 151    Heading—Geographic Name
  - 451    See From Tracing—Geographic Name
  - 551    See Also From Tracing—Geographic Name  
       #b - Name following place as entry element
  
  - 668    Characters in Nonroman Alphabets  
       This field tag is currently undefined.
  
  - 676    Note—Cataloging Rules (Names)  
       This field tag is currently undefined.
  
  - 699    Note—Temporary Scope Note (Subjects)  
       This field tag is currently undefined.
  
  - 880    Sorting Field  
       This field tag is currently undefined.
- 

## PREVIOUSLY USED IN OLDER RECORDS

### ■ VARIABLE CONTROL FIELDS

- 008    Fixed-Length Data Elements
  - 008/10    Descriptive cataloging rules
    - a - Earlier rules
    - b - AACR I
  - 008/17    Type of subject subdivision
    - ⌀ - Undefined
  - 008/29    Reference evaluation
    - ⌀ - Undefined



## Appendix B

008/38 Modified record  
s - Shortened  
x - Missing characters

### ■ VARIABLE DATA FIELDS

050 Library of Congress Call Number  
Indicator 2 - Undefined (Ø)

090 Local Call Number  
All of the 09X (090-099) fields are reserved for local series call number definition.

130 Heading—Uniform Title  
430 See From Tracing—Uniform Title  
530 See Also From Tracing—Uniform Title  
‡g - Miscellaneous information

4XX and 5XX Tracing Fields  
‡w/0 Special relationship  
f - Musical composition





## Summary of Data Coding Interdependencies

The following analyses summarize data coding interdependencies that must be considered in each kind of record identified in 008/09 and in established heading records for specific types of headings. All of the data elements that may (or may not be) used in an authority record are not listed here. Only those elements that are dependent upon other codes or data elements are cited. Annotated full record examples are provided in Appendix D.

---

### Established heading record (general requirements)

- 008/09 = a or f
- Record must contain a Leader, Directory, and the following variable fields: 001, 005, 008, 040, 1XX
- The following fields may not be in the record: 260, 664, 666
- 008/06 is code n or fill character (|) if 008/15 = b
- If 008/10 = n, 008/11 must not be code n
- If 008/11 = n, 008/10 must not be code n
- 008/13 is code n if 008/12 = n or 008/16 = b
- 008/14 is code a if 008/10 is not code n (#x, #y, #z must not be present in 1XX)
- 008/15 is code a if 008/11 is not code n (#x, #y, #z may be present in 1XX)
- 008/16 is code a if 008/12 is not code n (#x, #y, #z must not be present in 1XX)
- 008/17 is any defined code (if 008/09 = f) or a fill character (|)
- 008/29 is code a or b if 4XX/5XX fields are present
- 008/32 is code n if 1XX is not a 100 field having Indicator 1 = 0, 1, or 2
- 008/33 must not be code n

### Established name, name/title, and uniform title headings (other than series headings)

- 008/09 = a
- The following series-specific variable fields may not be in the record: 014, 020, 022, 050, 060, 070, 082, 09X, 64X series treatment fields
- 008/10 must not be code n
- 008/11 may be code other than n
- 008/12-13 must be n if 008/16 = b
- 008/14 must be code a
- 008/15 must be code a if 008/11 is not n
- 008/16 must be code b
- 008/28 must be a defined code or a fill character (|)

*See also general requirements for established heading record*

## Appendix C

### Established series heading

- 008/09 = a
- The record may contain any of the following series-specific variable fields: 014, 020, 022, 050, 060, 070, 082, 09X
- The record may contain 64X series treatment fields with the following restrictions:
  - 641 and 642 must not be present if 008/13 = b or n
  - 642 requires field 645 to be code t
  - 644, 645, and 646 must not be present if 008/12 = c
- 008/10, 12, and 33 must not be code n
- 008/14 and 16 must be code a
- 008/15 must be code a if 008/11 is not code n
- 008/28 may be code  $\emptyset$  or a fill character (|)
- 008/32 must be code n

*See also general requirements for established heading record*

### Established topical term and geographic headings

- 008/09 = a
- The following fields may not be in the record: 663, 667
- 008/07 and 17 may be code n or a fill character (|)
- 008/10, 12-13, and 32 must be code n
- 008/11 must not be code n
- 008/14 must be code b
- 008/15 must be code a
- 008/16 must be code b
- 008/28 may be code  $\emptyset$  or a fill character (|)

*See also general requirements for established heading record*

### Reference record

- 008/09 = b, c, or g
- Record must contain a Leader, a Directory, and the following variable fields: 001, 005, 008, 040, 1XX
- One of the following reference note fields must be in the record: 260, 664, 666
- The following fields may not be in the record: 4XX, 5XX
- 008/06 must be code n or a fill character (|)
- 008/10 may not be code n if 008/09 = b or c and 664 or 666 is present
- 008/11 may not be code n if 008/09 = b or g and 260 is present
- 008/14-16 must be code b
- 008/12, 13, 29, and 33 must be code n
- 008/28 must be code  $\emptyset$  or a fill character (|)

## Subdivision record

- 008/09 = d
- Record must contain a Leader, a Directory, and the following variable fields: 005, 008, 040, and 1XX
- 008/06 and 07 must be code n or a fill character (|)
- 008/10, 12, 13, 28, 29, 32, 33 must be code n
- 008/11 must not be code n
- 008/14-16 must be code b
- 008/17 must not be code n but may be a fill character (|)

## Node label record

- 008/09 = e
- Record must contain a Leader, a Directory, and the following variable fields: 005, 008, 040, and 1XX
- The record contains no tracings and references (260, 4XX, 5XX) or note (667, 68X) fields
- 008/06 and 07 must be code n or a fill character (|)
- 008/10, 12, 13, 17, 29, 32, and 33 must be code n
- 008/11 must not be code n
- 008/14-16 must be code b
- 008/17 must be code n









## Full Record Examples

The examples in this appendix reflect the application of USMARC content designators in a full record context. Although the data may be taken from actual authority records, these records are included for illustrative purposes only and are not usable for authority purposes.

Note that the creator of the authority data is unknown (008/39, code u; 040, no subfield #a) and that ex as the control number prefix in field 001 indicates that the record is an example only. The system-generated portions of the Leader (LDR) are represented by asterisks (\*). The records also lack a system-generated Directory. The 008 has been segmented to improve readability. The segmentation is as follows: character positions 0-5, 6-10, 11-15, 16-20, 21-25, 26-30, 31-35, 36-39.

## ESTABLISHED HEADING RECORD--PERSONAL NAME

This example typifies the most common authority record, an established heading for a personal name. Several 670 fields (Source Data Found) are present in this record. 008/10 is coded c to indicate conformity to AACR 2 rules; 008/29 is coded n because no 4XX or 5XX tracing fields are present.

| LDR \*\*\*\*\*nzbbb22\*\*\*\*\*nbb4500

001 exb86114834b

005 19870121083133.6

008	870121	bnnbac	nnnaa	bnnbbb	bbbbb	bbbn	aaa	bb	bbbu
-----	--------	--------	-------	--------	-------	------	-----	----	------

040 b#cDLC

100 10#aCameron, Simon,#d1799-1889

670 b#aNUCMC data from NJ Hist. Soc. for Bradley, J.P. Papers, 1836-1937#b(Simon Cameron)

670 b#aLC data base, 1-21-87#b(hdg.: Cameron, Simon, 1799-1889)

670 b#aDAB#b(Cameron, Simon, 1799-1889; Sen. from Pa. (Republican boss); financier; Sec. War under Lincoln; Min. to Russia; s. Charles & Martha (Pfoutz) C.; newspaper editor; owner Harrisburg Republican; commis. to settle claims of Winnebago Indians; m. Margaret Brua; father of: J.D. Cameron (1833-1918))

## Appendix D

### ESTABLISHED HEADING RECORD--CORPORATE NAME

This example is an established heading record for a corporate name. A full complement of 4XX and 5XX tracing fields and 670 Source Data Found fields are present. 008/06 is coded i to indicate that the heading can be divided geographically by the indirect method. This is common with many corporate name heading records. 008/29 is coded a to indicate that the cross reference tracings have been evaluated for consistency with the cataloging rules upon which the 1XX is based. Note that some of the indicator values in the tracing fields are different from the indicator values used in the heading to reflect different entry element types.

---

LDR \*\*\*\*\*nz00022\*\*\*\*\*n004500

001 ex0822212190

005 19860107072428.3

008 

860107	in0ac	nnnaa	0n000	00000	00sa0	ana00	000u
--------	-------	-------	-------	-------	-------	-------	------

040 00#cDLC

110 20#aOklahoma Council on Juvenile Delinquency

410 10#aOklahoma.#bCouncil on Juvenile Delinquency

410 10#aOklahoma.#bOklahoma Council on Juvenile Delinquency

510 20#wa#aOklahoma Council on Juvenile Delinquency Planning

510 20#wb#aOklahoma Council on Juvenile Justice

670 00#aOklahoma Council on Juvenile Delinquency Planning. Youth in trouble, 1971-1982:#bv. 2, t.p. (Oklahoma Council on Juvenile Delinquency) p. 3 (organized as Oklahoma Council on Juvenile Delinquency Planning in 1969)

670 00#aOklahoma Council on Juvenile Justice. Report, 1983:#bp. 5 (Oklahoma Council on Juvenile Justice ... previously the Oklahoma Council on Juvenile Delinquency)

## ESTABLISHED HEADING RECORD—MEETING NAME

This example of an established heading for a meeting name shows occasions when a subfield code is input before a mark of punctuation. Generally content designators follow punctuation, such as commas, periods, colons, etc. In both the 111 and the second and third 670 fields, the content designators precede the opening parenthesis.

The 4XX field includes a control subfield #w that produces a special display and indicates any reference structure restrictions. In this case, the subfield #w codes identify the form of name in the 4XX as the form of heading established under earlier cataloging rules and suppress the display of a cross reference.

LDR \*\*\*\*\*nz22\*\*\*\*\*n4500

001 exb82243908

005 19840607000000.0

008 | 840607 | in|ac | nnnaa | bn| | | | | | | | |

040 ||#cDLC

111 20#aCanadian Arctic Expedition#d(1913-1918)

411 20#wnnaa#aCanadian Arctic Expedition,#d1913-1918

670 ||#aRoberts, H. Eskimo songs, 1925:#bt.p. (Canadian Arctic Expedition, 1913-1918)

670 ||#aLC data base, 2/18/84#b(hdg.: Canadian Arctic Expedition, 1913-1918)

670 ||#aNLC, 3/1/84#b(AACR 2: Canadian Arctic Expedition (1913-1918))

## Appendix D

### ESTABLISHED HEADING RECORD—GEOGRAPHIC NAME

This example of an established heading for a geographic name includes Ø as the first indicator value in all of the variable data fields. 008/06 is coded Ø because this heading cannot be subdivided geographically. Authoritative reference sources are usually cited in 670 fields to justify the form of the name in field 151 and any 4XX/5XX tracing fields in geographic name heading records.

---

LDR \*\*\*\*\*nzØØ22\*\*\*\*\*nØØ4500

001 exØ84112192Ø

005 19860610134533.5

008 | 860529 | ØnØac | nnnaa | bnØØØ | ØØØØØ | ØØfaØ | anaØØ | ØØØu |

040 ØØ#cDLC

151 Ø0#aBurkina Faso

451 Ø0#aBurkina

451 Ø0#aBourkina

451 Ø0#aBourkina Fasso

551 Ø0#wa#aUpper Volta

670 ØØ#aU.S. Dept. of State. Geographic note GE-198, 8/26/84#b(as of 8/4/84 by presidential decree of Thomas Sankara, Republic of Upper Volta will henceforth be known as Burkina Faso; short form: Burkina; long form: Burkina Faso; inhabitants are called Burkinabe)

670 ØØ#aBGN, 9/24/84#b(Burkina [brief] Faso, name in effect 8/4/84 along with new flag, anthem; former name: Upper Volta)

670 ØØ#aWashington Post, 8/3/84#b(Upper Volta will change its name to Bourkina Fasso which means "country of incorruptible men")

## ESTABLISHED HEADING RECORD—UNIFORM TITLE (SERIES)

This is an example of an established heading for a uniform title. It can be identified as a series title heading by code a 008/12 and by the presence of 64X series treatment fields. The 646, 644, 645, and 642 fields contain a subfield #5 that identifies the institution/copy to which the field applies. Note that subfield #5 is not defined for other fields in the authorities format. Note also that ISBD punctuation is not included in the 643 field; it may be system generated as display constants.

In this record 008/06 contains a fill (|) character, showing that no attempt has been made to code that aspect of this heading. This example also illustrates the absence of subfield #b containing the citation of the form found in the source in the 670 field.

---

```

LDR *****nz0022*****n04500
001 ex0420325790
005 19840322000000.0
008 | 840322 | |n0ac | naaaa | an000 | 000000 | 000000 | an000 | 0000u |
040 00#cDLC
130 00#aBulletin (Ahmadu Bello University. Dept. of Geology)
410 20#aAhmadu Bello Univerity.#bDept. of Geology.#tBulletin
646 00#as#5DLC
644 00#af#5DLC
645 00#at#5DLC
642 00#av. 2#5DLC
643 00#aZaria, Nigeria#bDept. of Geology of Ahmadu Bello University
670 00#aKogbe, C.A. Geology of the south eastern (Sokoto) sector of the Iullemmeden
    Basin, 1979:#bser. t.p.
  
```

## Appendix D

### ESTABLISHED HEADING RECORD—TOPICAL SUBJECT

Established heading records for topical subjects typically include several 4XX and 5XX fields. The tracing fields are justified by numerous 670 fields. Sources in which no information was found are recorded in a single 675 field, each identified by subfield #a. The 675 field is not repeatable.

In this record, 008/06 is coded i to indicate that the heading can be geographically subdivided by the indirect method. The descriptive cataloging rules code in 008/10 is n, because this character position is not applicable to the formulation of topical subject headings.

---

LDR \*\*\*\*\*nzþþþ22\*\*\*\*\*nþþ4500

001 exþ86004405þ

005 19860808072450.5

008 | 860719 | inþan | annba | bnþþþ | þþþþþ | þþþaþ | anaþþ | þþþu |

040 þþþcDLC

150 þ0þaOptical disks

450 þ0þaDiscs, Optical

450 þ0þaDisks, Optical

450 þ0þaOptical discs

550 þ0þwgþaOptical storage devices

670 þ0þaWork cat.: McQueen, J. Videodisc and optical digital disk technologies and their applications in libraries, 1986.

670 þþþaWeb. 3þb(disk or disc)

670 þþþaLibrary Literatureþb(Optical discs)

670 þþþaMcGraw-Hill dict. sci. tech.þb(optical disk - a type of video disk storage device consisting of a pressed disk with a sprial groove at the bottom of which are submicrometer-sized depressions that are sensed by a laser beam.)

675 þþþaNCC thes. comput. terms;þaNASA;þaIAD;þaNCC thes. comput. terms;þaBDNE2

## ESTABLISHED HEADING AND SUBDIVISION RECORD

This record is coded f in 008/09 because the 151 heading may be used both as a main term and as a subject subdivision. Special information about the use of this heading may be included in general note fields 667 and/or 680. In this example no 670 is included to justify the 151 heading or 451 tracing fields, although one may be added if needed in the future.

---

LDR \*\*\*\*\*nz0022\*\*\*\*\*n04500

001 ex0881234560

005 19860423055828.0

008	860423	000fn	znnba	bd000	000000	000a0	ana00	000u
-----	--------	-------	-------	-------	--------	-------	-------	------

040 000cDLC

151 000aGreat Lakes

451 000aRegions of the United States

680 000aThis term is to be used only as a geographic descriptor and may not be subdivided. It may, however, be used to subdivide topical indexing terms.



## Appendix D

### REFERENCE RECORD (UNTRACED NAME REFERENCE)

The 1XX heading in an untraced name reference record (like this one from a meeting name) is not traced in a 4XX field in any established heading record. The name in this example did not qualify as a legitimate cross reference to the heading for the conference. Similar records are often needed from a particle of personal names (e.g., De la ...) or initial parts of corporate names (e.g., Royal ...) that would otherwise never qualify as cross references alone.

The coding of the 008 field must be done with care. Many common codes change for reference records, particularly character positions 14, 15, 16, and 29. General Explanatory Reference records for names may not contain 4XX, 5XX, or 67X fields. Explanatory notes are given in the 666 field.

---

**LDR** \*\*\*\*\*nz0022\*\*\*\*\*n004500

**001** ex0793731190

**005** 19790519201750.0

**008**

790519	nn0bc	nnnbb	bn000	000000	000000	ann00	0000u
--------	-------	-------	-------	--------	--------	-------	-------

**040** 000cDLC

**111** 200aPuebla

**666** 000aName used to refer to the 3rd Conferencia General del Episcopado Latinoamericano, held in Puebla, Mexico in 1979. Since this particular conference has come to be so well known books often refer to it simply as "Puebla", "Puebla '79", or "Puebla conference".

## REFERENCE RECORD (TRACED SUBJECT REFERENCE)

The 1XX heading in an traced subject reference record is traced in a 4XX field in a related established heading record. The reference instruction phrase is given in subfield  $\dagger$ i of the 260 field. 008/06, 10, 29, 32, and 33 must be coded n (not applicable) for this type heading. 008/14, 15, and 16 are coded b (not appropriate for use as a main or added entry in a bibliographic record).

*Reference record:*

LDR \*\*\*\*\*nz0022\*\*\*\*\*n04500  
 001 ex0991234570  
 005 19860327111910.5  
 008 | 860211 | nn0cn | znnbb | ba000 | 00000 | 000n0 | ann00 | 000u |  
 040 00#cDLC  
 150 00#aAntiquities, Roman  
 260 00#isubdivision#aAntiquities, Roman#iunder names of countries, cities, etc.

*Established heading record:*

LDR \*\*\*\*\*nz0022\*\*\*\*\*n04500  
 001 ex0997894650  
 005 19860327145341.5  
 008 | 860327 | 0n0an | znnba | bn000 | 00000 | 000ab | anab0 | 000u |  
 040 00#cDLC  
 151 00#aRome#xAntiquities  
 360 00#isubdivision#aAntiquities, Roman#iunder names of countries, cities, etc.  
 450 00#aAntiquities, Roman  
 450 00#aRoman antiquities

Appendix D

REFERENCE RECORD (TRACED REFERENCE)

The traced name reference record differs from the untraced name reference record (App. D, p. 8) in that the 1XX heading may be traced as a 4XX in an established heading record. The codes in the 008 field are similar to those in the untraced reference record, especially character positions 14, 15, 16, and 29. Explanatory notes are given in a 664 field, which is defined for this kind of record only. Reference records may not contain 4XX, 5XX, or 67X fields.

---

LDR \*\*\*\*\*nz22\*\*\*\*\*n4500

001 ex82000012

005 19840420171725.0

008 | 820106 | nncc | nnnbb | bbbb | bbbb | bbnb | aanb | bbu |

040 #cDLC#dDLC

100 10#aReger, Max,#d1873-1916.#tDies irae

664 #aFor this movement included in the composer's unfinished Requiem search under  
#bReger, Max, 1873-1916.#tRequiem (Mass)

## REFERENCE AND SUBDIVISION RECORD

This is an example of a reference and subdivision record. The heading in the 1XX is not used as a 4XX in any established heading record. The 1XX heading is an unestablished heading, but it may be used as a subject subdivision. The 260 Complex See Reference field gives specific instructions on the use of the subdivision.

LDR \*\*\*\*\*nz0022\*\*\*\*\*n004500

001 ex0990377000

005 19860328161425.8

008	860328	nn0gn	znnbb	ba000	000000	0000n0	ann00	000u
-----	--------	-------	-------	-------	--------	--------	-------	------

040 000cDLC

150 000aDisciples

260 000isubdivisionaDisciplesiunder specific names of individual persons

## Appendix D

### SUBDIVISION RECORD

The 1XX heading in this type record is unestablished but may be used as a subject subdivision with established headings. 4XX and 5XX fields are not used with this kind of record. Information about the subdivision term and/or other established subject headings with which it is used may be contained in general note fields 667 and/or 680. Subdivision records may contain 670 and 675 fields to justify the heading and usage.

---

LDR \*\*\*\*\*nz022\*\*\*\*\*n04500

001 ex0870000010

005 19870520103200.0

008 

870520	nn0dn	cnnbb	ba000	000000	0000n0	ann00	0000u
--------	-------	-------	-------	--------	--------	-------	-------

040 00#cDLC

073 00#aB1#aB3#aB4#aB5#aB6#aD12.776.124  
#aD13.444.308#aD13.444735#aF1#aF2#aG4#aG5  
#aG6#aG7#aG8#aG9#aG10#aG11#aG12#zMeSH

150 00#adrug effects

680 00#aUsed with organs, regions, tissues, or organisms and physiological and physiological processes for the effects of drugs and chemicals.

## NODE LABEL RECORD

The 1XX field in a node label or facet indicator record contains an unestablished term (usually a fairly broad one) that may be used in the systematic section of a thesaurus to indicate the logical basis on which a category has been divided. The term in the 1XX is not used as an indexing term or subject heading. This example has code r in 008/11 indicating it came from the Art and Architecture Thesaurus. Reference (4XX and 5XX) and note (67X, 68X, etc.) fields are not used in a node label record.

---

LDR \*\*\*\*\*nz\$\$\$22\*\*\*\*\*n\$4500

001 ex\$87051955\$

005 19870323201700.0

008	870323	nn\$en	rnnbb	bn\$\$\$	\$\$\$\$\$	\$\$\$n\$	ann\$	\$\$\$u
-----	--------	--------	-------	----------	------------	-----------	-------	---------

040 \$≠cDLC

150 \$≠acatalogs by source

## Appendix D

### RECORD CONTAINING ALTERNATE GRAPHIC REPRESENTATIONS

This example illustrates the linking of fields containing nonroman data to a core field that contains roman data. The two 880 fields and the 100 field for which they provide alternate graphic representations are linked by the tag and occurrence numbers contained in subfield #6. The first alternate character set in each field 880 is identified by a modified standard escape sequence in subfield #6; the full escape sequence occurs before the actual nonroman-character string. For display purposes, subfield #6 also contains a field orientation code in the Hebrew 880 field. The default escape sequence for the record immediately follows the nonroman-character string. The alternate graphic character sets in the 880 fields are also identified in field 066.

---

LDR \*\*\*\*\*nz00022\*\*\*\*\*n004500

001 ex001110470

005 19901108114711.0

008	901108	0c0ac	nnnaa	bn000	00000	000a0	aaa00	000u
-----	--------	-------	-------	-------	-------	-------	-------	------

040 00#cDLC

066 00#c(2#c(4#c(N

100 00#6880-02#aMoscs (Biblical leader)

400 00#aMūsá (Biblical leader)

400 00#aMoshch (Biblical leader)

400 00#aMoiseĩ (Biblical leader)

880 00#6100-02/(2/r#aE(20070E(B (Biblical leader)

880 00#6100-02/(N#aE(NМоисейE(B (Biblical leader)

Note: In the escape sequences,

E = ESCAPE character

( = set is to be designated as the GO set and has one byte per character

2 = Basic Hebrew character set

N = Basic Cyrillic character set

B = ASCII default character set







## Alphabetical List of Ambiguous Headings

This listing is an alphabetical compilation of the separate lists of ambiguous headings provided under *Input Conventions* in the X00 Personal Names, X10 Corporate Names, X11 Meeting Names, X30 Uniform Titles, X50 Topical Terms, and X51 Geographic Names *General Information* sections.

---

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| Abbeys [X10]                            | City sections (entered subordi-        |
| Academics [X10]                         | nately) [X10]                          |
| Agoras [X51]                            | Civic centers [X10]                    |
| Airplanes, Named [X10]                  | Clans [X00]                            |
| Airports [X51]                          | Club houses [X10]                      |
| Almshouses [X10]                        | Coal ash sites [X10]                   |
| Amusement parks [X51]                   | Coliseums [X10]                        |
| Apartment houses [X10]                  | Collections, Public or Private [X10]   |
| Arboretums [X51]                        | Collective settlements [X51]           |
| Archaeological sites [X51]              | Colleges [X10]                         |
| Areas and regions [X51]                 | Colloquia [X11]                        |
| Armories [X10]                          | Comets [X51]                           |
| Artificial satellites [X10]             | Comic strips (established under        |
| Artists' groups [X50]                   | title) [X30]                           |
| Asylums (Charitable institutions) [X10] | Communes [X51]                         |
| Athletic contests [X50]                 | Communication satellites [X10]         |
| Auditoriums [X10]                       | Community centers [X10]                |
|   | Competitions [X50]                     |
| Banks [X10]                             | Computer languages [X50]               |
| Bars [X10]                              | Computer programs (established under   |
| Baths, Ancient [X50]                    | title) [X30]                           |
| Biblical characters, Named [X00]        | Computer systems [X50]                 |
| Boards of trade (Chambers of            | Concentration camps [X51]              |
| commerce) [X10]                         | Concert halls [X10]                    |
| Botanical gardens [X51]                 | Conglomerate corporations, Asian [X10] |
| Boundary lines [X51]                    | Conservation districts [X51]           |
| Bridges [X51]                           | Contests [X50]                         |
| Broadcasting stations [X10]             | Convention centers [X10]               |
| Buildings, Private [X10]                | Convents [X10]                         |
| Buildings occupied by corporate         | Correctional institutions [X10]        |
| bodies [X10]                            | Countries, Groups of, e.g., Developing |
| Bus terminals [X10]                     | countries, Communist countries,        |
|   | Islamic countries, etc. [X51]          |
| Calderas [X51]                          | Country clubs [X51]                    |
| Camps [X51]                             | Counts, Houses of [X00]                |
| Canals [X51]                            | Court houses [X10]                     |
| Capitols [X10]                          | Crematories [X10]                      |
| Castles [X10]                           | Custom houses [X10]                    |
| Cathedrals [X10]                        |  |
| Caves [X51]                             | Dams [X51]                             |
| Cemeteries [X51]                        | Dance halls [X10]                      |
| Churches (in use or in ruins) [X10]     | Denominations, Religious               |
| Cities, Extinct (pre-1500) [X51]        | (individual) [X10]                     |
| City halls [X10]                        | Deserts [X51]                          |
| City sections (entered directly) [X51]  | Dispensaries [X10]                     |

## Appendix E

Docks [X51]  
 Dukes, Houses of [X00]  
 Dwellings [X10]  
 Dynasties [X00]  
  
 Earls, Houses of [X00]  
 Ecclesiastical entities that are  
     also names of places, e.g., Basel  
     (Switzerland : Ecclesiastical  
     principality) [X10]  
 Economic zones [X51]  
 Educational institutions [X10]  
 Embassies [X10]  
 Esplanades [X51]  
 Estates [X51]  
 Ethnic groups [X50]  
 Events [X50]  
 Exhibition buildings [X10]  
 Exhibitions [X11]  
 Expeditions, Military [X50]  
 Expeditions, Scientific [X11]  
 Experiment stations [X10]  
 Expositions [X11]  
  
 Factories [X10]  
 Fairs [X11]  
 Families [X00]  
 Farms [X51]  
 Feasts [X50]  
 | Ferry buildings [X10]  
 Festivals (formally organized) [X11]  
 Festivals and celebrations (not  
     formally organized) [X50]  
 Festivals, Folk [X50]  
 Fictitious characters [X50]  
 | Fire stations [X10]  
 Folk festivals and celebrations [X50]  
 Forests [X51]  
 Fortresses (Structures) [X51]  
 Forts (Military posts, fortresses,  
     etc.) [X51]  
 Free ports and zones [X51]  
 Funds [X10]  
 Funeral homes, mortuaries [X10]  
  
 Galaxies [X51]  
 Galleries [X10]  
 Games (Events, except Olympic  
     Games) [X50]  
 Gardens [X51]  
 Gas fields [X51]  
 Gates [X50]  
  
 Geographic regions, e.g., Antarctic  
     regions, Tropics, etc. [X51]  
 Geologic basins [X51]  
 Gods [X50]  
 | Grain elevators [X10]  
 Grasslands [X51]  
 Groups of industries, Named [X10]  
 Gymnasiums [X10]  
  
 Halfway houses [X10]  
 | Hazardous waste sites [X51]  
 Herbariums [X51]  
 Highways [X51]  
 Hill figures [X50]  
 Historic sites [X51]  
 Historical parks [X51]  
 Homes [X10]  
 Hospitals [X10]  
 Hotels [X10]  
 Houses (Families) [X00]  
 Houses (Structures) [X10]  
  
 | Immigration stations [X10]  
 Industrial groups, Named [X10]  
 Islands, Nonjurisdictional [X51]  
  
 Jurisdictions, Ancient [X51]  
  
 Laboratories [X10]  
 Lakes [X51]  
 Land grants [X51]  
 Legendary characters [X50]  
 Legendary dynasties [X50]  
 Libraries [X10]  
 Lighthouses [X10]  
 Lines, Boundary [X51]  
  
 Manors [X10]  
 Mansions [X10]  
 Market buildings [X10]  
 Marketplaces (Ancient) [X51]  
 Markets [X10]  
 Military installations (active and  
     inactive) [X51]  
 Mills [X10]  
 Mine buildings [X10]  
 Mines [X51]  
 Mints [X10]  
 Model railroads [X50]  
 Monasteries [X10]  
 Monuments (Structures, statues,  
     etc.) [X50]

## Appendix E

Morgues [X10]  
 Mortuaries [X10]  
 Motels [X10]  
 Motion pictures [X30]  
 Mountains [X51]  
 Movements, Social [X50]  
 Movie theaters [X10]  
 Museums [X10]  
 Music halls [X10]  
  
 Night clubs [X10]  
 Nuclear power stations [X10]  
 Nursing homes [X10]  
  
 Observatories [X10]  
 Ocean currents [X51]  
 Office buildings [X10]  
 Official residences [X10]  
 Old age homes [X10]  
 Olympic Games (as a heading) [X11]  
 Open spaces [X51]  
 Opera houses [X10]  
 Orders of Knighthood [X10]  
 Orphanages [X10]  
  
 Pagodas [X10]  
 Palaces [X10]  
 Parks [X51]  
 Pipelines [X51]  
 Plains [X51]  
 Plans (Programs) [X10]  
 Plantations [X51]  
 Playgrounds [X51]  
 Plazas (Open spaces, squares,  
     etc.) [X51]  
 Police stations [X10]  
 Poorhouses [X10]  
 Port authorities [X10]  
 Ports (Physical facilities) [X51]  
 Post offices [X10]  
 Power plants [X10]  
 Presidential mansions [X10]  
 Prisons [X10]  
 Programs [X10]  
 Projects [X10]  
 Public comfort stations [X10]  
 Pyramids [X50]  
  
 Races (Contests) [X50]  
 Racetracks [X10]  
 Radio programs [X30]  
 Railroad models [X50]  
 Railroad tunnels [X51]

Railroads [X10]  
 | Railway stations [X10]  
 Ranches [X51]  
 Recreation areas [X51]  
 Refugee camps [X51]  
 Regions, Geographic, e.g., Antarctic  
     regions, Tropics, etc. [X51]  
 Reservations, Indian [X51]  
 Reserves (Parks, forests, etc.) [X51]  
 Reservoirs [X51]  
 Resorts [X10]  
 Restaurants [X10]  
 Rivers [X51]  
 Roads [X51]  
 Rooms [X50]  
 Royal houses (Families) [X00]  
  
 | Sanitary landfills [X51]  
 Sanitation districts [X51]  
 Sanitoriums [X10]  
 School districts [X10]  
 Schools [X10]  
 Schools of artists [X50]  
 Seas [X51]  
 Seminars [X11]  
 Service stations [X10]  
 Shipyards [X10]  
 Shopping centers [X10]  
 Shows (Exhibitions) [X11]  
 Shrines (not churches) [X50]  
 Social movements [X50]  
 Software, Computer (established under  
     title) [X30]  
 Spas [X10]  
 Sports arenas [X10]  
 Sports events [X50]  
 Squares [X51]  
 Stadiums [X10]  
 Stars (Individual) [X51]  
 Stars (Types) [X50]  
 Statues [X50]  
 Steppes [X51]  
 Stock exchanges [X10]  
 Stores, Retail [X10]  
 Streets [X51]  
 Structures (nongeographic, e.g.,  
     towers) [X50]  
 Studies (Research projects) [X10]  
 Stupas [X50]  
 Symposia [X11]  
  
 Television programs [X30]  
 Temples (in use or in ruins) [X10]

## Appendix E

- | Terminal buildings [X10]
- Tests [X50]
- Theater buildings [X10]
- Theater companies [X10]
- Tombs [X50]
- Towers [X50]
- Trails [X51]
- Tribes (as legal entities only) [X10]
- Tribes (Ethnic groups) [X50]
- Tunnels [X51]
  
- U.S. National Park Service, U.S.  
Forest Service, and U.S. Fish  
and Wildlife Service units named after  
a park, forest, etc. [X51]
- Undertakers [X10]
- Universities [X10]
  
- Valleys [X51]
- Villas [X10]
  
- Walls [X50]
- Warehouses [X10]
- Waterways [X51]
- Wildlife refuges [X51]
- Workshops [X11]
  
- Zaibatsu [X10]
- Zoos [X51]





## Initial Definite and Indefinite Articles

The second indicator position in the 1XX Heading, 4XX See From Tracing, and 5XX See Also From Tracing fields contains a numeric value (0-9) that specifies the number of character positions associated with an initial definite or indefinite article when the article is to be disregarded in sorting and filing processes. Initial articles may also simply be deleted in the formulation of the heading. If the initial article is retained but is not to be disregarded in sorting and filing processes, the second indicator position contains value 0.

The following list of definite and indefinite articles and the languages in which they are used is arranged alphabetically by the article.

a	English, Gallegan, Hungarian, Portuguese, Romanian, Scots, Yiddish	c	Norwegian
a'	Gaelic	'c	Friesian
al	Romanian	ccn	Dutch
al-	Arabic, Baluchi, Brahui, Panjabi (Perso-Arabic script), Persian, Turkish, Urdu	eene	Dutch
	N.B. <i>al-</i> is meant to cover all the spellings in romanization, e.g., <i>as</i> in <i>as-sijill</i>	egy	Hungarian
am	Gaelic	ei	Norwegian
an	English, Gaelic, Irish, Scots, Yiddish	ein	German, Norwegian
an t-	Gaelic, Irish	eine	German
ane	Scots	einem	German
ang	Tagalog	einen	German
ang mga	Tagalog	einer	German
as	Gallegan, Portuguese	cines	German
az	Hungarian	cit	Norwegian
bat	Basque	el	Catalan, Spanish
bir	Turkish	el-	Arabic
d'	English	els	Catalan
da	Shetland English	cn	Catalan, Danish, Norwegian, Swedish
das	German	et	Danish, Norwegian
de	Danish, Dutch, English, Friesian, Norwegian, Swedish	ett	Swedish
dei	Norwegian	eyn	Yiddish
dem	German	cyne	Yiddish
den	Danish, German, Norwegian, Swedish	gl'	Italian
der	German, Yiddish	gli	Italian
des	German	ha-	Hebrew
det	Danish, Norwegian, Swedish	hai	Classical Greek, Greek
di	Yiddish	he	Hawaiian
die	Afrikaans, German, Yiddish	hē	Classical Greek, Greek
dos	Yiddish	he-	Hebrew
		hcis	Greek
		hen	Greek
		hcna	Greek
		henas	Greek
		het	Dutch
		hin	Icelandic
		hina	Icelandic
		hinar	Icelandic



## Appendix F

hinir	Icelandic	'o	Neapolitan
hinn	Icelandic	o	Gallegan, Hawaiian, Portuguese, Romanian
hinna	Icelandic	os	Portuguese
hinnar	Icelandic		
hinni	Icelandic	'r	Icelandic
hins	Icelandic		
hinu	Icelandic	's	German
hinum	Icelandic	sa	Tagalog
hið	Icelandic	sa mga	Tagalog
ho	Classical Greek, Greek	si	Tagalog
ho-	Hebrew	siná	Tagalog
hoi	Classical Greek, Greek		
i	Italian	't	Dutch, Friesian
ih'	Provençal	ta	Classical Greek, Greek
il	Italian, Provençal/Langue d'oc	tais	Classical Greek
il-	Maltese	tas	Classical Greek
in	Friesian	tē	Classical Greek
it	Friesian	tēn	Classical Greek, Greek
		tēs	Classical Greek, Greek
ka	Hawaiian	the	English
ke	Hawaiian	to	Classical Greek, Greek
		tō	Classical Greek
l'	Catalan, French, Italian, Provençal/Langue d'oc	tois	Classical Greek
l-	Maltese	ton	Classical Greek, Greek
la	Catalan, Esperanto, French, Italian, Provençal/Langue d'oc, Spanish	tōn	Classical Greek, Greek
		tou	Classical Greek, Greek
las	Provençal/Langue d'oc, Spanish	um	Portuguese
le	French, Italian, Provençal/Langue d'oc	uma	Portuguese
		un	Catalan, French, Italian, Provençal/Langue d'oc, Romanian, Spanish
les	Catalan, French, Provençal/ Langue d'oc	un'	Italian
lh	Provençal/Langue d'oc	una	Catalan, Italian, Provençal/ Langue d'oc, Spanish
lhi	Provençal/Langue d'oc		
li	Provençal/Langue d'oc	une	French
lis	Provençal/Langue d'oc	unei	Romanian
lo	Italian, Provençal/Langue d'oc, Spanish	unha	Gallegan
los	Provençal/Langue d'oc, Spanish	uno	Italian, Provençal/Langue d'oc
lou	Provençal/Langue d'oc	uns	Provençal/Langue d'oc
lu	Provençal/Langue d'oc	unui	Romanian
		us	Provençal/Langue d'oc
mga	Tagalog	y	Welsh
m̃ga	Tagalog	ye	English
nia	Greek	yr	Welsh
	Afrikaans, Dutch, Friesian Gaelic, Hawaiian, Irish Gaelic, Irish Malagasy		





## **Changes**

This section is provided for the change summary sheets that accompany each update to the *USMARC Format for Authority Data*.

---

### **USMARC FORMAT FOR AUTHORITY DATA FORMAT CHANGES**

This new edition of the USMARC format includes *Authorities: A MARC Format* through *Update No. 2*, the changes resulting from proposals which were considered by the ALA RTSD/LITA/RASD Committee on Representation in Machine-Readable Form of Bibliographic Information (MARBI) at its June 1986 and June 1987 meetings, and several other small changes. The changes are listed below under Content Changes.

Also noted below are corrections that were made concerning obsolete data elements and repeatability of data. Obsolete data elements and data elements used only in older records are listed in Appendix B, not in the field descriptors.

Since the general text of many pages has been edited, the parts of the actual pages that have been changed due to the June 1986 and June 1987 proposals have not been indicated with a vertical bar in the text, as is the usual practice with updates. Pages for Appendix G dated June 1987 indicate the changes in terminology resulting from general editing of the text.

---

### **CONTENT CHANGES**

**008/10 Descriptive cataloging rules code**

Addition: Code "z - Other" was added.

**008/35-37 Language of heading code**

Change: This element was made obsolete.

**045 Time Period of Heading**

Addition: Subfield #c (Pre-9999 B.C. time period, formatted) was added.

**050 Library of Congress Call Number**

Change: The second indicator was defined as "Source of call number" with two values "0 - Assigned by LC" and "4 - Assigned by agency other than LC."

Addition: Subfield #5 (Institution to which the field applies) was defined.

**060 National Library of Medicine Call Number**

Addition: This new field was defined.

## Appendix G

June 1987

**070 National Agricultural Library Call Number**  
Addition: This new field was defined.

**082 Dewey Decimal Call Number**  
Addition: This new field was defined.

**090 Local Call Number (Series)**  
Change: This specific field was removed; it was replaced by a page entitled "09X Local Call Numbers." Field 090 is listed under the heading "Previously Used in Older Records" in Appendix B.

### Obsolete Data Elements

Change: The following tags which had never been defined were marked obsolete: 002, 668. The following subfields were marked obsolete to align them with the *USMARC Format for Bibliographic Data*: #b in fields 111, 411, 511, 151, 451, and 551.

### Repeatability

Change: The following subfields were marked repeatable to align them with the *USMARC Format for Bibliographic Data*: #k in fields 100, 400, 500, 111, 411, 511, 130, 430, and 530.

**ERRATUM:** The repeatabilities of fields 042 and 681 are erroneously marked repeatable and not repeatable, respectively in the June 1987 text. The correct designations are:

042 Authentication Code (NR)  
681 Subject Example Tracing Note (R)

## Content Designator Terminology Changes

This list identifies the differences between content designator names in the current *USMARC Format for Authority Data* and the previous *Authorities: A MARC Format* (base text through Update No. 2, June 1986).

---

	Previous	Current
<b>LEADER</b>		
/05	Record status d - Record deleted (explanation may be present in field 682) s - Record deleted because heading has been split into two headings	Record status d - Record deleted (other) s - Record deleted because heading has been split into two or more headings
/17	Encoding level n - Record contains necessary authority data o - Record does not contain complete authority data	Encoding level n - Complete authority record o - Incomplete authority record
/23	Undefined character	Undefined Entry map character position
<b>VARIABLE CONTROL FIELDS</b>		
001	Authority Record Control Number	Control Number
008	Fixed-Length Data Elements	Fixed-Length Data Elements
/07	Romanization scheme	Romanization scheme code
/09	Kind of record code a - Authorized heading record f - Authorized heading and subdivision record	Kind of record code a - Established heading record f - Established heading and subdivision record
/10	Cataloging rules code d - Non-AACR 2 form	Descriptive cataloging rules code d - AACR 2 compatible heading z - Other
/11	Subject heading system code a - Library of Congress b - LC Children's Literature	Subject heading system/thesaurus code a - Library of Congress Subject Headings (LCSH) b - LC Subject Headings for Children's Literature

## Appendix G

	Previous	Current
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>c - National Library of Medicine</li> <li>d - National Agricultural Library</li> <li>k - National Library of Canada English Headings</li> <li>v - National Library of Canada French Headings</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>c - Medical Subject Headings (MeSH)</li> <li>d - National Agricultural Library subject authority file</li> <li>k - Canadian Subject Headings</li> <li>v - Répertoire des vedettes-matière</li> </ul>
008/12	Type of series code <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>c - Series-like phrase not to be considered a series</li> </ul>	Type of series code <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>c - Series-like phrase</li> </ul>
/13	Numbered/unnumbered series code <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>c - Series numbering varies between numbered and unnumbered</li> </ul>	Numbered/unnumbered series code <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>c - Series numbering varies</li> </ul>
/29	Reference evaluation code <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a - Tracings have been evaluated ...</li> <li>b - Tracings have not been evaluated ...</li> </ul>	Reference evaluation code <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a - Tracings are consistent with the heading</li> <li>b - Tracings are not necessarily consistent with the heading</li> </ul>
/33	Status of authority heading code <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a - Fully established heading that has been used on a bibliographic record</li> </ul>	Level of establishment code <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a - Fully established heading</li> </ul>
/35-37	Language of heading code	Undefined
/38	Modified record code <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>s - Record is shortened because record length exceeds maximum allowable length</li> <li>x - Record contains characters that cannot be input because they are not in the character set</li> </ul>	Modified record code <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>s - Record is shortened</li> <li>x - Record is missing characters</li> </ul>

	Previous	Current
<b>VARIABLE DATA FIELDS</b>		
010	LC Authority Record Control Number	Library of Congress Control Number
014	Link to Bibliographic Record for Serial or Multipart Item (Series) #a - Control number of the bibliographic record for the serial or multipart item	Link to Bibliographic Record for Serial or Multipart Item  #a - Control number of related bibliographic record
020	International Standard Book Number (Series)	International Standard Book Number
022	International Standard Serial Number (Series)	International Standard Serial Number
045	Chronological Code or Date/Time <u>Indicator 1</u> - Type of date/time recorded in subfield #b ∅ - No date/time recorded 1 - Multiple single date/time #a - Chronological code #b - Chronological date/time	Time Period of Heading <u>Indicator 1</u> - Type of time period in subfield #b or #c ∅ - Subfield #b or #c not present 1 - Multiple single dates/times #a - Time period code #b - 9999 B.C. through A.D. time period, formatted #c - Pre-9999 B.C. time period, formatted
050	Library of Congress Call Number (Series) <u>Indicator 2</u> - Undefined	Library of Congress Call Number  <u>Indicator 2</u> - Source of call number 0 - Assigned by LC 4 - Assigned by agency other than LC #5 - Institution to which the field applies
052	Geographic Classification Code #a - Area  #b - Subarea	Geographic Classification Code #a - Geographic classification area code #b - Geographic classification subarea code
073	Subdivision Usage	Subdivision Usage #z - Source



## Appendix G

	Previous	Current
083	Dewey Decimal Classification Number #2 - Source	Dewey Decimal Classification Number #2 - Edition number
090	Local Call Number (Series)	09X Local Call Numbers
100	Established Heading—Personal Name <u>Indicator 1</u> - Type of personal name 3 - Name of family #a - Name #d - Dates #e - Relator #h - Media qualifier #l - Language #n - Number of part/section #q - Qualification of name #x - General subject subdivision #y - Chronological subject subdivision #z - Geographic subject subdivision	Heading—Personal Name <u>Indicator 1</u> - Type of personal name entry element 3 - Family name #a - Personal name #d - Dates associated with a name #e - Relator term #h - Medium #l - Language of a work #n - Number of part/section of a work #q - Fuller form of name #x - General subdivision #y - Chronological subdivision #z - Geographic subdivision
110	Established Heading—Corporate Name <u>Indicator 1</u> - Type of corporate name 0 - Surname (inverted) 1 - Geographic name #a - Name #b - Each subordinate unit in hierarchy #c - Place #d - Date #n - Number of part/section/conference <i>See also subfields #e, #h, #l, #x, #y, and #z under 100</i>	Heading—Corporate Name <u>Indicator 1</u> - Type of corporate name entry element 0 - Inverted name 1 - Jurisdiction name #a - Corporate name or jurisdiction name as entry element #b - Subordinate unit #c - Location of meeting #d - Date of meeting or treaty signing #n - Number of part/section/meeting
111	Established Heading—Conference or Meeting Name <u>Indicator 1</u> - Type of conference name 0 - Surname (inverted) 1 - Geographic name with conference subheading #a - Name #c - Place	Heading—Meeting Name <u>Indicator 1</u> - Type of meeting name entry element 0 - Inverted name 1 - Jurisdiction name #a - Meeting name or jurisdiction name as entry element #c - Location of meeting

## Appendix G

	Previous	Current
	‡d - Date ‡n - Number of part/section/ conference ‡q - Name of conference following place as entry element <i>See also subfields ‡h, ‡l, ‡x, ‡y, and ‡z under 100</i>	‡d - Date of meeting ‡n - Number of part/section/meeting ‡q - Name of meeting following jurisdiction name entry element
130	Established Heading—Uniform Title ‡a - Uniform title heading <i>See also subfields ‡h, ‡l, ‡n, ‡x, ‡y, and ‡z under 100</i>	Heading—Uniform Title ‡a - Uniform title
150	Established Heading—Topical Subject ‡a - Topical subject or name of place as entry element ‡b - Name following place as entry element <i>See also subfields ‡x, ‡y, and ‡z under 100</i>	Heading—Topical Term ‡a - Topical term or geographic name as entry element ‡b - Topical term following geographic name as entry element
151	Established Heading—Geographic Name ‡a - Geographic name or name of place as entry element <i>See also subfields ‡x, ‡y, and ‡z under 100</i>	Heading—Geographic Name ‡a - Geographic name
260	General Explanatory See Reference (Subjects)	Complex See Reference—Subject
360	General Explanatory See Also Reference (Subjects)	Complex See Also Reference—Subject

### Control subfield ‡w in 4XX and 5XX fields

‡w/1	Tracing use restriction code a - Appropriate for use in the name authority reference only b - Appropriate for use in the subject authority reference only c - Appropriate for use in the series authority reference structure only d - Appropriate for use in the name and subject authority reference structures only e - Appropriate for use in the name and series authority reference structures only	‡w/1 Tracing use restriction code a - Name reference structure only b - Subject reference structure only c - Series reference structure only d - Name and subject reference structures e - Name and series reference structures
------	---	--

## Appendix G

	Previous	Current
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>f - Appropriate for use in the subject and series authority reference structures only</li> <li>g - Appropriate for use in the name, subject, and series authority reference structures</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>f - Subject and series reference structures</li> <li>g - Name, subject, and series reference structures</li> </ul>
‡w/3	Reference display/print restriction code <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a - No reference is made</li> <li>b - Reference is not displayed from a tracing because it is covered by a separate reference record containing a field 664</li> <li>c - Reference is not displayed from a tracing because it is covered by a 663 note field</li> <li>d - Reference is not displayed from a tracing because it is covered by an information or history reference note in field 665</li> </ul>	‡w/3 Reference display code <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a - Reference not displayed</li> <li>b - Reference not displayed, field 664 used</li> <li>c - Reference not displayed, field 663 used</li> <li>d - Reference not displayed, field 665 used</li> </ul>
400	See From Tracing—Personal Name <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>‡i - Text of reference instruction phrase</li> </ul> <i>See also listing under 100 and Control subfield ‡w</i>	See From Tracing—Personal Name <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>‡i - Reference instruction phrase</li> </ul>
410	See From Tracing—Corporate Name <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>‡i - Text of reference instruction phrase</li> </ul> <i>See also listing under 110 and Control subfield ‡w</i>	See From Tracing—Corporate Name <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>‡i - Reference instruction phrase</li> </ul>
411	See From Tracing—Conference or Meeting Name <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>‡i - Text of reference instruction phrase</li> </ul> <i>See also listing under 111 and Control subfield ‡w</i>	See From Tracing—Meeting Name <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>‡i - Reference instruction phrase</li> </ul>
430	See From Tracing—Uniform Title <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>‡i - Text of reference instruction phrase</li> </ul> <i>See also listing under 130 and Control subfield ‡w</i>	See From Tracing—Uniform Title <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>‡i - Reference instruction phrase</li> </ul>
450	See From Tracing—Topical Subject <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>‡i - Text of reference instruction phrase</li> </ul> <i>See also listing under 150 and Control subfield ‡w</i>	See From Tracing—Topical Term <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>‡i - Reference instruction phrase</li> </ul>

## Appendix G

	Previous	Current
451	See From Tracing—Geographic Name #i - Text of reference instruction phrase <i>See also listing under 151 and Control subfield #w</i>	See From Tracing—Geographic Name #i - Reference instruction phrase
500	See Also From Tracing—Personal Name #i - Text of reference instruction phrase <i>See also listing under 100 and Control subfield #w</i>	See Also From Tracing—Personal Name #i - Reference instruction phrase
510	See Also From Tracing—Corporate Name #i - Text of reference instruction phrase <i>See also listing under 110 and Control subfield #w</i>	See Also From Tracing—Corporate Name #i - Reference instruction phrase
511	See Also From Tracing—Conference or Meeting Name #i - Text of reference instruction phrase <i>See also listing under 111 and Control subfield #w</i>	See Also From Tracing—Meeting Name #i - Reference instruction phrase
530	See From Tracing—Uniform Title #i - Text of reference instruction phrase <i>See also listing under 130 and Control subfield #w</i>	See From Tracing—Uniform Title #i - Reference instruction phrase
550	See Also From Tracing—Topical Subject #i - Text of reference instruction phrase <i>See also listing under 150 and Control subfield #w</i>	See From Tracing—Topical Term #i - Reference instruction phrase
551	See Also From Tracing—Geographic Name #i - Text of reference instruction phrase <i>See also listing under 151 and Control subfield #w</i>	See Also From Tracing—Geographic Name #i - Reference instruction phrase
640	Dates of Publication and/or Volume Designation (Series) #z - Source	Series Dates of Publication and/or Volume Designation #z - Source of information
641	Numbering peculiarities (Series) #z - Source	Series Numbering Peculiarities #z - Source of information
642	Series Numbering Example (Series)	Series Numbering Example

## Appendix G

	Previous	Current
643	Place and Publisher/Issuing Body (Series)	Series Place and Publisher/Issuing Body
644	Analysis Practice (Series)	Series Analysis Practice
645	Tracing Practice (Series) ‡a - Series tracing practice ‡t - Used as a series added entry (traced) ‡n - Not used as a series added entry (not traced)	Series Tracing Practice ‡a - Series tracing practice code ‡t - Traced as a series added entry ‡n - Not traced as a series added entry
646	Classification Practice (Series) ‡a - Series classification practice ‡c - Volumes in the series are classified as a collection ‡m - Volumes in the series are classified with the main series ‡s - Volumes in the series are classified separately	Series Classification Practice ‡a - Series classification practice code ‡c - Volumes are classified as a collection ‡m - Volumes are classified with main or other series ‡s - Volumes are classified separately
663	Cataloger-Generated See Also Reference (Names) ‡a - Instruction term ‡t - Related title	Complex See Also Reference—Name ‡a - Explanatory text ‡t - Title referred to
664	Cataloger-Generated See Reference (Names) ‡a - Instruction term ‡t - Related title	Complex See Reference—Name ‡a - Explanatory text ‡t - Title referred to
665	Information or History Reference (Names) ‡a - Information or history reference	History Reference ‡a - History reference
666	General Explanatory Reference (Names)	General Explanatory Reference—Name
667	Usage or Scope (Names) ‡a - Usage note	Name Usage or Scope Note ‡a - Usage or scope note
675	Source Data Not Found ‡a - Citations for reference sources in which not data was found	Source Data Not Found ‡a - Source citation

## Appendix G

	Previous	Current
680	Scope Note (Subjects) #a - Subject heading	Subject Scope Note #a - Subject heading or subdivision term
681	Example Under/Note Under (Subjects) #a - Subject heading	Subject Example Tracing Note  #a - Subject heading or subdivision term
682	Deleted Heading Information #a - Heading	Deleted Heading Information #a - Replacement heading



**USMARC FORMAT FOR AUTHORITY DATA**

Update No. 1, February 1988

These revised pages constitute the first update to the USMARC Format for Authority Data (1987).

The update contains some additions/changes to byte 2 in subfield #w (Control subfield) resulting from a proposal which was considered by the ALA RTSD/LITA/RASD Committee on Representation in Machine-Readable Form of Bibliographic Information (MARBI) at its January 9, 1988 meeting. Certain pages have also been reissued because of some general editing of names and definitions of content designators. In addition, "LC Guideline" pages have been included for the first time; such pages present LC guidelines for National Coordinated Cataloging Operations (NACO) participants contributing records to the Library of Congress authority files via the Linked Systems Project and information relating to authority records created by the Library of Congress.

The major revisions included in this update are listed below. The page numbers of such revisions are specified in the "Replacement Page No." column. On the actual pages that have been revised, a vertical bar indicates that part of the text that has been changed.

Note: The cover sheets to this update should be filed behind the divider "G - Terminology Changes" in the USMARC authority format.

---

**CHANGE SUMMARY**

	<u>Replacement Page No.</u>
<b>008/08, 18-27, 30, 34-37 Undefined character position</b>	
Change: The National Level Requirement (NLR) code was changed from "M" to "O."	008-p.1 008/08-p.1 008/18-27-p.1 008/30-p.1 008-34-37-p.1
Change: The definition was expanded to include the fill character.	
<b>008/31 Record update in process</b>	
Change: The second sentence under "Character Position Definition and Scope" was changed slightly.	008/31-p.1



## Appendix G

February 1988

	Replacement <u>Page No.</u>
<b>008/32 Undifferentiated personal name</b>	
Change: The last sentence in the first paragraph under "Character Position Definition and Scope" was changed. The third example under code "a" pertaining to a family name was moved under code "n," and the explanation of code "n" was changed slightly.	008/32-p.1,p.2
<b>008/38 Modified record code</b>	
Change: The code names shortened.	008/38-p.1
<b>052 Geographic Classification Code</b>	
Change: The second paragraph under "Field Definition and Scope" was rewritten.	052-p.1
Addition: A sentence was added to the description of subfield #a and to the description of subfield #b. "Input Conventions" information was also added.	052-p.2
<b>070 National Agricultural Library Call Number</b>	
Change: The description of subfield #b was rewritten.	070-p.2
<b>Tracings and References</b>	
Change: #w/2 - The name was changed from "Earlier cataloging rules code" to "Earlier form of heading." The name of code "a" was changed from "Form of heading established under earlier cataloging rules" to "Pre-AACR 2 form of heading."	Tracings/References-p.1,8
Change: The descriptions of #w/2 and code "a" were changed.	Tracings/References-p.8
Addition: Code "e" (Earlier established form of heading) was added to #w/2.	Tracings/References-p.1,8
Addition: A description of code "e" and several examples were added.	Tracings/References-p.8
<b>Appendix A - Table of Content Designators</b>	
Change: Modifications were made to with the agree text.	App. A-p.2,3,4,5,11,14

### LC Guidelines

These pages are being issued for the first time. They should be filed at the end of the main text of the field/element to which they pertain in the format document.

## USMARC FORMAT FOR AUTHORITY DATA

Update No. 2, August 1988

These revised pages constitute the second update to the *USMARC Format for Authority Data* (1987).

The update contains some additions/changes to character position 2 in subfield #1 (Control subfield) resulting from a proposal that was considered by the ALA/RTSD/LITA/RASD Committee on Representation in Machine-Readable Form of Bibliographic Information (MARBI) at its July 9, 1988 meeting. Certain pages have also been reissued to align names and definitions with the *USMARC Format for Bibliographic Data*.

The major revisions included in this update are listed below. The page numbers of these revisions are specified in the "Replacement Page No." column. On the actual page that have been revised, a vertical bar indicates that part of the text that has been changed. A page may contain a new date but no vertical bars when the content of the page has been shifted due to changes on other pages.

Note: The cover sheets to this update should be filed behind the divider "G - Terminology Changes" along with the following:

Appendix G - Changes [Content Changes] (June 1987)

Appendix G - Content Designator Terminology Changes (June 1987)

Appendix G - *USMARC Format for Authority Data* Update No. 1, February 1988

The Library of Congress will not distribute records containing format changes listed below before March 1, 1989.

---

### CHANGE SUMMARY

	Replacement Page No.
Introduction	
Editorial: The phrase "[In preparation]" was deleted from the <i>USMARC Concise Formats</i> citation; this publication is now available. The <i>USMARC History of Content Designation</i> citation was deleted; this item will not be published because history information is contained in each USMARC format document.	Intro.-p.2
Editorial: Information was added to clarify the presentation of the variable data fields in related-function groupings. The description of Appendix G was changed to clarify its use as a repository of all change summary pages, not just those relative to terminology.	Intro.-p.10

## Appendix G

August 1988

	Replacement Page No.
<b>Summary Statement of Content Designators</b>	
Change: The word "code" was deleted from the names of the relevant character positions of field 008. Note: The individual character position descriptions will not be reissued until major changes are made to the data elements.	Summary-p.1
<b>Leader/05 Record status</b>	
Change: Some code names were shortened.	Leader-p.1,2,3
<b>008/28 Type of government agency</b>	
Change: The word "code" was deleted from the name of the character position. The name of code a was modified by changing "Yugoslav Republic" to "Yugoslavia." The name of code z was changed from "Government agency—type other than can be specified by other codes" to "Other type of government agency."	008/28-p.1,2,3
<b>020 International Standard Book Number</b>	
Change: The initialism "(ISBN)" was deleted from the name of subfield #a.	020-p.1,2
<b>022 International Standard Serial Number</b>	
Change: The initialism "(ISSN)" was deleted from the name of subfield #a.	022-p.1,2
Change: The parenthetical qualifier of the display constant associated with subfield #y was changed from "(invalid)" to "(incorrect)."	022-p.2
<b>042 Authentication Code</b>	
Change: The repeatability was changed from (R) to (NR).	042-p.1
<b>045 Time Period of Heading</b>	
Change: The name of subfield #b was changed from "9999 B.C. through A.D. time period, formatted" to "Formatted 9999 B.C. through A.D. time period." The name of subfield #c was changed from "Pre-9999 B.C. time period, formatted" to "Formatted pre-9999 B.C. time period."	045-p.1,4,5
Addition: "Input Conventions" information was added.	045-p.5
<b>073 Subdivision Usage</b>	- - -
Addition: Subfield #z (Source) was defined. (Pages for this change were issued in the base text in June 1987, but the change was not noted on the change summary.)	
<b>Dewey Decimal Call Number</b>	
Addition: "Display Constant" information was added.	082-p.3

## Appendix G

August 1988

Replacement  
Page No.

### X10 Corporate Names—General Information

Addition: "Shipyards" was added to the ambiguous headings list.

X10-p.10

### X51 Geographic Names—General Information

Addition: "Herbariums" was added to the ambiguous headings list.

X51-p.4

### Tracings and Reference Fields—General Information

Change: ‡w/2 - The name of code a was changed by the addition of the qualifier "(national name authority file)." The name of code e was changed by the addition of the qualifier "(national authority file)."

Tracings/Ref-  
erences-p.1,8

Addition: Code o (Earlier established form of heading (other authority file) was added to subfield ‡w/2.

Tracings/Ref-  
erences-p.1,9

Change: The word "code" was deleted from the names of subfields ‡w/0 and ‡w/3.

Tracings/Ref-  
erences-p.5,9

Change: The description of subfield ‡w/2 was modified.

Tracings/Ref-  
erences-p.8

### 681 Subject Example Tracing Note

Change: The repeatability was changed from (NR) to (R).

681-p.1

### Appendix A—Table of Content Designators

Change: Modifications were made to agree with the main text.

App.A-p.1,3,  
5,11,15

### Appendix B—Obsolete and Previously Used Content Designators

Change: Under field 050, "Indicator 1" was changed to "Indicator 2."

App.B-p.4

### Appendix E—Alphabetical List of Ambiguous Headings

Change: Modifications were made to agree with the main text.

App.E-p.2,3

### LC Guidelines pages

Addition: Subfield ‡w/2 code o added as content designator not implemented at LC.

Format Sum-  
mary  
Leader

Change: The names of Leader/05 codes were modified to agree with the main text.

Change: The description of the content of the unused positions in the serial number was changed from "blanks" to "zeroes."

001

Change: Under "NACO LSP Usage," 008/17 was removed from the listing of character positions.

008

Change: Both usage statements were modified to include the use of a fill character (|).

008/17

Addition: The names of subfield ‡w/2 codes a and e were modified to agree with the main text. Code o usage statements were added.

Tracings and  
References-  
page 2,3

Addition: Subfield ‡w/2 usage statements for codes, a, e, and o were added.

Tracings and  
References-  
page 4,5



**USMARC FORMAT FOR AUTHORITY DATA  
CHANGE SUMMARY**

Update No. 3, March 1990

These revised pages constitute the third update to the *USMARC Format for Authority Data* (1987).

The major revisions included in this update are listed below. This list identifies a new subfield code and a change in subfield repeatability that resulted from proposals considered by the ALA ALCTS/LITA/RASD Machine-Readable Bibliographic Information Committee (MARBI) at its meetings in January and June 1989. Also listed are editorial and other changes made to content designator descriptions, guidelines, and examples. Four new *General Information* pages are being added in this update, and several *LC Guidelines* pages are revised. On the replacement pages, a vertical bar marks the changes that are included in this Change Summary.

A page may contain a March 1990 date but no vertical bar when the content of the page has been shifted due to changes on other pages or a minor editorial change (i.e., one not listed in the Change Summary) has been made. Minor editorial changes include:

- the deletion of unnecessary words (e.g., *code*, *the*) and parenthetical acronyms in content designators names
- the correction of typographical errors
- changes in *Related Document* areas
- changes in *Display Constants* presentation

---

	<u>Replacement Page No.</u>
■ <i>New content designator:</i>	
040 Cataloging Source, subfield #f (Subject heading/thesaurus conventions)	1,3
■ <i>Repeatability of subfield #e (Relator term) changed from (NR) to (R):</i>	
X00 Personal Names—General Information	1
X10 Corporate Names—General Information	1
■ <i>Editorial changes:</i>	
<u>Content Designator History area added</u>	
Leader	6
008 Fixed-Length Data Elements—General Information	2
008/17 Type of subject subdivision	3
008/29 Reference evaluation	2
008/34-37 Undefined character positions	1
045 Time Period of Heading	5
050 Library of Congress Call Number	4
09X Local Call Numbers	1
X11 Meeting Names—General Information	9
X51 Geographic Names—General Information	6

# Appendix G

March 1990

Replacement

Page No.

*Editorial changes: (Cont.)*

## New General Information pages

- 00X Control Fields—General Information
- 01X-09X Numbers and Codes—General Information
- 64X Series Treatment—General Information
- 66X-68X Notes—General Information

## Others (definitions, guidelines)

- Introduction 2,11,12
- 008/09 Kind of record (code c: use of *field 260* for subjects) 2
- 008/11 Subject heading system/thesaurus 3
- 008/12 Type of series 1,2
- 008/13 Numbered/unnumbered series (codes applicable to *series-like phrases*) 1,2
- 040 Cataloging Source 2
- X10 Corporate Names—General Information (first indicator value 1: applicable to *city sections*) 3
- 260 Complex See Reference—Subject (*4XX* restriction removed) 1

## ■ *Examples added, deleted, or having content designator changes:*

- 008/09 Kind of record 2
- 050 Library of Congress Call Number 2,3
- X00 Personal Names—General Information 5,13
- X10 Corporate Names—General Information 3,5,6,7,10
- X11 Meeting Names—General Information 8
- 151 Heading—Geographic Name 1
- Tracing and Reference Fields—General Information 7
- 411 See From Tracing—Meeting Name 1
- 430 See From Tracing—Uniform Title 1
- 530 See Also From Tracing—Uniform Title 1
- 550 See Also From Tracing—Topical Term 1
- 551 See Also From Tracing—Geographic Name 1
- 644 Series Analysis Practice 3
- 646 Series Classification Practice 2
- Appendix D - Full Record Examples 9,11
- Appendix F - Initial Definite and Indefinite Articles 1,2

## ■ *Changes in Ambiguous Headings lists:*

- X50 Topical Terms—General Information 4
- X51 Geographic Names—General Information 4,5

## ■ *Changes made in Appendixes to reflect main text:*

- A - Table of Content Designators 5
- C - Summary of Data Coding Interdependencies 1,2
- E - Alphabetical List of Ambiguous Headings 3,4

■ *LC Guidelines:*

NACO LSP Usage changes

- 008/28 Type of government agency
- 040 Cataloging Source
- Tracings and References, subfield #w/1 (p.2)
- 642 Series Numbering Example
- 644 Series Analysis Practice
- 645 Series Tracing Practice
- 646 Series Classification Practice

LC Usage changes

- Format Summary (008/29 deleted; 040#f added)
- 008/06 Direct/indirect geographic subdivision
- 008/11 Subject heading system/thesaurus
- 008/31 Record update in process (text deleted)
- 040 Cataloging Source
- X00 Personal Names—General Information
- 040 Tracings and References, subfield #w (p.3,4)
- 642 Series Numbering Example
- 643 Series Place and Publisher/Issuing Body (text deleted)
- 644 Series Analysis Practice (text deleted)





## LC GUIDELINES

The LC guidelines for authority records are issued with and intended to be used in conjunction with the *USMARC Format for Authority Data*. They were compiled by the Network Development and MARC Standards Office, with the assistance of the MARC Editorial Division, the National Coordinated Cataloging Operations section of the Descriptive Cataloging Division, the Office for Descriptive Cataloging Policy, and the Subject Cataloging Division.

### Scope of LC guidelines

The LC guidelines present information relating to two areas of usage in authority records: 1) usage pertaining to records contributed to the Library of Congress authority files by participants in the National Coordinated Cataloging Operations (NACO) via the Linked Systems Project (LSP); and 2) usage pertaining to authority records created by the Library of Congress. Records created by LC includes name, series, and subject authority records.

The guidelines were developed from various internal and published documents, including *Authorities: A MARC Format*, the *National Level Authority Record*, and the *NACO/LSP Manual*.

### Direction for use of LC guidelines

The LC guidelines for authority records should be used by institutions participating in NACO LSP that create authority records to be added to the Library of Congress authority files. The guidelines may also be used by institutions that need or want to know special LC practice in authority records.

At present, only Name and Series authority records are accepted from NACO participants via LSP. NACO LSP participants are instructed not to use those data elements that are appropriate only to Subject authority records.

These guidelines are intended to be used in conjunction with the *USMARC Format for Authority Data*. Data requirements that are not specific to NACO LSP and/or LC are presented only in the main text of the authorities format.

NACO LSP participants and Library of Congress staff creating authority records must also apply the appropriate procedures presented in various LC cataloging documents (e.g., the *LC Descriptive Cataloging Manual*). These related documents are not referenced in the *USMARC Format for Authority Data* nor in the LC guidelines for authority records.

### Organization of LC guidelines

The guidelines pages should be filed at the end of the main text of the field to which they apply in the authorities format. Each guidelines page is marked at the top with the three-digit tag of the field to which it applies.

## **Introduction LC Guidelines**

NACO LSP Usage is given first, with a list of data elements and explanatory text where appropriate. When there is no special NACO LSP usage, any data requirements detailed in the main text of Authority format are still applicable.

LC Usage follows NACO LSP Usage. Some LC usage may be more restrictive than that prescribed for NACO LSP participants. NACO LSP participants may not necessarily be restricted from using specific data elements even though LC does not use them. These differences are noted when they occur.

CONTENT DESIGNATORS NOT IMPLEMENTED AT LC

The following list presents those data elements (i.e., fields, indicators, subfields, and codes) that have not been implemented at the Library of Congress. Note: Some data elements that have been implemented at LC may not be used in authority records contributed to the LC database as part of the Linked Systems Project (LSP) via the National Coordinated Cataloging Operations (NACO). Instructions for NACO LSP participants are given on the LC guidelines pages for the specific field or character position. The data elements listed here should not be found in authority records originating from the Library of Congress.

<u>Field</u>	<u>Character Position</u>	<u>Values</u>
Leader	05	a,s,x
008	09	d,c,f,g
	10	z
	11	c,d,k,r,v,z
	17	a,b,c,d,e
	39	u

<u>Field</u>		<u>First Indicator</u>	<u>Second Indicator</u>	<u>Subfields</u>
Any				≠6
014	(entire field)			
040				≠b, ≠f
042	(entire field)			
045	(entire field)			
050			0,4	≠5
052	(entire field)			
060	(entire field)			
066	(entire field)			
070	(entire field)			
072	(entire field)			
073	(entire field)			
082	(entire field)			
4XX				≠w/0: code h; ≠w/2: code o; ≠5
5XX				≠w/0: code h; ≠w/2: code o; ≠5
667				≠5
680				≠5
688	(entire field)			
880	(entire field)			



## Leader

### NACO LSP Usage:

#### Leader/05 (Record status)

The following codes may not be used:

- a - Increase in encoding level
- d - Deleted (other)
- s - Deleted; heading split into two or more headings
- x - Deleted; heading replaced by another heading

If a NACO LSP participant identifies an authority record that should be deleted from the LC authority file, LC NACO must be consulted and will have the record deleted. NACO LSP participants are not permitted to actually perform the deletion of the record from the LC file.

#### Leader/17 (Encoding level)

Use code o for Early Notice Records.

---

### LC Usage:

#### Leader/05 (Record status)

| LC does not use codes a, s, and x.

#### Leader/17 (Encoding level)

LC uses code o for Early Notice Records.



## Directory

### NACO LSP Usage:

The Directory is always system generated.

---

### LC Usage:

The Directory is system generated.





## 001 Control Number

### NACO LSP Usage:

#### Structure

The control number is a NACO Control Number and has the following structure:

**Alphabetic prefix** - Three character positions contain the alphabetic prefix. The valid control number prefixes are:

- nØØ Name and series authority records originally input on the Library of Congress (LC) system
- noØ LSP name and series authority records originally input on the Online Computer Library Center (OCLC) system
- nrØ LSP name and series authority records originally input on the Research Libraries Information Network (RLIN) system
- nwØ LSP name and series authority records originally input on the Western Library Network (WLN) system

The prefix is carried as lowercase characters; it is left justified and unused positions contain blanks (Ø).

**Year** - Two digits represent the year of record creation.

**Serial number** - One to six digits, right justified and unused positions contain zeros.

**Supplement number** - For consistency with LC control numbers, a blank (Ø) is carried as the last character position of the number.

---

### LC Usage:

Library of Congress and NACO control numbers have the same structure. LC authority record control numbers use the following alphabetic prefixes:

- nØØ Name and series authorities
- shØ Subject authorities



## **005 Date and Time of Latest Transaction**

### **NACO LSP Usage:**

An 005 field is system generated by LC when a NACO LSP record is added to the NACO master file at LC whether there is already an 005 field in the record or not. For a record new to the NACO file, the 005 generated is the first official version identifier for the record. A change or delete record must contain an 005 identical to the one in the NACO file record it is changing or deleting for the change/delete to occur. The 005 is automatically updated when the change/delete record replaces the record in the file. A NACO LSP participant system may supply a preliminary 005 field to new records which will be replaced by the first official 005 at LC when the record is verified.

---

### **LC Usage:**

The "date and time of latest transaction" is the date and time of the action that approved the record for distribution.



## **008 Fixed-Length Data Elements—General Information**

### **NACO LSP Usage:**

Do not use the fill character (|) in the following 008 character positions:

00-05	Date entered on file
08	Undefined character position
09	Kind of record
10	Descriptive cataloging rules
11	Subject heading system/thesaurus
12	Type of series
13	Numbered/unnumbered series
14	Heading use—main or added entry
15	Heading use—subject added entry
16	Heading use—series added entry
18-27	Undefined character positions
29	Reference evaluation
30	Undefined character position
31	Record update in process
32	Undifferentiated personal name
33	Level of establishment
34	Undefined character position
39	Cataloging source

---

### **LC Usage:**

LC has not implemented the fill character (|) in the following 008 character positions: /00-05, /09-/16, /18-/34, and /39.



**008/00-05 Date entered on file**

**NACO LSP Usage:**

The date entered on file is generated by the LSP participant's processing system.

Do not use the fill character (|) in this character position.

---

**LC Usage:**

LC has not implemented the fill character (|) for this character position.





## 008/06 Direct/indirect geographic subdivision

### NACO LSP Usage:

- | Code n (Not applicable) is always used in this character position. Do not use code *ø*, *d*, or *i*.
- 

### LC Usage:

LC has used *ø* (blank) meaning *no attempt to code* in most name authorities.

Prior to 1987, geographic subject headings (field 151) may contain code n or a fill character (|) in 008/06. Code n is changed to a *ø* (blank) when the record is modified for any other reason.

LC does not use the following code:

- d - Subdivided geographically-direct



## 008/07 Romanization scheme

### NACO LSP Usage:

Do not use any of the defined codes. Always use the fill character (|) in this position.

---

### LC Usage:

LC uses only the fill character (|) in this character position.



## 008/08 Undefined character position

### NACO LSP Usage:

This position should contain a blank (␣). Do not use the fill character (|) in this position.

---

### LC Usage:

LC has not implemented the fill character (|) for this underfined character position.



## 008/09 Kind of record

### NACO LSP Usage:

LC NACO must be consulted before code b (Reference record (untraced reference)) is used in a reference record containing a 666 general explanatory reference field.

Subject authorities are not within the scope of the present NACO LSP program. Do not use the following codes:

- d - Subdivision record
- e - Node label record
- f - Established heading and subdivision record
- g - Reference and subdivision record

Do not use the fill character (|) in this character position.

---

### LC Usage:

LC rarely creates reference records containing a field 666 (General Explanatory Reference—Name); therefore, code b (Reference record (untraced reference)) is rarely used in name authorities. Code b is used in subject authorities that contain field 260 (Complex See Reference—Subject).

LC does not use codes d, e, f, and g.

LC has not implemented the the fill character (|) in this character position.





## 008/10 Descriptive cataloging rules

### NACO LSP Usage:

Do **not** use the following codes:

- a - Earlier rules
- b - AACR 1
- z - Other

Use code n (Not applicable) in traced reference records (008/09 (Kind of record), code c). LC NACO must be consulted before code n is used for special situations, such as when *AACR 2* or *AACR 2 compatible* does not accommodate the establishment of the name or title heading.

Do **not** use the fill character (|) in this character position.

---

### LC Usage:

LC does not currently use codes a, b, and z. Records on the file with codes a or b are changed to c (AACR 2) or d (AACR 2 compatible heading) when modified for any other reason.

LC uses code n (Not applicable) in traced reference records (008/09, code c).

LC also uses code n for special situations, such as when *AACR 2* or *AACR 2 compatible* does not accommodate the establishment of the name or title heading. Code n is also used in most subject heading records.

LC has not implemented the fill character (|) for this character position.



## 008/11 Subject heading system/thesaurus

### NACO LSP Usage:

Subject authorities are not within the scope of the NACO LSP program. Use code a (Library of Congress Subject Headings) or code n (Not applicable) in this character position. Do not use the following codes: b, c, d, k, v, r, and z.

Do **not** use the fill character (|) in this character position.

---

### LC Usage:

| LC uses code n in reference records (008/09, Kind of record, code b or c).

LC does not use the following codes: b, c, d, k, r, v, and z.

LC has not implemented the fill character (|) for this character position.



## 008/12 Type of series

### NACO LSP Usage:

LC NACO must be consulted before code z (Other) is used.

Do not use the fill character (|) in this character position.

---

### LC Usage:

LC has not implemented the fill character (|) for this character position.



## 008/13 Numbered/unnumbered series

### NACO LSP Usage:

Do not use the fill character (|) in this character position.

---

### LC Usage:

LC has not implemented the fill character (|) for this character position.





## 008/14 Heading use—main or added entry

### NACO LSP Usage:

Code b is also used on a record containing field 664 (Complex See Reference—Name).

LC NACO must be consulted before code b (Heading is not appropriate for use as main or added entry) is used on a reference record containing a field 666 (General Explanatory Reference).

Do not use the fill character (|) in this character position.

---

### LC Usage:

LC has not implemented the fill character (|) for this character position.



## 008/15 Heading use—subject added entry

### NACO LSP Usage:

LC NACO must be consulted before code b (Heading is not appropriate for use as subject added entry) is used.

Do **not** use the fill character (|) in this character position.

---

### LC Usage:

LC has not implemented the fill character (|) for this character position.



**008/16 Heading use—series added entry**

**NACO LSP Usage:**

Do **not** use the fill character (|) in this character position.

---

**LC Usage:**

LC has not implemented the fill character (|) for this character position.



## 008/17 Type of subject subdivision

### NACO LSP Usage:

- | Subject authorities are not within the scope of the present NACO LSP program. Either code
  - | n (Not applicable) or a fill character (|) may be used in this character position.
- 

### LC Usage:

- | LC does not create subject subdivision records and has not implemented the codes defined
- | for this character position. A blank ( ) or a fill character (|) is used.





## **008/18-27 Undefined character positions**

### **NACO LSP Usage:**

These positions should contain blanks (␣). Do not input the fill characters (|) in these positions.

---

### **LC Usage:**

LC has not implemented the fill character (|) for these underfined character positions.



## **008/28 Type of government agency**

### **NACO LSP Usage:**

- | There are no special NACO LSP requirements for this character position. If use of a code
  - | other than the fill character (|) is desired, the appropriate code may be used.
- 

### **LC Usage:**

LC does not use this character position. A fill character (|) is always used.



## 008/29 Reference evaluation

### NACO LSP Usage:

Do not use code b (Tracings are not necessarily consistent with the heading) on any new record. When changing an existing record having code b, the references (if any) should be evaluated and the code changed to a (Tracings are consistent with the heading) or n (Not applicable).

Do not use the fill character (|) in this character position.

---

### LC Usage:

Code b (Tracings are not necessarily consistent with the heading) may occur in LC records created before the adoption of AACR 2 in Jan. 1981 and will continue to exist until any records containing reference tracings have been evaluated and the authority record updated. All new authority record must contain code a.

LC has not implemented the fill character (|) for this character position.



## 008/30 Undefined character position

### NACO LSP Usage:

This position should contain a blank (␣). Do **not** input the fill character (|) in this position.

---

### LC Usage:

LC has not implemented the fill character (|) for this underfined character position.





## 008/31 Record update in process

### NACO LSP Usage:

There are no special NACO LSP requirements for this character position. *Note:* NACO LSP procedures for updating existing name authority records must be followed.

Do not use the fill character (|) in this character position.

---

### LC Usage:

LC has not implemented the fill character (|) for this character position.



**008/32 Undifferentiated personal name**

**NACO LSP Usage:**

Do not use the fill character (|) in this character position.

---

**LC Usage:**

LC has not implemented the fill character (|) for this character position.



## 008/33 Level of establishment

### NACO LSP Usage:

LC NACO must be consulted before code d (Preliminary) is used.

Do **not** use the fill character (|) in this character position.

---

### LC Usage:

LC uses code d in preliminary name authority records prepared by LC staff of the National Union Catalog if no records exist in the LC database that verify usage of the 1XX headings.

LC has not implemented the fill character (|) for this character position.



## 008/34 Undefined character position

### NACO LSP Usage:

This position should contain a blank (␣). Do **not** use the fill character (|) in this position.

---

### LC Usage:

LC has not implemented the fill character (|) for this underfined character position.

---

## 008/35-37 Undefined character positions

### NACO LSP Usage:

These positions should contain blanks (␣).

---

### LC Usage:

Positions 35-37 were defined as Language of heading code, prior to 1986. LC never coded positions 35-37 for the language of heading. Fill characters (|) were recorded in these positions.





**008/38 Modified record**

**NACO LSP Usage:**

Use only blank (␣) in this character position.

Do **not** use code s (Shortened) or x (Missing characters).

---

**LC Usage:**

LC has not implemented code s (Shortened) or x (Missing characters). Only the (␣) is used.



## 008/39 Cataloging source

### NACO LSP Usage:

Do not use the following codes:

- Ø - Library of Congress
- d - Other sources
- u - Unknown

Do not use the fill character (|) in this character position.

---

### LC Usage:

LC does not use code u.

LC has not implemented the fill character (|) for this character position.



## 01X-09X Numbers and Codes—General Information

### NACO LSP Usage:

#### Alternate Graphic Representation

Records containing alternate graphic representation fields are **not** within the scope of the present NACO LSP project.

Do not use subfield #6 (Linkage) in the following fields:

- 020 International Standard Book Number
- 022 International Standard Serial Number
- 035 System Control Number
- 050 Library of Congress Call Number
- 083 Dewey Decimal Classification Number

Subfield #6 has not been implemented in the LC system.

---

### LC Usage:

LC does not use alternate graphic representation fields in authority records.



## 010 Library of Congress Control Number

### NACO LSP Usage:

Do not use this field.

A system may internally transfer the LC control number from field 001 to field 010 and generate its own control number in field 001.

---

### LC Usage:

LC practice for this field is described under the section for field 010 in the main text of the format. The year portion of the number may be arbitrary when a preprinted name authority worksheet has been used at LC.



7

## 014 Link to Bibliographic Record for Serial or Multipart Item

### NACO LSP Usage:

Do **not** use this field. The field has not been implemented in the LC system.

---

### LC Usage:

LC does not use this field.



## 020 International Standard Book Number

### NACO LSP Usage:

LC NACO must be consulted before subfields #c (Term of availability) or #z (Canceled/invalid ISBN) are used in an authority record.

---

### LC Usage:

LC does not use this field.



## 022 International Standard Serial Number

NACO LSP Usage:

### Subfield Codes

Do not use the following subfields:

- ‡y - Incorrect ISSN
  - ‡z - Cancelled ISSN
- 

LC Usage:

### Subfield Codes

LC does not use the following subfields:

- ‡y - Incorrect ISSN
- ‡z - Cancelled ISSN



## 035 System Control Number

### NACO LSP Usage:

The use of field 035 is determined by each LSP contributor's system.

---

### LC Usage:

LC does not use this field.





## 040 Cataloging Source

NACO LSP Usage:

### Subfield Code

| Do **not** use subfield #b (Language of cataloging) or #f (Subject heading/thesaurus con-  
| ventions).

---

LC Usage:

### Subfield Code

LC does not use the following subfields:

|     #b - Language of cataloging  
|     #f - Subject heading/thesaurus conventions



## 042 Authentication Code

### NACO LSP Usage:

Do not use this field. The field has not been implemented in the LC system.

---

### LC Usage:

LC does not use this field.



## 043 Geographic Area Code

### NACO LSP Usage:

LC NACO must be consulted before field 043 is used.

---

### LC Usage:

LC does not use this field.



## 045 Time Period of Heading

### NACO LSP Usage:

Do not use this field. The field has not been implemented in the LC system.

---

### LC Usage:

LC does not use this field.





**050 Library of Congress Call Number****NACO LSP Usage:**

Only call numbers assigned by the Library of Congress are permitted in this field. Call numbers assigned by other organizations are contained in field 090 (Local Call Number). See the LC guidelines for 09X (Local Call Numbers) for more information on field 090.

Use a ␣ (blank) in the second indicator position. Do not use values 0 or 4.

---

**LC Usage:**

LC practice is described in the 050 field description. LC has not yet implemented the second indicator values 0 and 4, nor subfield #5.

**Special LC call numbers**

Field 050 may contain call numbers that do not follow the Library of Congress classification schedules, for example:

050 ␣␣#aLAW  
050 ␣␣#aMicrofilm 85/20,233  
050 ␣␣#aWMLC L 82/1234



## 052 Geographic Classification Code

### NACO LSP Usage:

Do not use this field. The field has not been implemented in the LC system.

---

### LC Usage:

LC does not use this field.



## 053 LC Classification Number

### NACO LSP Usage:

LC NACO must be consulted before this field is used.

---

### LC Usage:

In for name authority records, LC uses this field for a classification number associated with a newly established name heading for a work of the imagination, other than a work for children.



## 060 National Library of Medicine Call Number

### NACO LSP Usage:

Do not use this field. The field has not been implemented in the LC system.

---

### LC Usage:

LC does not use this field.





| **066 Character Sets Present**

**NACO LSP Usage:**

Do not use this field. Alternate graphic representation fields are not within the scope of the present NACO LSP project. Field 066 has not been implemented in the LC system

---

**LC Usage:**

LC does not use this field.



## 070 National Agricultural Library Call Number

### NACO LSP Usage:

Do not use this field. The field has not been implemented in the LC system.

---

### LC Usage:

LC does not use this field.



## 072 Subject Category Code

### NACO LSP Usage:

Do not use this field. The field has not been implemented in the LC system.

---

### LC Usage:

LC does not use this field.



## 073 Subdivision Usage

### NACO LSP Usage:

Do not use this field. The field has not been implemented in the LC system.

---

### LC Usage:

LC does not use this field.





## 082 Dewey Decimal Call Number

### NACO LSP Usage:

Do not use this field. The field has not been implemented in the LC system.

---

### LC Usage:

LC does not use this field.



## **083 Dewey Decimal Classification Number**

### **NACO LSP Usage:**

LC NACO must be consulted before field 083 is used.

---

### **LC Usage:**

LC does not use this field.



## **09X Local Call Numbers**

### **NACO LSP Usage:**

LC only uses field 090 in the 09X block. Field 090 may contain an LC-style call number, a Dewey Decimal number, or some other system of classification used by an LSP participant. It should not contain Library of Congress call numbers assigned by LC. Field 050 is used for such numbers. Only the NACO library creating the authority record may use field 090.

---

### **LC Usage:**

LC does not use field 090.



## **X00 Personal Names—General Information**

### **NACO LSP Usage:**

#### **Indicator**

First Indicator - Type of personal name entry element

NACO LSP participants must follow LC practice in setting the first indicator value for personal names when the name includes an article, preposition, and combinations of the two.

### **LC Usage:**

#### **Indicator**

First Indicator - Type of personal name entry element

LC treats a surname as a *single* surname when it begins with one of the following articles, prepositions, or a combination of the two. Note that the following is not a complete list of such prefixes and that the articles, prepositions, or combinations may appear in both upper and lower case, may contain a space or hyphen, and/or may be modified by diacritical marks.

A	Dal	Dellos	Et	Ka	O or Ó	Us
Á	Dalla	Den	Ett	Ke	O' or 'O	Van
A'	Dallas	<sup>2</sup> Der	Gl'	L	Oi	Van de
Af	Dalle	Des	Gli	L'	Op	Van den
<sup>1</sup> Ag	<sup>3</sup> Das	Det	Ha	La	Op de	Van der
Ai	<sup>3</sup> De	Di	Hai	Las	'S	Vel
<sup>1</sup> Ak	De'	Dia	He	Le	Si	Ver
<sup>1</sup> Al	De la	Die	Heis	Les	T	Vom
Am	De las	Do	Hen	Lh'	'T	Von
<sup>1</sup> An	De lo	Dos	Het	Lhi	Ta	Von der
Ap	De los	Du	Hi	Li	Te	Von zu
<sup>1</sup> Ar	Degli	E	Hin	Lis	Ten	Y
<sup>1</sup> As	Dei	Een	Hinar	Lo	<sup>2</sup> Ter	Ye
Au	Del	Eene	Hinir	Los	To	Yn
Aus	Delah	Ei	Hinn	Lou	Um	Yr
Aux	Dell'	Ein	Hn	Lu	<sup>3</sup> Umā	Z
<sup>1</sup> Az	Della	Eine	Hoi	Mia	Un	Zu
Bel	Dellas	Eit	I or Í	Na	Una	Zum
D	Delle	<sup>1</sup> El	Il	Ni or Ní	Une	Zur
D'	Delli	Els	Im	Nje	Uno	
Da	Dello	En	Isa	Ny	Uns	

<sup>1</sup> If the name is an Arabic surname, this treatment does not apply. Instead, the name is considered a compound surname and first indicator value 2 is used.

<sup>2</sup> If the name is an Armenian surname, this treatment does not apply. Instead, the name is considered a compound surname and first indicator value 2 is used.

<sup>3</sup> If the name is an Indian (India) surname, this treatment does not apply. Instead, the name is considered a compound surname and first indicator value 2 is used.





## 100 Heading--Personal Name

### NACO LSP Usage:

#### Indicators

First Indicator - Type of personal name entry element

Do not use value 3 (Name of family) in the first indicator position. This type of personal name is not within the scope of the present NACO LSP project.

Second Indicator - Nonfiling characters

Always use value 0 in the second indicator position. Do not use values 1-9. Omit an initial article that is not an integral part of the name when formulating the entry element of the heading.

#### Subfield Codes

Do not use the following subfields in 100 fields:

- ‡e - Relator term
- ‡h - Medium
- ‡x - General subdivision
- ‡y - Chronological subdivision
- ‡z - Geographic subdivision
- ‡6 - Linkage

Subfield ‡6 has not been implemented in the LC system.

LC NACO must be consulted before the following subfield is used:

- ‡g - Miscellaneous information

### LC Usage:

#### Indicator

Second Indicator - Nonfiling characters

LC does not use values 1-9. An initial article that is not an integral part of the entry element of a name is always omitted.

#### Subfield Codes

LC does not use the following subfields:

- ‡e - Relator term (in AACR 2 formulated 100 fields)
- ‡g - Miscellaneous information (in AACR 2 formulated 100 fields)
- ‡h - Medium (in AACR 2 formulated 100 fields)
- ‡6 - Linkage



## 110 Heading--Corporate Name

### NACO LSP Usage:

#### Indicator

Second Indicator - Nonfiling characters

Always use value 0 in the second indicator position. Do not use values 1-9. Omit an initial article that is not an integral part of the name when formulating the entry element of the heading.

#### Subfield Codes

Do not use the following subfields in 110 fields.

- ⌘e - Relator term
- ⌘h - Medium
- ⌘x - General subdivision
- ⌘y - Chronological subdivision
- ⌘z - Geographic subdivision
- ⌘6 - Linkage

Subfield ⌘6 has not been implemented in the LC system.

---

### LC Usage:

#### Indicator

Second Indicator - Nonfiling characters

LC does not use values 1-9. An initial article that is not an integral part of the entry element of a name is always omitted.

#### Subfield Codes

LC does not use the following subfields:

- ⌘e - Relator term (in AACR 2 formulated 110 fields)
- ⌘h - Medium (in AACR 2 formulated 110 fields)
- ⌘6 - Linkage



## 111 Heading—Meeting Name

NACO LSP Usage:

### Indicator

Second Indicator - Nonfiling characters

Always use value 0 in the second indicator position. Do not use values 1-9. Omit an initial article that is not an integral part of the name when formulating the entry element of the heading.

### Subfield Codes

Do not use the following subfields in 111 fields:

- ‡h - Medium
- ‡x - General subdivision
- ‡y - Chronological subdivision
- ‡z - Geographic subdivision
- ‡6 - Linkage

Subfield ‡6 has not been implemented in the LC system.

---

LC Usage:

### Indicator

Second Indicator - Nonfiling characters

LC does not use values 1-9. An initial article that is not an integral part of the entry element of a name is always omitted.

### Subfield Codes

LC does not use the following subfields:

- ‡h - Medium (in AACR 2 formulated 111 fields)
- ‡6 - Linkage



## 130 Heading—Uniform Title

NACO LSP Usage:

### Indicator

Second Indicator - Nonfiling characters

Always use value 0 in the second indicator position. Do not use values 1-9. Omit an initial article that is not an integral part of the uniform title when formulating the entry element of the heading.

### Subfield Codes

Do not use the following subfields in 130 fields:

- ‡h - Medium
- ‡x - General subdivision
- ‡y - Chronological subdivision
- ‡z - Geographic subdivision
- ‡6 - Linkage

Subfield ‡6 has not been implemented in the LC system.

---

LC Usage:

### Indicator

Second Indicator - Nonfiling characters

LC does not use values 1-9. An initial article that is not an integral part of the entry element of a uniform title is always omitted.

### Subfield Codes

LC does not use the following subfields:

- ‡h - Medium (in AACR 2 formulated 130 fields)
- ‡6 - Linkage





## 150 Heading--Topical Term

### NACO LSP Usage:

Do not use this field. Subject authorities are not within the scope of the NACO LSP program.

---

### LC Usage:

#### Indicator

Second Indicator - Nonfiling characters

LC does not use values 1-9. An initial article that is not an integral part of the entry element of a topical term heading is always omitted.

#### Subfield Code

| LC does not use the following subfield:  
#6 - Linkage



## 151 Heading--Geographic Name

NACO LSP Usage:

### Indicator

Second Indicator - Nonfiling characters

Always use value **0** in the second indicator position. Do not use values 1-9. Omit an initial article that is not an integral part of the name when formulating the entry element of the heading.

### Subfield Codes

Do not use the following subfields in 151 fields:

- ‡x - General subdivision
- ‡y - Chronological subdivision
- ‡z - Geographic subdivision
- ‡6 - Linkage

Subfield ‡6 has not been implemented in the LC system.

---

LC Usage:

### Indicator

Second Indicator - Nonfiling characters

LC does not use values 1-9. An initial article that is not an integral part of the entry element of a name is always omitted.

### Subfield Code

- | LC does not use the following subfield:
  - ‡6 - Linkage



## Tracing and Reference Fields--General Information

NACO LSP Usage:

### Alternate Graphic Representation

Do not use subfield #6 (Linkage) in any of the tracing and reference fields. Records containing alternate graphic representation fields are not within the scope of the present NACO LSP project. Subfield #6 has not been implemented in the LC system.

### ■ REFERENCE FIELDS

Subject authority records are not within the scope of the present NACO LSP project. Do not use the following fields:

- 260 Complex See Reference--Subject
- 360 Complex See Also Reference--Subject

Do not use field 665 (History Reference). Instead, use 5XX See Also From Tracing fields with a subfield #w/0 (Control subfield/Special relationship) containing code a (Earlier heading) or b (Later heading) as appropriate.

LC NACO must be consulted before field 663 (Complex See Also Reference--Name), 664 (Complex See Reference--Name), and 666 (General Explanatory Reference--Name) are used.

### ■ TRACING FIELDS

Do not use the following subfield codes in 4XX and 5XX tracing fields:

- #i Reference instruction phrase
  - #5 Institution to which field applies
- Subfield #5 has not been implemented in the LC system.

### Subfield Codes

#w - Control subfield in 4XX See From Tracing fields \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_/0 Special relationship

Do not use the following codes:

- a - Earlier heading
- b - Later heading
- d - Acronym
- f - Musical composition
- g - Broader term
- h - Narrower term
- i - Reference instruction phrase in subfield #i

Code n (Not applicable) may be used when a subsequent character position in subfield #w is coded.

## Tracings and References LC Guidelines

### ——/1 Tracing use restriction

Do not use the following codes:

- a - Name reference structure only
- b - Subject reference structure only
- c - Series reference structure only
- d - Name and subject reference structures
- e - Name and series reference structures
- f - Subject and series reference structures
- g - Name, subject, and series reference structures

Code n (Not applicable) may be used when a subsequent character position in subfield  $\#w$  is coded.

### ——/2 Earlier form of heading

Do not use the following code:

- o - Earlier established form of heading (other authority file)

Code a (Pre-AACR 2 form of heading (national name authority file)) is used when the tracing is for a linking reference from a pre-AACR 2 heading.

Code e (Earlier established form of heading (national authority file)) is used primarily when a reference from the former heading is appropriate under normal AACR 2 reference practice, and the former heading is not covered by code a. This includes former headings that were previously coded either as *AACR 2* (code c) or *Non-AACR 2 form used with AACR 2* (code d). A reference should not automatically be made from the former heading in order to supply code e.

Code n (Not applicable) may be used when neither code a nor e applies and a subsequent character position in subfield  $\#w$  is coded.

### ——/3 Reference display

Do not use the following codes:

- c - Reference not displayed, field 663 used
- d - Reference not displayed, field 665 used

Code a (Reference not displayed) or b (Reference not displayed, field 664 used) may be used when appropriate for suppressing a cross reference display.

Code n (Not applicable) allows the generation of a cross reference display and need not be coded in subfield  $\#w/3$ .

$\#w$  - Control subfield in 5XX See Also From Tracing fields \_\_\_\_\_

### ——/0 Special relationship

Do not use the following codes:

- d - Acronym
- f - Musical composition
- g - Broader term
- h - Narrower term
- i - Reference instruction phrase in subfield  $\#i$

Code a (Earlier heading) or b (Later heading) may be used when appropriate for a 1XX/5XX relationship.

Code n (Not applicable) may be used when neither code a nor b applies and a subsequent character position in subfield  $\#w$  is coded.

—/1 Tracing use restriction

Do not use the following codes:

- a - Name reference structure only
- b - Subject reference structure only
- c - Series reference structure only
- d - Name and subject reference structures
- e - Name and series reference structures
- f - Subject and series reference structures
- g - Name, subject, and series reference structures

Code n (Not applicable) may be used when a subsequent character position in subfield #w is coded.

—/2 Earlier form of heading

Do not use the following codes:

- a - Pre-AACR 2 form of heading (national name authority file)
- c - Earlier established form of heading (national authority file)
- o - Earlier established form of heading (other authority file)

Code n (Not applicable) may be used when a subsequent character position in subfield #w is coded.

—/3 Reference display

Do not use the following codes:

- b - Reference not displayed, field 664 used
- d - Reference not displayed, field 665 used

Code a (Reference not displayed) or c (Reference not displayed, field 663 used) may be used when appropriate for suppressing a cross reference display.

Code n (Not applicable) allows the generation of a cross reference and need not be coded in subfield #w/3.

---

LC Usage:

Alternate Graphic Representation

LC does not use alternate graphic representation fields in authority records.

■ REFERENCE FIELDS

LC does not use field 665 (History Reference). Records created after 1980 do not contain this field.

■ TRACING FIELDS

Subfield Codes

LC does not use the following subfields in 4XX and 5XX tracings:

- #i - Reference instruction phrase (All reference instructions are tag-related in the LC system.)
- #5 - Institution to which field applies



# Tracings and References

## LC Guidelines

‡w - Control subfield in 4XX See From Tracing fields —

### —/0 Special relationship

LC does not use the following codes:

- a - Earlier heading
  - b - Later heading
  - d - Acronym
  - f - Musical composition
  - g - Broader term
  - h - Narrower term
  - i - Reference instruction phrase in subfield ‡i
- Code d may occur in LC records created before 1981.

### —/1 Tracing use restriction

LC does not use the following codes:

- a - Name reference structure only
- b - Subject reference structure only
- c - Series reference structure only
- d - Name and subject reference structures
- e - Name and series reference structures
- f - Subject and series reference structures
- g - Name, subject, and series reference structures

### —/2 Earlier form of heading

LC does not use the following code:

- o - Earlier established form of heading (other authority file)
- Code a (Pre-AACR 2 form of heading (national name authority file)) is used when the tracing is for a linking reference from a pre-AACR 2 heading.
- Code e (Earlier established form of heading (national authority file)) is used in the national name authority file primarily when a reference from the former heading is appropriate under normal AACR 2 reference practice, and the former heading is not covered by code a. This includes former headings that were previously coded either as *AACR 2* (code c) or *Non-AACR 2 form used with AACR 2* (code d). Code e is used in the national subject authority file when a reference from the former heading is appropriate under the reference practice of the applicable subject heading/thesaurus conventions.

The following obsolete codes may occur in LC records created before the adoption of AACR 2 in Jan. 1981, until these records have been evaluated (008/29, Reference evaluation, code a) and the authority record updated.

- b - AACR 1 [OBSOLETE]
- c - AACR 2 [OBSOLETE]
- d - Non-AACR 2 form used with AACR 2 [OBSOLETE]

### —/3 Reference display

LC does not use the following codes:

- c - Reference not displayed, field 663 used
  - d - Reference not displayed, field 665 used
- LC has not used field 665 since mid-Feb. 1981.

≠w - Control subfield in 5XX See Also from Tracing fields \_\_\_\_\_

——/0 Special relationship

LC does **not** use the following codes:

d - Acronym

f - Musical composition

h - Narrower term

i - Reference instruction phrase in subfield ≠i

Codes d and f may occur in LC records created before 1981.

——/1 Tracing use restriction

LC does **not** use the following codes:

a - Name reference structure only

b - Subject reference structure only

c - Series reference structure only

d - Name and subject reference structures

e - Name and series reference structures

f - Subject and series reference structures

g - Name, subject, and series reference structures

Code b may occur in LC records created before 1988.

——/2 Earlier form of heading

LC does **not** use the following codes:

a - Pre-AACR 2 form of heading (national name authority file)

e - Earlier established form of heading (national authority file)

o - Earlier established form of heading (other authority file)

——/3 Reference display

LC does **not** use the following codes:

b - Reference not displayed, field 664 used

d - Reference not displayed, field 665 used

LC has not used field 665 since mid-Feb. 1981. Records created before that time may contain code d in subfield ≠w/3.



## 360 Complex See Also Reference—Subject

### NACO LSP Usage:

Do **not** use this field. Subject authority records are not within the scope of the present NACO LSP project.

---

### LC Usage:

This field is used to record complex see also references as they appear in *Library of Congress Subject Headings*.



## 400 See From Tracing—Personal Name

### NACO LSP Usage:

#### Indicators

First Indicator - Type of personal name entry element

Do not use value 3 (Family name) in the first indicator position. This type of personal name is not within the scope of the present NACO LSP project.

Second Indicator - Nonfiling characters

Always use value 0 in the second indicator position. Do not use values 1-9. Omit an initial article that is not an integral part of the name when formulating the entry element of the heading.

#### Subfield Codes

Do not use the following subfields in 400 fields:

- ‡e - Relator term
- ‡h - Medium
- ‡x - General subdivision
- ‡y - Chronological subdivision
- ‡z - Geographic subdivision

LC NACO must be consulted before subfield ‡g (Miscellaneous information) is used.

NACO LSP usage for the following subfield codes in field 400 is given in the *LC Guidelines* section for the Tracing and Reference fields:

- ‡i - Reference instruction phrase
  - ‡w - Control subfield
- 

### LC Usage:

#### Indicator

Second Indicator - Nonfiling characters

LC does not use values 1-9. An initial element of a name is always omitted.

#### Subfield Code

LC does not use the following subfield in A:

- ‡e - Relator term
- ‡g - Miscellaneous information
- ‡h - Medium

## **400**

### **LC Guidelines**

LC usage for the following subfield codes in field 400 is given in the *LC Guidelines* section for the Tracing and Reference fields:

- ‡i - Reference instruction phrase
- ‡w - Control subfield

## 410 See From Tracing—Corporate Name

### NACO LSP Usage:

#### Indicator

Second Indicator - Nonfiling characters

Always use value 0 in the second indicator position. Do not use values 1-9. Omit an initial article that is not an integral part of the name when formulating the entry element of the heading.

#### Subfield Codes

Do not use the following subfields in 410 fields:

- #e - Relator term
- #h - Medium
- #x - General subdivision
- #y - Chronological subdivision
- #z - Geographic subdivision

NACO LSP usage for the following subfield codes in field 410 is given in the *LC Guidelines* section for the Tracing and Reference fields:

- #i - Reference instruction phrase
- #w - Control subfield

### LC Usage:

#### Indicator

Second Indicator - Nonfiling characters

LC does not use values 1-9. An initial article that is not an integral part of the entry element of a name is always omitted.

#### Subfield Code

LC does not use the following subfields in AACR 2 formulated 410 fields:

- #e - Relator term
- #h - Medium

LC usage for the following subfield codes in field 410 is given in the *LC Guidelines* section for the Tracing and Reference fields:

- #i - Reference instruction phrase
- #w - Control subfield





## **411 See From Tracing—Meeting Name**

**NACO LSP Usage:**

### **Indicator**

Second Indicator - Nonfiling characters

Always use value 0 in the second indicator position. Do not use values 1-9. Omit an initial article that is not an integral part of the name when formulating the entry element of the heading.

### **Subfield Codes**

Do not use the following subfields in 411 fields:

- ‡h - Medium
- ‡x - General subdivision
- ‡y - Chronological subdivision
- ‡z - Geographic subdivision

NACO LSP usage for the following subfield codes in field 411 is given in the *LC Guidelines* section for the Tracing and Reference fields:

- ‡i - Reference instruction phrase
  - ‡w- Control subfield
- 

**LC Usage:**

### **Indicator**

Second Indicator - Nonfiling characters

LC does not use values 1-9. An initial article that is not an integral part of the entry element of a name is always omitted.

### **Subfield Code**

LC does not use the following subfield in AACR 2 formulated 411 fields:

- ‡h - Medium

LC usage for the following subfield codes in field 411 is given in the *LC Guidelines* section for the Tracing and Reference fields:

- ‡i - Reference instruction phrase
- ‡w- Control subfield



## 430 See From Tracing—Uniform Title

### NACO LSP Usage:

#### Indicator

##### Second Indicator - Nonfiling characters

Always use value 0 in the second indicator position. Do not use values 1-9. Omit an initial article that is not an integral part of the uniform title when formulating the entry element of the heading.

#### Subfield Codes

Do not use the following subfield in 430 fields:

- #h - Medium
- #x - General subdivision
- #y - Chronological subdivision
- #z - Geographic subdivision

NACO LSP usage for the following subfield codes in field 430 is given in the *LC Guidelines* section for the Tracing and Reference fields:

- #i - Reference instruction phrase
  - #w - Control subfield
- 

### LC Usage:

#### Indicator

##### Second Indicator - Nonfiling characters

LC does not use values 1-9. An initial article that is not an integral part of the entry element of a uniform title is always omitted.

#### Subfield Code

LC does not use the following subfield #h in AACR 2 form

- #h - Medium

LC usage for the following subfield codes in field 430 is given in the *LC Guidelines* section for the Tracing and Reference fields:

- #i - Reference instruction phrase
- #w - Control subfield



## 450 See From Tracing—Topical Term

### NACO LSP Usage:

Do not use this field. Subject authority records are not within the scope of the present NACO LSP program.

---

### LC Usage:

#### Indicator

Second Indicator – Nonfiling characters

LC does not use values 1-9. An initial article that is not an integral part of the entry element of a topical term heading is always omitted.

LC usage for the following subfield codes in field 450 is given in the *LC Guidelines* section for the Tracing and Reference fields:

- ‡i – Reference instruction phrase
- ‡w – Control subfield



## 451 See From Tracing—Geographic Name

### NACO LSP Usage:

#### Indicator

##### Second Indicator - Nonfiling characters

Always use value 0 in the second indicator position. Do **not** use values 1-9. Omit an initial article that is not an integral part of the name when formulating the entry element of the heading.

#### Subfield Codes

Do **not** use the following subfields in 451 fields:

- ‡x - General subdivision
- ‡y - Chronological subdivision
- ‡z - Geographic subdivision

NACO LSP usage for the following subfield codes in field 451 is given in the *LC Guidelines* section for the Tracing and Reference fields:

- ‡i - Reference instruction phrase
  - ‡w- Control subfield
- 

### LC Usage:

#### Indicator

##### Second Indicator - Nonfiling characters

LC does not use values 1-9. An initial article that is not an integral part of the entry element of a name is always omitted.

LC usage for the following subfield codes in field 451 is given in the *LC Guidelines* section for the Tracing and Reference fields:

- ‡i - Reference instruction phrase
- ‡w- Control subfield





## 500 See Also From Tracing—Personal Name

### NACO LSP Usage:

#### Indicators

First Indicator - Type of personal name entry element

Do not use value 3 (Family name) in the first indicator position. This type of personal name is not within the scope of the present NACO LSP project.

Second Indicator - Nonfiling characters

Always use value 0 in the second indicator position. Do not use values 1-9. Omit an initial article that is not an integral part of the name when formulating the entry element of the heading.

#### Subfield Codes

Do not use the following subfields in 500 fields:

- ‡e - Relator term
- ‡h - Medium
- ‡x - General subdivision
- ‡y - Chronological subdivision
- ‡z - Geographic subdivision

LC NACO must be consulted before subfield ‡g (Miscellaneous information) is used.

NACO LSP usage for the following subfield codes in field 500 is given in the *LC Guidelines* section for the Tracing and Reference fields:

- ‡i - Reference instruction phrase
- ‡w - Control subfield

---

### LC Usage:

#### Indicator

Second Indicator - Nonfiling characters

LC does not use values 1-9. An initial article that is not an integral part of the entry element of a name is always omitted.

#### Subfield Code

LC does not use the following subfields in AACR 2 formulated 500 fields:

- ‡e - Relator term
- ‡g - Miscellaneous information
- ‡h - Medium

## 500 LC Guidelines

LC usage for the following subfield codes in field 500 is given in the *LC Guidelines* section for the Tracing and Reference fields:

- ‡i - Reference instruction phrase
- ‡w- Control subfield

## **510 See Also From Tracing—Corporate Name**

**NACO LSP Usage:**

### **Indicator**

Second Indicator - Nonfiling characters

Always use value 0 in the second indicator position. Do **not** use values 1-9. Omit an initial article that is not an integral part of the name when formulating the entry element of the heading.

### **Subfield Codes**

Do **not** use the following subfields in 510 fields:

- ‡e - Relator term
- ‡h - Medium
- ‡x - General subdivision
- ‡y - Chronological subdivision
- ‡z - Geographic subdivision

NACO LSP usage for the following subfield codes in field 510 is given in the *LC Guidelines* section for the Tracing and Reference fields:

- ‡i - Reference instruction phrase
  - ‡w- Control subfield
- 

**LC Usage:**

### **Indicator**

Second Indicator - Nonfiling characters

LC does not use values 1-9. An initial article that is not an integral part of the entry element of a name is always omitted.

### **Subfield Code**

LC does not use the following subfields in AACR 2 formulated 510 fields:

- ‡e - Relator term
- ‡h - Medium

LC usage for the following subfield codes in field 510 is given in the *LC Guidelines* section for the Tracing and Reference fields:

- ‡i - Reference instruction phrase
- ‡w- Control subfield



## **511 See Also From Tracing—Meeting Name**

### **NACO LSP USAGE:**

#### **Indicator**

Second Indicator - Nonfiling characters

Always use value 0 in the second indicator position. Do not use values 1-9. Omit an initial article that is not an integral part of the name when formulating the entry element of the heading.

#### **Subfield Codes**

Do not use the following subfields in 511 fields:

- ‡h - Medium
- ‡x - General subdivision
- ‡y - Chronological subdivision
- ‡z - Geographic subdivision

NACO LSP usage for the following subfield codes in field 511 is given in the *LC Guidelines* section for the Tracing and Reference fields:

- ‡i - Reference instruction phrase
  - ‡w- Control subfield
- 

### **LC Usage:**

#### **Indicator**

Second Indicator - Nonfiling characters

LC does not use values 1-9. An initial article that is not an integral part of the entry element of a name is always omitted.

#### **Subfield Code**

LC does not use the following subfield in AACR 2 formulated 511 fields:

- ‡h - Medium

LC usage for the following subfield codes in field 511 is given in the *LC Guidelines* section for the Tracing and Reference fields:

- ‡i - Reference instruction phrase
- ‡w- Control subfield



## 530 See Also From Tracing—Uniform Title

### NACO LSP Usage:

#### Indicator

Second Indicator - Nonfiling characters

Always use value 0 in the second indicator position. Do **not** use values 1-9. Omit an initial article that is not an integral part of the uniform title when formulating the entry element of the heading.

#### Subfield Codes

Do **not** use the following subfields in 530 fields:

- #h - Medium
- #x - General subdivision
- #y - Chronological subdivision
- #z - Geographic subdivision

NACO LSP usage for the following subfield codes in field 530 is given in the *LC Guidelines* section for the Tracing and Reference fields:

- #i - Reference instruction phrase
- #w - Control subfield

### LC USAGE:

#### Indicator

Second Indicator - Nonfiling characters

LC does not use values 1-9. An initial article that is not an integral part of the entry element of a uniform title is always omitted.

#### Subfield Code

LC does not use the following subfield in AACR 2 formulated 530 fields:

- #h - Medium

LC usage for the following subfield codes in field 530 is given in the *LC Guidelines* section for the Tracing and Reference fields:

- #i - Reference instruction phrase
- #w - Control subfield





## 550 See Also From Tracing—Topical Term

### NACO LSP Usage:

Field 550 may be used for tracing a reference from a topical term to a name or series 1XX heading.

### Indicator

#### Second Indicator - Nonfiling characters

Always use value 0 in the second indicator position. Do not use values 1-9. Omit an initial article that is not an integral part of the topical term when formulating the entry element of the heading.

NACO LSP usage for the following subfield codes in field 550 is given in the *LC Guidelines* section for the Tracing and Reference fields:

- #i - Reference instruction phrase
  - #w - Control subfield
- 

### LC Usage:

### Indicator

#### Second Indicator - Nonfiling characters

LC does not use values 1-9. An initial article that is not an integral part of the entry element of a topical term heading is always omitted.

LC usage for the following subfield codes in field 550 is given in the *LC Guidelines* section for the Tracing and Reference fields:

- #i - Reference instruction phrase
- #w - Control subfield



## 551 See Also From Tracing—Geographic Name

### NACO LSP Usage:

#### Indicator

##### Second Indicator - Nonfiling characters

Always use value 0 in the second indicator position. Do not use values 1-9. Omit an initial article that is not an integral part of the name when formulating the entry element of the heading.

#### Subfield Codes

Do not use the following subfields in 551 fields:

- #x - General subdivision
- #y - Chronological subdivision
- #z - Geographic subdivision

NACO LSP usage for the following subfield codes in field 551 is given in the *LC Guidelines* section for the Tracing and Reference fields:

- #i - Reference instruction phrase
  - #w - Control subfields
- 

### LC Usage:

#### Indicator

##### Second Indicator - Nonfiling characters

LC does not use values 1-9. An initial article that is not an integral part of the entry element of a name is always omitted.

LC usage for the following subfield codes in field 551 is given in the *LC Guidelines* section for the Tracing and Reference fields:

- #i - Reference instruction phrase
- #w - Control subfield



**663 Complex See Also Reference—Name****NACO LSP Usage:**

Simple cross references are preferred over complex cross references. Field 663 is used only when the relationship of other names to the name contained in the 1XX Heading cannot be adequately expressed by simple see also cross references constructed from field 1XX and multiple 5XX See Also From Tracing fields.

LC NACO must be consulted before this field is used.

---

**LC Usage:**

LC uses field 663 only when the relationship of other names to the name contained in field 1XX cannot be adequately expressed by simple see also cross references constructed from field 1XX and multiple 5XX fields.

LC did not implement field 663 until March 1984. Before that time, LC used field 664 (Complex See Reference—Name) for all complex reference situations. These reference records contain an *established* heading in the 1XX field and a *see also* reference in field 664. The evaluation of references process in an existing authority record may result in the deletion of the reference record and either the addition of field 663 to the related established heading record or the adjustment of the subfield #w coding in the existing 5XX fields.



## 664 Complex See Reference—Name

### NACO LSP Usage:

Simple cross references are preferred over complex cross references. A reference record containing a 664 field is used only when the relationship of an unestablished name and one or more established names cannot be adequately expressed by simple see also cross references constructed from the 1XX Heading and multiple 4XX See From Tracing fields in an established heading record.

LC NACO must be consulted before this field is used.

---

### LC Usage:

Since January 1981, LC uses field 664 in a reference record only when the relationship of an unestablished name and one or more established names cannot be adequately expressed by simple see also cross references constructed from field 1XX and multiple 4XX fields in an established heading record.

Reference records created by LC prior to January 1981 that are no longer valid under this practice are deleted and the subfield #w coding in the 4XX fields in the established heading record are adjusted whenever the record must be changed for any reason.

Prior to March 1984, LC used field 664 in a reference record for complex see also references. These reference records contain an *established* heading in the 1XX field and a *see also* reference in field 664. The evaluation of references process in an existing authority record may result in the deletion of the reference record and either the addition of a 663 Complex See Also Reference field to the related established heading record or the adjustment of the subfield #w coding in the existing 5XX fields.





## 665 History Reference

### NACO LSP Usage:

Do not use this field. Connect sequences of related headings by 5XX See Also From Tracing fields with their #w/0 subfields appropriately coded.

---

### LC Usage:

LC does not use this field. Appropriately coded subfield #w/0 in 5XX See Also From Tracing fields are used to connect sequences of related headings. A 665 field in a record created prior to February 1981 is deleted and the 5XX fields are adjusted whenever the 665 field must be changed for any reason.



## 666 General Explanatory Reference—Name

### NACO LSP Usage:

LC NACO must be consulted before this field is used.

---

### LC Usage:

LC uses field 666 only when individual references from each heading related to the characteristic are impractical.



## | 64X Series Treatment—General Information

NACO LSP Usage:

### Alternate Graphic Representation

Do not use subfield #6 (Linkage) in any of the 64X Series Treatment fields. Records containing alternate graphic representation fields are not within the scope of the present NACO LSP project. Subfield #6 has not been implemented in the LC system.

---

LC Usage:

LC does not use alternate graphic representation fields in authority records.



## 640 Series Dates of Publication and/or Volume Designation

### NACO LSP Usage:

#### Indicator

First Indicator - Note format style

Do not use value 0 (Formatted style) in the first indicator position. Always use an unformatted style note.

---

### LC Usage:

#### Indicator

First Indicator - Note format style

LC does not use a formatted style note, thus does not use value 0 (Formatted style).





## 641 Series Numbering Peculiarities

### NACO LSP Usage:

There are no special NACO LSP requirements for this field.

---

### LC Usage:

There is no special LC practice for this field.



## 642 Series Numbering Example

### NACO LSP Usage:

In a single 642 field, a subfield #5 containing the NUC symbol for the Library of Congress (DLC) precedes a subfield #5 containing the NUC symbol for an LSP participant. Only the NACO LSP participant creating a Series Authority Record may record its series numbering example in field 642 or add its NUC symbol to the field 642 containing the series numbering example for the Library of Congress.

When a pair of 642 fields are appropriate because an LSP participant's series numbering example differs from that of the Library of Congress, the 642 field representing the Library of Congress example precedes that of the LSP participant.

Inclusion of the 642 field relating to the NACO LSP participant is optional unless the participant is also contributing a bibliographic record related to the series. When field 642 is used, it must contain a subfield #5 to identify the user of the example in subfield #a.

---

### LC Usage:

| There is no special LC practice for this field.



## 643 Series Place and Publisher/Issuing Body

### NACO LSP Usage:

There are no special NACO LSP requirements for this field.

---

### LC Usage:

LC does not include brackets around data in this field, even though information may have been bracketed in a corresponding bibliographic record.

|



## 644 Series Analysis Practice

### NACO LSP Usage:

In a single 644 field, a subfield #5 containing the NUC symbol for the Library of Congress (DLC) precedes a subfield #5 containing the NUC symbol for an LSP participant. Only the NACO LSP participant creating a Series Authority Record may record its series analysis practice in field 644, or add its NUC symbol to the field 644 containing the series analysis practice for the Library of Congress.

When a pair of 644 fields are appropriate because an LSP participant's analysis practice differs from that of the Library of Congress, the 644 field representing the Library of Congress practice precedes that of the LSP participant.

Inclusion of the field 644 relating to the NACO LSP participant is optional unless the participant is also contributing a bibliographic record related to the series. When field 644 is used, it must contain a subfield #5 to identify the user of the analysis practice.

---

### LC Usage:

LC generally does not analyze issues of serials. If an issue is ever analyzed (because it is a special issue, etc.) code n is still used in subfield #a. The volume which was analyzed is noted in a subfield #b as an exception (e.g.: #an#bexcept vol. 4, no.3).

|





## 645 Series Tracing Practice

### NACO LSP Usage:

In a single 645 field, a subfield #5 containing the NUC symbol for the Library of Congress (DLC) precedes a subfield #5 containing the NUC symbol for an LSP participant. Only the NACO LSP participant creating a Series Authority Record may record its series tracing practice in field 645, or add its NUC symbol to the field 645 containing the series tracing practice for the Library of Congress.

When a pair of 645 fields are appropriate because an LSP participant's tracing practice differs from that of the Library of Congress, the 645 field representing the Library of Congress practice precedes that of the LSP participant.

Inclusion of the field 645 relating to the NACO LSP participant is optional unless the participant is also contributing a bibliographic record related to the series. When field 645 is used, it must contain a subfield #5 to identify the user of the tracing practice.

---

### LC Usage:

When LC tracing practice has changed due to the adoption of AACR 2, an additional 645 field is added to a series authority record to represent the earlier practice. The first 645 represents the AACR 2 practice, with the phrase "items cataloged after Dec. 31, 1980" in subfield #d. A second 645 represents the pre-AACR 2 practice, with the phrase "items cataloged before Jan. 1, 1981" in subfield #d.



## 646 Series Classification Practice

### NACO LSP Usage:

In a single 646 field, a subfield #5 containing the NUC symbol for the Library of Congress (DLC) precedes a subfield #5 containing the NUC symbol for an LSP participant. Only the NACO LSP participant creating a Series Authority Record may record its series classification practice in field 646, or add its NUC symbol to the field 646 containing the series classification practice for the Library of Congress.

When a pair of 646 fields are appropriate because an LSP participant's classification practice differs from that of the Library of Congress, the 646 field representing the Library of Congress practice precedes that of the LSP participant.

Inclusion of the field 646 relating to the NACO LSP participant is optional unless the participant is also contributing a bibliographic record related to the series. When field 646 is used, it must contain a subfield #5 to identify the user of the classification practice.

---

### LC Usage:

LC practice is to carry over any pre-AACR 2 classification practice to its AACR 2 cataloging.



## | 66X-68X Notes—General Information

NACO LSP Usage:

### Alternate Graphic Representation

Do not use subfield #6 (Linkage) in any of the 66X-68X Note fields. Records containing alternate graphic representation fields are not within the scope of the present NACO LSP project. Subfield #6 has not been implemented in the LC system.

---

LC Usage:

LC does not use alternate graphic representation fields in authority records.



## | 667 Nonpublic General Note

NACO LSP Usage:

### Subfield Codes

Do not use the following subfields:

‡5 Institution to which field applies

‡6 Linkage

LC has not implemented subfields ‡5 and ‡6.

---

LC Usage:

LC uses field 667 to provide information that is not cited from a source but that may be useful to agencies outside LC.

### Subfield Codes

LC does not use the following subfields:

‡5 Institution to which field applies

‡6 Linkage





## **670 Source Data Found**

### **NACO LSP Usage:**

There are no special NACO LSP requirements for this field.

---

### **LC Usage:**

LC practice for this field is to leave a space between an open date ending with a hyphen and the colon preceding the location of data in subfield #b (e.g.: ... 1967- :).

For series authority records, the parenthetical statement of the form of name/title and other information is omitted from subfield #b in the first 670 field recorded. Subsequent 670 fields contain the full citation statement.



## 675 Source Data Not Found

### NACO LSP Usage:

There are no special NACO LSP requirements for this field.

---

### LC Usage:

There is no special LC practice for this field.



## 678 Epitome

### NACO LSP Usage:

Do not use this field.

---

### LC Usage:

LC does not use this field in current authority records. The field was used to preserve useful biographical/historical information pertaining to the 1XX heading when manual authority cards were converted to machine-readable form.



| 680 Public General Note

NACO LSP Usage:

Do not use this field.

---

LC Usage:

This field is used to record public general notes as they appear in *Library of Congress Subject Headings*.

Subfield Codes

LC does not use the following subfields:  
‡5 Institution to which field applies  
‡6 Linkage





## 681 Subject Example Tracing Note

### NACO LSP Usage:

Do not use this field. Subject authority records are not within the scope of the present NACO LSP program.

---

### LC Usage:

This field is used to record "example under" and "note under" notes as they appear in *Library of Congress Subject Headings*.



## 682 Deleted Heading Information

NACO LSP Usage:

Do not use this field.

---

LC Usage:

LC uses this field to explain why an authority record in its Subject Authority File is being deleted.



| 688 Application History Note

NACO LSP Usage:

Do **not** use this field. Subject authority records are not within the scope of the present NACO LSP project.

---

LC Usage:

LC does not use this field.



## | 880 Alternate Graphic Representation

NACO LSP Usage:

### Alternate Graphic Representation

Do not use this field. Records containing alternate graphic representation fields are not within the scope of the present NACO LSP project. Field 880 has not been implemented in the LC system.

---

LC Usage:

LC does not use alternate graphic representation fields in authority records.